



also available in a book/CD package

teach  
yourself

**czech**  
david short

- Do you want to cover the basics then progress fast?
- Do you want to communicate in a range of situations?
- Do you want to learn Czech in depth?

**Czech** starts with the basics but moves at an energetic pace to give you a good level of understanding, speaking and writing. You will have lots of opportunity to practice the kind of language you will need to be able to communicate with confidence and understand Czech culture.

**David Short** has taught Czech for many years at the University of London.

- Visit [www.books.mcgraw-hill.com](http://www.books.mcgraw-hill.com) to see our complete range of books.

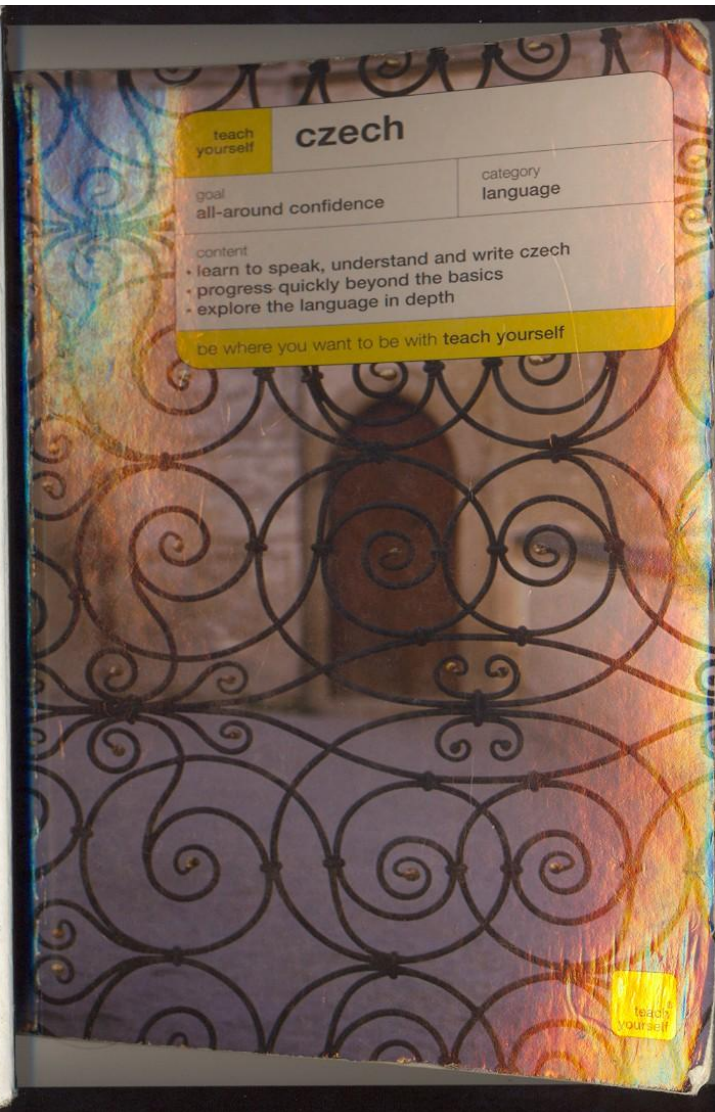
Cover • ©Farrell Grehan/Corbis • Entrance Gate, Horsovsy Tyn Castle, Czech Republic

the leader in self-learning with more than 300 titles, covering all subjects  
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



US \$16.95 / CAN \$25.95

ISBN 0-07-143041-5



teach  
yourself

**czech**

goal  
all-around confidence

category  
language

- content
- learn to speak, understand and write czech
  - progress quickly beyond the basics
  - explore the language in depth

be where you want to be with teach yourself





**czech**  
david short

For over 60 years, more than  
40 million people have learnt over  
750 subjects the **teach yourself**  
way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be  
with **teach yourself**



David Short teaches Czech at the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University College London.

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 9.00–18.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, P.O. Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide – the Teach Yourself series includes over 300 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data:* A catalogue entry for this title is available from the British Library.

*Library of Congress Catalog Card Number:* on file.

First published in UK 1993 by Hodder Headline Ltd, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1994 by Contemporary Books, a Division of the McGraw-Hill Companies, 1 Prudential Plaza, 130 East Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60601 USA.

This edition published 2003.

The 'Teach Yourself' name is a registered trade mark of Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Copyright © 1993, 2003 David Short

*In UK:* All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP.

*In US:* All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Contemporary Books.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder & Stoughton Educational, a division of Hodder Headline Ltd, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Papers used in this book are natural, renewable and recyclable products. They are made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
Year 2008 2007 2006 2005 2004 2003

introduction	vii
the Czech alphabet and pronunciation	xi
01 <b>dobry den. jak se mate?</b> <i>good morning. how are you?</i>	1
handling first encounters with greetings and responses • spotting words that are common to Czech and English • saying <i>I</i> (first person singular)	
02 <b>jak se jmenujete?</b> <i>what's your name?</i>	9
making introductions • asking where someone comes from • forming verbs in the present tense	
03 <b>kde pracujete?</b> <i>where do you work?</i>	22
asking where someone works • asking what their job is • using basic kinship terms • asking about the work of others in the family • expressing more complex things about work	
04 <b>jak bydlite?</b> <i>what is your house like?</i>	36
talking about how people live • saying numbers • talking about going visiting • expressing possession • using <i>can</i> and <i>must</i> • expressing the 'direct object'	
05 <b>je tu nekde knihkupectvi?</b> <i>is there a bookshop near here?</i>	52
watching your Ps and Qs • asking questions politely • saying <i>there is, there are</i> • saying that you like something • forming and using adjectives in the accusative	
06 <b>na celnici</b> <i>at customs</i>	70
understanding questions about your person	

	• answering in an appropriate manner • beginning to use plurals • using some means of expressing reason and purpose	
07	<b>kde jste vlastně studoval?</b> <i>where exactly did you study?</i>	85
	saying something about past events • saying more about going places • using numbers above four	
08	<b>nemůžu najít klíč</b> <i>I can't find the key</i>	100
	using the past tense • complaining about this and that • asking what something costs • using higher numbers • giving and understanding simple directions	
09	<b>kolik je hodin?</b> <i>what's the time?</i>	114
	asking the time • asking at what time something happens • saying what time it is • talking about the future	
10	<b>co mám koupit rodině?</b> <i>what should I buy the family?</i>	129
	talking about the person(s) to whom something is given/said • using place expressions in the plural • saying <i>all</i>	
11	<b>ve čtvrtek k nám přijde návštěva</b> <i>we've got visitors coming on Thursday</i>	146
	saying more about future events • compensating for Czech's simple tense system • saying the days of the week • saying the months of the year • forming dates	
12	<b>děti do školy vodí manželka</b> <i>it's my wife who takes the children to school</i>	164
	talking about the most crucial types of movement • saying what things look like • expressing the means of doing something	
13	<b>pršíl</b> <i>it's raining!</i>	182
	reading consecutive prose • talking about the weather • using personal pronouns • saying <i>before</i> and <i>after</i> • forming more expressions for telling the time • expressing alternatives	

14	<b>nehádejte se!</b> <i>stop arguing!</i>	202
	giving orders • using some politeness formulae • expressing wishes	
15	<b>kdybych věděla, že přijdete ...</b> <i>if I knew you were coming ...</i>	216
	expressing vain wishes using the conditional • stating actual and theoretical preferences • saying indirect commands • expressing 'purpose'	
16	<b>tak to bude rychlejší</b> <i>it'll be quicker like that</i>	231
	making comparisons • saying something is the best • talking about your children and pets	
17	<b>kvůli politice se nerozčiluj!</b> <i>don't get worked up over politics!</i>	250
	describing what people/things are doing • dealing with some features of written Czech • saying <i>whose</i>	
18	<b>nejdřív uděláme pořádek v Líbině skříni</b> <i>first we'll tidy Liba's wardrobe</i>	266
	saying more about possession • making suggestions • using the Czech equivalent of <i>-ed</i>	
19	<b>dejte si něco na ochutnání</b> <i>have something to taste</i>	283
	using <i>-ing</i> (as a noun) to state your likes and dislikes • saying what things are good for • recognizing and forming 'passive' sentences	
	<b>supplement: selected features of high- and low-style Czech</b>	300
	<b>taking it further</b>	307
	<b>key to the exercises</b>	313
	<b>glossary of grammatical terms</b>	325
	<b>appendices</b> reference tables	332
	voicing and devoicing	337
	<b>Czech-English vocabulary</b>	340
	<b>English-Czech vocabulary</b>	365
	<b>subject index</b>	383

The author and publishers would like to thank the following for their kind permission to use material reproduced in this book and on the recording: Český rozhlas Ostrava (Czech Radio), especially Helena Berková; and Jaroslav Ház of Karlovarská Becherovka, Eva Muzikářová of *Lidové noviny* and Marketa Peřinová of *MFDnes*, whose co-operation in securing digital files for the relevant graphics herein was also willingly given.

The author also wishes to thank: his long-suffering wife Líba, for her contributions and the compilation of the Czech-English glossary; Prof. Libuše Hornová of Olomouc for her careful reading of the draft of the previous edition and all her helpful suggestions; departmental colleagues and others who have used the book in the classroom and whose observations have led to all manner of improvements incorporated in this new edition, notably Kamila Karhanová (Prague), Dominik Lukeš (Prague) and Eva Znojilová (Brno), but especially Michal Křístek (Brno), whose meticulous re-reading of the whole led to numerous detailed updatings; and the many readers who inspired individual improvements to successive reprints of the previous edition, especially Mr Balkenende of Holland and John Braga of Huntingdon. Special thanks are due to my editors Rebecca Green and Ginny Catmur for the care which they have given to the preparation of this new edition.

### The Czech Republic and its language

The Czech Republic is, since January 1st, 1993, one of the two daughter states of Czechoslovakia (the other is Slovakia to the east). Its unforgettable capital, Prague, lies halfway down a line drawn from Stockholm to Rome, at roughly the same latitude as the Scilly Isles, which places the country in the very heart of Europe.

The Czech Republic consists of the lands of Bohemia (Čechy), Moravia (Morava) and part of Silesia (Slezsko; the rest is in Poland), and is inhabited by Czechs, the westernmost members of the Slav family of nations. There are small pockets inhabited by German and Polish minorities, and a fairly large number of Slovaks – the nearest relatives of the Czechs – and even more Roms (Gypsies) scattered throughout the republic. The provincial capital of Moravia-Silesia is the industrial city of Brno.

### What you will be learning

The language you will be learning in this course is an informal version of standard Czech, which perhaps needs explaining. The standard language has some features which are rarely, if ever, used in speech, and many more that are only used in such formal contexts as schools or the courts. While you would never be wrong using such features, you could sound rather stuffy. On the other hand, much of the everyday speech of most Czechs is different from the standard language; it has no normally written version, nor any absolutely rigid rules. If

you were to try to learn this colloquial version first, you would expose yourself to the risk of sounding funny – a bit like a foreigner attempting Cockney and failing. The solution adopted in this book is to keep to forms from the ‘lower end’ of the range that is currently accepted within standard Czech. Some guidance will be given at the end of the course on the main features which separate the two extreme versions of the language.

### Why learn Czech?

People, whether as tourists or businessmen and industrialists, have become increasingly aware of the potential of all the countries of eastern and central Europe thanks to the huge political, and increasing social, changes since the mid 1980s – or since November 1989 in the case of former Czechoslovakia. Those who already knew the area have sometimes been frustrated by the alleged intractability of the languages. This new version of *Teach Yourself Czech* aims to meet the first needs of the leisure, and in some measure the business, traveller in the Czech Republic, equipping them with the practical skills to cope with everyday situations. Grammatical terms are introduced, where necessary, as simply and painlessly as possible, to aid which a **Glossary of grammatical terms** is included in this revision.

The course should help you to communicate, perhaps not in an error-free manner, but adequately enough to show your Czech hosts that you have made an honest effort. They will often have a good command of English or German, especially in the cities, but if you want to make your basic wishes or needs known in some of the remoter parts of this beautiful country, having some Czech of your own will serve you well. We hope to help you to make requests, seek information, apologize, even complain, and describe simply events that have happened, will or may happen.

The Czechs are apt to think of theirs as a ‘minor’ language, one that foreigners do not bother with, so the greater your success with learning the warmer the response you will receive. One added bonus of knowing Czech is that you should be able, though not quite so freely, to communicate with Slovaks too (for the native, the two language have traditionally been about ninety-nine per cent mutually intelligible, though since the break-up the distance between the languages is increasing and the man in the street’s familiarity with the other language has begun to

decline). Thus, if your interests lie mainly in Slovakia, common sense and courtesy make it vital to learn Slovak first.

### The course

Each unit is based on simple dialogues between two or more people discussing everyday matters. In addition to the material in the dialogue you will be given snippets of background information on the language itself and on the society that uses it.

Words and phrases will appear in manageable quotas, in readily reuseable formats. Your skill with these will be tested by various means after each unit, and only when you are confident that you have mastered one unit should you proceed to the next.

Each unit contains two dialogues. These build up to give you a command of many essential phrases and, especially in the earlier units, much of the basic language you will need on first arriving in the Czech Republic. First there is a simple dialogue derived from the unit’s theme – hinted at in the unit’s title – with explanations and exercises to practise what you have learnt. The second dialogue usually expands this introduction with more phrases in the same domain, but also brings in some new material. Each unit ends with an **i** passage, giving additional information about the Czech people, life or language. **i** passages earlier in the units indicate tips for learning and ideas for checking your progress.

### How to proceed

Read each section separately, practising the dialogue by imitation of the recording if you have it, or learn together with a friend. All the material that is recorded is indicated with **▶**. Once you are confident, tackle the exercises. Some of the exercises help you with examples to follow; others require you merely to follow a simple instruction. By referring back you can easily verify that you have got them right: the book’s primary aim is, after all, to be your teacher, so going back is no worse than having to ask a teacher to go through something again. If you are still uncertain about your answer, you can check with the **Key to the exercises** at the back of the book.

You should aim to master all new words as they arise in the dialogues and vocabulary boxes. It is time-wasting to have to



go back and retrieve them if you don't do this properly. Each of us eventually finds his or her own most satisfactory method of vocabulary-learning – some people learn their words by rote, as laid out in the book, others by creating their own alphabetized list, perhaps on cards, or simply by copying everything out, along with any words acquired from elsewhere, into a notebook. You could assemble them by word-class (nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs), by the general topic in which you first encounter them, or roughly alphabetically. Whatever method you use, make sure you know the words in both directions – Czech to English and English to Czech.

### How difficult is Czech?

Relative difficulty is hard to measure, but Czech is a European language, which means that it must be nearer to English and French, for example, than an oriental or African language. Two major areas with which the learner has to come to terms are how nouns and adjectives change their form to serve different functions (within a system of *cases*), and how most verbs, which also change according to who, and how many people are doing the action, and sometimes even their sex, have to be learned in two sets of forms, representing the two *aspects* – the means by which Czech compensates for having a simple tense system.

One huge advantage of Czech is that, unlike English or French, the spelling is remarkably consistent with the pronunciation, although to convey all the sounds required the normal Roman alphabet is supplemented by letters with diacritics (you may call them 'accents'). And if you were put off French at school, do not worry. Here you will be guided along in easy stages, and it is you who sets the pace. The accompanying recording contains most of the dialogues, a few of the exercises in the course, and some extra material. So get used to hearing the language, and if possible enlist the help of Czechs in the neighbourhood so that you may hear more types of voice. Get them to let you practise your dialogue skills on them to give your achievements an airing before you even travel. And before long you will realize it can be done. Then when you get to your hotel or your business negotiations in **Praha**, **Plzeň** or **Mariánské Lázně** (*Prague, Pilsen* or *Marienbad*) and your hosts compliment you on your skills, you can say with pride: **A naučil jsem se to sám** (*And I taught myself*).

### ▶ The Czech alphabet and pronunciation

The Czech alphabet, for dictionary purposes:

a	j	s
b	k	š
c	l	t
č	m	u
d	n	v
e	o	w
f	p	x
g	q	y
h	r	z
ch	ř	ž
i		

Of these note the letters that are absent from the English alphabet:

č, ch, ř, š, ž (in particular ch, which counts as a single letter and always comes after h).

In addition, there are several more letters, which have to be observed in spelling, but which are not alphabetized, i.e. they are treated, for dictionary purposes, as variants. These are:

á	í	ú
ď	ň	ů
é	ó	ý
ě	ť	

### Vowels

There are just five vowel sounds: a, e, i, o and u pronounced consistently:

- a is pronounced roughly like the u in *but*: try **a** (*and*), **pan** (*Mr*), **mapa** (*map*).
- e is pronounced like the e in *bed*: try **flek** (*stain*), **nese** (*is carrying*), **Havel** (*a surname*).
- i is pronounced short like the i in *bit*, but with more of the quality of *ee* in *beet*; i and y are different letters for the same sound: try **byli** (*they were*), **bili** (*they struck*), **styl** (*style*), **syn** (*son*), **emigrant** (*émigré*).
- o is pronounced like o in *hot*: try **dole** (*downstairs*), **oko** (*eye*), **revidovat** (*to revise*).
- u is pronounced roughly like oo in *good*: try **sud** (*barrel*), **mluvit** (*to speak*), **uniforma** (*uniform*).

These short vowels are matched by a set of long vowels, which are marked by the 'acute accent', and are about 1¾ times as long as the short vowels. Compare *dal* (*gave*) and *dál* (*further – also Come in!*), *míle* (*kindly*) and *míle* (*mile*), *byt* (*apartment*) and *být* (*to be*), *rychle* (*quickly*) and *rychlé* (*quick*), and *uhel* (*a coal*) and *úhel* (*corner*). Long *u* is also represented, in set circumstances, by the symbol *ů*; here too we may find contrasting words with the short and long vowel respectively, e.g. *domu* (*of the house*) and *domů* (*of the houses, homewards*).

Sequences of vowels that make up a single sound are diphthongs. Czech has one native diphthong, *ou*, combining *o* and *u* in roughly equal proportions: try *soud* (*court*), *nesou* (*they are carrying*), *doufat* (*to hope*). (Warning: Avoid any use of the English diphthongs as heard in *hope* or *now*.) Two foreign diphthongs *au* and *eu* are found in such words as *auto* (*car*), *pneumatika* (*tyre*).

### Consonants

Among the letters denoting consonants, many represent sounds quite like the values of the equivalent English letters; these are:

b	f	l	s	x (only in foreign words)
d	v	m	z	
g		n		

Some others are slightly less close to the English ones:

Czech *p*, *t* and *k* represent unaspirated sounds, i.e. they are not followed, except at the end of a word, by the puff of breath that follows their English counterparts (Czech *p* is always like that in English *spin*, never like that in *pin*) – try pronouncing *kabelka* (*handbag*), *pán* (*gentleman*), *tuna* (*tonne*); all three occur in *katapult*. At the end of a word some breath is heard, as in *pot* (*sweat*), *mop* (*mop*), *kluk* (*boy*).

Czech *r* is rolled as in Scottish English – try *ragby* (*rugby*), *pero* (*pen*).

Czech *h* is more than the outgoing breath of English *h*, since it is accompanied by resonance in the vocal chords, an effect sometimes achieved in English with *h* between vowels (as in *ahead*); the common informal greeting *ahoj* (*hello*, also *goodbye*) contains it.

The letters *q* and *w* only occur in a few foreign words and are pronounced like *kv* and *v* respectively.

Some sounds are present in both languages, but represented by different letters:

Czech *š* is English *sh*, try *šok* (*shock*), *šek* (*cheque*).

Czech *ž* is English *s* in *leisure*, try *garáže* (*garages*), *žurnalista* (*journalist*).

Czech *č* is English *ch*, try *čokoláda* (*chocolate*), *čip* (*microchip*).

Czech *c* is English *ts*, hence *noc* (*night*) rhymes with *knots*; *ocet* (*vinegar*).

Czech *j* is (roughly) like English *y* before or after vowels (never like English *j*), hence *já* (*I*), *je* (*is*), *ji* (*her*), *jogurt* (*yoghurt*); *tramvaj* (*tram*), *dej!* (*give!*), *bij!* (*hit!*), *můj*, *moje*, *moji* (forms of *my*).

### Two sounds for special attention

Be particularly careful with:

- the compound letter *ch*, pronounced as the *ch* in Scots *loch*, try *charakter* (*character*), *chudý* (*poor*), *bych* (*I would*);
- ř* – familiar from the composer's name *Dvořák* – it may be treated as a rolled *r* with a simultaneous *sh* or *zh* – try *řada* (*line, row, series*), *doktoři* (*doctors*), *tři* (*three*), *hřmí* (*it is thundering*).

### Three more sounds to watch out for

You should also be very careful with the sounds *č*, *ď* and *ň*. They are formed with the front half of the tongue pressed firmly against the back of the upper gum and above the front teeth to produce sounds somewhat like those represented by the bold letters in *tune*, *dune*, *onion*. The main problem is learning to recognize their presence: they are only represented by the letters *č*, *ď* and *ň* before *a*, *u* or *o* or at the end of words or syllables.

šťáva	juice	buďme	let's be
chuť	appetite	umožňovat	to make possible
ďábel	devil	jabloň	apple tree

Before *e* the presence of these same sounds is marked by a <sup>ˇ</sup> (called a *háček*) on the *e*:

tetě	to the aunt (only the second <i>t</i> is <i>ť</i> ),
dělat	to do, to make
něco	something

and before an *i*-sound by the presence of an *i* in the spelling (as opposed to *y*):

ti	to you (fam.) (contrast ty = you)
divné	strange
nic	nothing

Capital *ř* and *ď* use the *háček*: *Ř* and *Ď*, and it is also used in the handwritten versions of the small letters, hence *ř* and *ď*.

#### Other uses of the letter *ě*

You will also meet the letter *ě* after **b**, **p**, **f**, **v** and **m**. After the first four it represents the pronunciation of a *j* between the consonant and *e*, e.g. *obědy* (pron. objedy) (*lunches*), *koupě* (pron. koupje) (*purchase*), *o katastrofě* (pron. -fje) (*about the disaster*), and *Věra* (pron. vje-) (*Vera*), while after **m** it represents an intervening *ň*, as in *mě* (pron. mňe) (*me*), *město* (pron. mňesto) (*town*).

You will find more details on pronunciation and spelling in **Appendix 2**, which you should consult from time to time.

Abbreviations used in the book are: acc. = accusative case, advb. = adverb, anim. = animate, comp. = comparative, dat. = dative case, f. = feminine, gen. = genitive case, impfv. = imperfective, inan. = inanimate, infin. = infinitive, inst. = instrumental case, Lit. = literal translation, loc. = locative case, m. = masculine, n. = neuter, pfv. = perfective, pl. = plural, pron. = pronunciation, sg. = singular.

# OR

dobry den.  
jak se mate?  
good morning. how are you?

#### In this unit you will learn

- how to handle first encounters with greetings and responses
- how to spot some words that are common to Czech and English
- how to say *I* (first person singular)

## Dialogue 1

Alan Smith has just arrived in Prague to be met by Zdeněk Navrátil. It is evening.

- Zdeněk** Dobrý večer. Navrátil.  
**Alan** Dobrý večer. Alan Smith.  
**Zdeněk** Jak se máte?  
**Alan** Velmi dobře, děkuji. A jak se máte vy?  
**Zdeněk** Děkuju, dobře.  
*Alan is taken to his hotel, where they part for the night.*  
**Alan** Na shledanou.  
**Zdeněk** Dobrou noc.  
*Zdeněk collects Alan from the hotel the next morning.*  
**Zdeněk** Dobré ráno. Jak se máte?  
**Alan** Dobrý den. Děkuju, dobře.



★★★★

Grandhotel  
PUP

dobrý večer	good evening
jak se máte?	how are you?
velmi dobře, děkuji	very well, thank you
velmi	very
a	and
vy	you
na shledanou	goodbye (pron. naschledanou)
dobrou noc	goodnight
dobré ráno	good morning

dobrý den good morning, good day, good afternoon

### 1 Dobré ráno and other greetings

This is only used to greet someone first thing in the morning, say up to 8 a.m.; an alternative is *dobré jitro*. After 8 a.m. and through the day use *dobrý den* (Lit. good day). *Dobrý večer* is used to greet someone in the evening; *dobrou noc* on parting for the night or before bedtime. *Na shledanou* (Lit. 'au revoir') can be used at any parting.

### 2 dobrý, dobré, dobrou – 'good'

These are all forms of the same adjective *good*, which is in dictionaries in the form of *dobrý*. Note that the various forms of such an adjective end in a long vowel or the two-vowel sound *ou*. Contrast this with the related adverb *dobře* (*well*), which ends in a short vowel. You may remember meeting, in the section on pronunciation, a similar pair *rychlé* (*quick*), *rychle* (*quickly*).

### 3 Velmi – 'very'

As in English, *velmi* (*very*) is an adverb that qualifies adjectives or other adverbs.

### 4 Děkuju – 'Thank you'

You may also hear a more formal version of this: *děkuji*.

### 5 Jak se máte? – 'How are you?'

This expression is an idiom which has to be learned as a piece; the word *you* does not actually occur, though in the return question it does, as *vy*. You will understand the whole structure better in later units.

## Exercises

1 Respond in kind to the following greetings:

- Dobré ráno.
- Dobrý den.
- Dobrý večer.

- You have just met someone; it is 11 a.m. How would you greet him/her? Fill in the gaps:  
D.... d.. J.. .. m...?
  - You are asked how you are: Jak se máte? and you respond positively: V.... d...., d....
  - You are asked how you are and you have replied: (Jak se máte? Dobře, děkuju.) It is now your turn to ask: A ... .. v.?
  - On parting, you say goodnight to your host and say you hope to meet again: D..... n.. a n. s.....



## Dialogue 2

Zdeněk is meeting Alan on his second visit to Prague.

- Zdeněk** Dobré jitro. Vítám vás znova v Praze.  
**Alan** Děkuju. Jak se máte?  
**Zdeněk** Jde to. A jak se máte vy?  
**Alan** Dnes špatně, bolí mě v krku, ale jsem rád, že jsem tady v Praze.

*At the hotel.*

- Zdeněk** Dobrou noc.  
**Alan** Na shledanou zítra.

<b>vítám vás</b>	<i>welcome</i> (Lit. I welcome you)
<b>znova</b>	<i>again</i>
<b>jde to</b>	<i>so, so</i> (Lit. goes it)
<b>dnes</b>	<i>today</i>
<b>špatně</b>	<i>badly</i>
<b>krk</b>	<i>throat</i>
<b>Praha</b>	<i>Prague</i>
<b>v Praze</b>	<i>in Prague</i> (pron. f.praze)
<b>ale</b>	<i>but</i>
<b>že</b>	<i>that</i>
<b>tady</b>	<i>here</i>
<b>zítra</b>	<i>tomorrow</i>

**bolí mě v krku** *I've got a sore throat* (Lit. it hurts me in the throat)  
 (pron. f.krku)

**jsem rád, že jsem tady** *I'm glad that I'm here* (ráda for female speaker)

## 6 More on spelling and pronunciation

Most Czech words are stressed (given more forceful pronunciation) on the first syllable, irrespective of the length of the vowels in the word. This means that, among the words that you now know, *dobrý* is stressed on the first half of the word, though with the short vowel *o*, and the second syllable is unstressed but has a long *ý*. This is a stress pattern matched by such English words as 'blackbird' (as opposed to black 'bird), or some people's pronunciation of 'garage'. Try to imitate some of the contrasting patterns using the following words:

mile	<i>kindly</i>
milé	<i>kind</i>
míle	<i>mile</i>
nakládat	<i>to load</i>
náklady	<i>loads; costs</i>
domu	<i>of the house</i>
dómu	<i>of the cathedral</i>
domů	<i>of the houses and home(-wards)</i>

Clearly, mispronunciation can lead to a breakdown in communication.

If you have the recording you will have noticed that there are some exceptions to the basic stress rule. The little word *a* (*and*) is stressless; *se* is part of the stress-group that precedes it, hence *jak se* and *máte*; while *na* (roughly *to*), in *na shledanou*, attracts the stress from the following word. These patterns will recur.

## 7 The special quality of l and r

A peculiarity of Czech is that *l* and *r* may have the same function as a vowel (they can be syllabic). They may occur between other consonants, as in *krk* (*throat*), *vlna* (*wave, wool*), or at the end of a word after a consonant, as in the name *Petr* (*Peter*) or *smysl* (*sense*). An *r* in these circumstances has a very prominent roll, as when we might make a threatening *grrr*, while syllabic *l* is similar to that in, say, *fiddlesticks*. Practise these sounds using the words:

prst	<i>finger</i>	vlk	<i>wolf</i>
vítr	<i>wind</i>	blbý	<i>stupid</i>
cukr	<i>sugar</i>	nesl	<i>was carrying</i>
mysl	<i>mind</i>		

## 8 Verb-forms ending in -m or -u/-i

Note that *vítám* (*I welcome*) ends in *-m*, like *jsem* (*I am*). In *děkuju* (*I thank*), used for *thank you*, however, *I*, which is the 1st person singular, is expressed by the final *-u*, or by the *-i* in the *děkuji* version of the word. Sometimes, for emphasis, the word for *I* (*já*) is used as well. You will see this in Unit 2.

## 9 Bidding welcome

*Welcome to ...* is expressed as '*Welcome in ...*', so in *Vítám vás v Praze* Zdeněk is saying *I welcome you in Prague*.

## 10 Expanding a farewell

You may follow *Na shledanou* with a word to suggest when you hope next to meet the person in question, so *Na shledanou zítra* means *Goodbye until tomorrow* or *See you tomorrow*; similarly *Na shledanou večer* (*Till we meet this evening*).

## 11 The idea of case

Czech words change according to their function in the sentence. Each form represents a different case, and each case has a number of different functions, as you will gradually see. In this second dialogue *Praha* (*Prague*), which is a noun, appears in the form *Praze*. This is because it comes after a preposition *v* (*in*); all prepositions bring about changes of ending (case-endings) in the nouns which follow them, and here the form *Praze* is the locative case of *Praha*. Similarly, when Zdeněk visits Alan in London (*Londýn*), he will doubtless be welcomed with the words: *Vítám vás v Londýně*. This also accounts for the difference between *krk* (*neck, throat*), and *v krku* (*in the throat*). The word *dům* (*house*), mentioned earlier, has the locative case will be learned in due course. The dictionary form of nouns is their nominative case.

## 12 Introducing gender

You have also seen the changing form of words in the alternations between *dobrý den* (*good day*), *dobrou noc* (*goodnight*) and *dobré ráno* (*good morning*). This is your first encounter with the way adjectives must agree with the nouns that they are describing: Czech nouns are randomly divided into three main groups – masculine, feminine and neuter. These are grammatical genders. Adjectives change according to the gender of the noun they are qualifying. The noun *den* is a masculine word, *noc* is feminine, and *ráno* is neuter; there will be more on this later. The dictionary form of adjectives is their nominative case in the masculine.

## 13 Use of the comma

*ale* means *but* and in writing it is often preceded by a comma; *že* (*that*) is always preceded by a comma, unless it is preceded by a (*and*).

## Exercises

Answer the following questions out loud first. Then try writing down the answers, making sure you know exactly where the accents go. Check your answers with the Key to the exercises at the back of the book.

- 3 a It is evening in Prague. You are to greet someone, then extend a welcome. Fill in the gaps.  
D.... v.... V.... v.. v P....  
b If someone asks you how you are, what will they say?  
J.. s. m...?
- 4 Reply to the question:  
a positively: V.... d...., d....  
b non-committally: J.. t.  
c negatively: Š....
- 5 Using the words you already know, indicate when you next expect to meet someone:  
a in the evening: N. s..... v....  
b in the morning: N. s..... r....  
c tomorrow: N. s..... z....  
d tomorrow evening: N. s..... z.... v....
- 6 Indicate your pleasure at being somewhere (say 'here', then 'in Prague'):  
J... r..., ž. j... t... / v P....
- 7 Practise all the greetings out loud, paying particular attention to the length of the syllables. Notice how the basic intonation pattern is very similar whatever the length of the phrase. If you have the recording, listen to this unit again and then say the following with the correct stress.  
dobrý den                      jsem rád, že jsem tady  
vítám vás v Praze            na shledanou večer

## i Pronunciation reminder

If you have made full use of the introductory sections, Appendix 2, and the pronunciation section in this unit you should:

- a know all the Czech letters, how they are ordered alphabetically and where special caution is needed – with **ch**, with **ř**, **ř** and **ň**, and with **ě**.

Remember that **č, ř, š, ž** and **ch** are alphabetized – they affect how words are ordered in the dictionary. This means that, for example, taking words you already know, **zítra** comes before **že**. On the other hand the letters **á, ď, é, ě, í, ň, ó, ě, ú, ý** – the vowel symbols with accents and the 'soft' consonants when marked with a *háček* or 'apostrophe' – have no effect on ordering, so **děkuju** comes before **den**. Remembering these principles will help you save time when using the **Glossary** at the back of the book.

**b** not forget the value of the letter **ě** in the sequences spelled **tě, dě, ně** (= **te, de, ně**), and in **bě, pě, fě, vě, mě** (= **bje, pje, fje, vje, mje**).

**c** not forget the value of the sequences **ti, di, ni** (= **ti, di, ni**) in contrast to **ty, dy, ny** (= **ti, di, ni**).

**i** Czech has adopted and adapted very many words that you recognize because they, or some very like them, are English as well. Some are technical and likely to be similar in many languages:

**šek** *cheque*    **chróm** *chrome*    **žirafa** *giraffe*

Others are everyday words:

**mop**                    **uniforma**            **jogurt**                    **banka**  
**tramvaj**              **auto**                    **turista**                    **šok**

Some have been in Czech a long time (**ďábel** *devil*, think of diabolical in English), others are obviously relatively recent acquisitions (**ragby, autobus**). Several appeared in the introductory section; take a second look at them, train yourself to 'see through' the uncouth spelling. How such words are adapted into Czech will help reinforce your sense of the value of letters in native words. You could start with **ahoj**, the common greeting used among friends, like *hi* or *hello*, or *'bye* or *cheerio*.

Then try to guess what the following imports from English mean:

<b>a</b> sendvič	<b>e</b> víkend	<b>i</b> trénink
<b>b</b> šejkr	<b>f</b> tým	<b>j</b> gól
<b>c</b> lančmít	<b>g</b> šoumen	<b>k</b> kombajn
<b>d</b> džem	<b>h</b> svetr	<b>l</b> chuligán

The answers are in the **Key to the exercises** at the back of the book.

# 02

jak se  
jmenujete?  
what's your name?

In this unit you will learn

- how to make introductions
- how to ask where someone comes from
- how to form verbs in the present tense

## Dialogue 1

A group of people, Štěpán Bělohlávek, Jan Novák and Hilary Smith, meet in their hotel lobby. They have seen each other before, but do not all know each other yet.

- Štěpán** Dobrý den. Smím se vám konečně představit?  
**Jan** Samozřejmě.  
**Štěpán** Jmenuji se Štěpán Bělohlávek.  
**Jan** Těší mě.  
**Štěpán** Mimochodem, ještě nevím, jak se jmenujete vy.  
**Jan** Jan Novák. A smím vás představit? To je Hilary Smithová.  
**Hilary** Z Anglie.  
**Štěpán** Těší mě.  
**Jan** (to Jan) A odkud jste vy?  
**Jan** Z Prahy, a vy?  
**Štěpán** Z Manchesteru. Slečno Smithová, odkud pocházíte vy?  
**Hilary** Z Edinburghu. Omlouvám se, ale já moc nemluví česky.  
**Štěpán** Tak vy jste vlastně Skotka, ne Angličanka. Já taky nejsem Angličan, ale Čech, emigrant.

*A fourth person joins them.*

- Pavel** Promiňte, že ruším. Jsem taky český emigrant, ale z Německa, z Berlína. Jmenuji se Pavel Lenoš a pocházím původně z Brna.  
**Jan** Tedy Moravan.  
**Pavel** Ano.

<b>Smím se vám představit?</b>	<i>May I introduce myself (to you)?</i>
<b>vám</b>	<i>to you</i>
<b>konečně</b>	<i>at last</i>
<b>samozřejmě</b>	<i>of course</i>
<b>Jmenuji se ...</b>	<i>My name is ...</i>
<b>mě</b>	<i>me</i>
<b>mimochodem</b>	<i>by the way</i>
<b>ještě nevím</b>	<i>I still don't know/I don't know yet</i>
<b>Jak se jmenujete?</b>	<i>What is your name?</i>
<b>Smím vás představit?</b>	<i>May I introduce you?</i>
<b>To je</b>	<i>This is</i>
<b>to</b>	<i>this</i>
<b>z</b>	<i>from</i>
<b>z Anglie</b>	<i>from England</i>
<b>Odkud jste?</b>	<i>Where are you from?</i>
<b>odkud</b>	<i>where from</i>
<b>jste</b>	<i>you are</i>

<b>slečno Smithová</b>	<i>Miss Smith (when addressing her)</i>
<b>slečna</b>	<i>Miss</i>
<b>odkud pocházíte?</b>	<i>Where do you come from?</i>
<b>Omlouvám se</b>	<i>I apologize, I'm sorry</i>
<b>Nemluví česky</b>	<i>I don't speak Czech</i>
<b>česky</b>	<i>(in) Czech</i>
<b>moc</b>	<i>much, a lot</i>
<b>Mluví jenom anglicky</b>	<i>I only speak English</i>
<b>anglicky</b>	<i>(in) English</i>
<b>tak</b>	<i>so</i>
<b>vy jste vlastně X, ne Y</b>	<i>you are really a X, not a Y</i>
<b>já taky nejsem Angličan</b>	<i>I'm not English either</i>
<b>Čech</b>	<i>Czech</i>
<b>emigrant</b>	<i>émigré</i>
<b>Promiňte, že ruším</b>	<i>Forgive me for intruding</i>
<b>český</b>	<i>Czech (adjective)</i>
<b>ale z Německa</b>	<i>but from Germany</i>
<b>původně</b>	<i>originally</i>
<b>z Brna</b>	<i>from Brno</i>
<b>tedy Moravan</b>	<i>a Moravian then</i>
<b>ano</b>	<i>yes</i>

**Těší mě** *Pleased to meet you (Lit. it consoles me)*

Dictionary forms of some of the other words you have met:

<b>představit (se)</b>	<i>to introduce (oneself)</i>	<b>pocházet</b>	<i>to come from</i>
<b>jmenovat se</b>	<i>to be called</i>	<b>mluvit</b>	<i>to speak</i>
<b>omlouvát se</b>	<i>to apologize</i>		

## Notes

### 1 Introducing yourself

To say *My name is ...* use *Jmenuji se ...*. Sometimes, in less formal circumstances, you might also hear, and say, *jmenuju* – compare *děkuju/děkuji* in Unit 1.

### 2 Surnames

Surnames in Czech vary by sex. Generally, a female's surname is formed by the addition of the ending *-ová* to the male form, even in the case of foreign surnames, hence *Novák-Nováková*, *Smith-Smithová*. Native surnames ending in *-ek*, *-ec* or *-el* lose



the -e- in the process, hence Bělohlávek-Bělohlávková, Němec-Němcová, Havel-Havlová. Feminine surname forms change according to their function in the sentence in the same way as adjectives do. Note also pan (Mr) and paní (Mrs).

### 3 Other male/female equivalents

Czech has hardly any nouns of common gender, i.e. applicable to persons of either sex. You will always know from the noun used to refer to them whether a doctor, a German or a worker, for example, is a man or a woman. For females the word will usually have a distinctive feminine suffix which is either added to the masculine word, replaces a masculine ending or alters the masculine stem.

doktor-doktorka	doctor
dělník-dělnice	worker
Čech-Češka	a Czech
cizinec-cizinka	foreigner
průvodce-průvodkyně	guide

The first type, simple addition of -ka, is the most widespread: student-ka (*student*), občan-ka (*citizen*) (and others you can identify among the nationalities listed opposite). The second type is also very frequent: úředník-úřednice (*office-worker*), tlumočník-tlumočnice (*interpreter*).

### 4 Making apologies

Promiňte means *Excuse me, I'm sorry* (Lit. Forgive!) when you have committed a minor error, to apologize in advance of an intrusion, or when asking to be let past. The borrowed expression pardon has a generally similar function. Omlouvám se means *I'm sorry, I apologize* for a state of affairs.

### 5 Saying where you are from

To say where you are from you may use either jsem (*I am*) or pocházím (*I come/hail*) with the preposition z (*from*), which always takes the genitive case, more details of which are given in Unit 7. The following table gives you a few samples of origins and nationalities.

The nominative (dictionary) forms of these place names are:

Amerika	Brno, Morava	Irsko	Skotsko
Anglie, Manchester	Čechy, Česko	Kanada	Slovensko
Berlín, Německo	Francie, Paříž	Praha	Wales

Note that Čechy, *Bohemia* is the name of only the western province of Česká republika, *Czech Republic*; the latter may be replaced by the approved one-word alternative Česko, which the Czech authorities have decreed shall be *Czechia* in English.

z Ameriky	jsem Američan/-ka	I'm American
z Anglie, z Manchesteru	jsem Angličan/-ka	I'm English
z Berlína, z Německa	jsem Němec/Němka	I'm German
z Brna, z Moravy	jsem Moravan/-ka	I'm Moravian
z Čech, Česka	jsem Čech/Češka	I'm Bohemian, Czech
z Francie, z Paříže	jsem Francouz/-ka	I'm French
z Irska	jsem Ir/-ka	I'm Irish
z Kanady	jsem Kanadan/-ka	I'm Canadian
z Prahy	jsem Pražan/-ka	I'm a Prager
ze Skotska	jsem Skot/-ka	I'm Scottish
ze Slovenska	jsem Slovák/Slovenka	I'm Slovak
z Walesu	jsem Velšan/-ka	I'm Welsh

### 6 že - 'that'

že means *that* and introduces clauses that state a fact (as opposed to a circumstance of time, manner, place, condition and so on), e.g. *I think that ...*, *Would you believe that ...*, *It's hard to imagine that ...*

### 7 Some verb forms

In Unit 1 you met some of the parts (*I, you*) of some verbs. Here are some forms of the 3rd person singular (i.e. *he, she, it*), namely je (*is*), těší, in těší mě (*pleases*, Lit. consoles). For the time being note that they end in a vowel. Note again the previous variety in forms for the 1st person singular (*I*): in -m, as in omlouvám se, nemluvím, pocházím, and in -u as in the everyday děkuju, or -i as in jmenuji se.

Note how all 2nd person (*you*) forms met so far end in -te: jste (*you are*), jmenujete se (*you are called*), pocházíte (*you come from*), promiňte ([*you*] forgive!). Vy (*you*) itself also appears in several utterances.

## 8 Negation

A number of the verb forms met so far have begun with the prefix **ne-** – **nejste** (*you are not*), **nevím** (*I don't know*), **nemluví** (*I don't speak*). The translations show these to be negative forms; indeed, **ne-** is the universal negative prefix in Czech verbs. It is written as one word with the verb which it negates, and therefore it attracts the stress (listen out for this as you play back the dialogue on your recording). **Ne** on its own is *not* or *no*, the opposite of **ano** (*yes*).

### Exercises

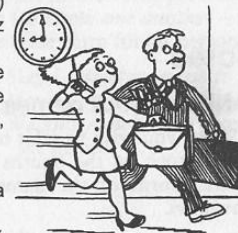
- 1 a You are at a reception. Ask someone if you may introduce yourself, then give your name:  
S... s. v.. p.....? J..... s. X.Y.
- b Now ask Jane Williams if you may introduce her: (To Jane): S... v.. p.....? (to a third party): T. j. J.W. (Did you remember how to treat Jane's surname?)
- c That person wishes to convey his/her pleasure, so will say: T... m.
- 2 a You wish to convey that, despite appearances, you are actually English, not Czech (choose forms appropriate to your sex): J... v..... A...../....., n. Č.../Č.....
- b or that John is actually Scots, not English: John j. v..... S..., n. A.....
- c or that Sabine is actually French, not German: Sabine j. v..... F....., n. N.....
- 3 a Having cleared that up, now ask Miss Schmidt where she is from: S..... S., o.... j...?
- b Her reply, in impeccable Czech, that she is from New York (z New Yorku) puzzles you, so ask where she comes from originally: Ale o.... p..... p.....?
- 4 Slečna Schmidtová je Američanka. Je studentka. Make up more sentences on this pattern using the following:
 

a	Patrick	Irish	student
b	Mrs Evans	Welsh	guide
c	Mária Slobodová	Slovak	doctor
d	Heinz Bayer	German	interpreter
- 5 Slečna Schmidtová je studentka. Je z Ameriky. Taking the same four names as in 4, invert the information.

## Dialogue 2

Various people are getting to know each other in a hotel lobby. (Zdeněk Navrátil, Petr Dlouhý and Mr Smith).

- Zdeněk** Dobrý den. Neznám vás z letadla?  
**Petr** Dobrý den. Ano. Můžu se vám představit? Petr Dlouhý.
- Zdeněk** Zdeněk Navrátil. Těší mě.  
**Petr** Mě taky.  
**Zdeněk** Já jsem tady na konferenci. Vy taky?  
**Petr** Ne, já v Praze studuju, normálně bydlím v Londýně.
- Zdeněk** Kdo je ten pán, a ta paní?  
**Petr** To jsou Smithovi, z Londýna. (to the Smiths) Dobrý den. (to Zdeněk) Známe se taky z letadla.
- Mr Smith** Dobrý den. My jdeme ven. Bohužel musíme spěchat. Mimochodem, co je to tam naproti?  
**Petr** To je hotel Jalta.  
**Mr Smith** Aha, děkuju. A na shledanou.
- Zdeněk** Ti ale mají naspěch! Já musím taky jít. Konference začíná.



Ti ale mají naspěch!

Neznám vás z letadla?	Don't I know you from the plane?
letadlo	aeroplane
Můžu se vám představit?	May I introduce myself (to you)?
(Já) jsem tady na konferenci	I'm here for a conference
konference	conference
studuju	I study, I am studying
bydlím	I live (dwell)
normálně	normally
Kdo je ten pán?	Who is that (gentle)man?
pán	(gentle)man
ta paní	that lady
paní	lady
(My) jdeme ven	We're going out

	<b>bohužel</b>	<i>unfortunately</i>
	<b>Musíme spěchat</b>	<i>We must hurry</i>
	<b>Co je to?</b>	<i>What is it/this/that?</i>
	<b>tam</b>	<i>there</i>
	<b>naproti</b>	<i>opposite</i>
	<b>To je hotel Jalta</b>	<i>That/This/It is the Hotel Jalta</i>
	<b>Ti ale mají naspěch!</b>	<i>My, they're in a hurry!</i>
	<b>Musím jít</b>	<i>I must go</i>
	<b>konference začíná</b>	<i>the conference is beginning</i>

**To jsou Smithovi** *it's the Smiths, those/these/they are the Smiths*

**Známe se z letadla** *We know each other from the plane*

## Notes

### 9 More about names

a When you wish to refer to a couple, or all the members of a family, such as the Smiths or the Nováks, you have to use another form of the name, with the suffix **-ovi**: **Smithovi**, **Novákoví**.

b Some surnames look like adjectives, here **Dlouhý** (= *long*); compare this with **dobrý**, the masculine form for *good*. Mrs Dlouhý would be called **paní Dlouhá**, the feminine form. (Saying *the Dlouhýs* is too complex a matter; ignore it!)

### 10 What is ..? What are ..? Who is ..? Who are ..?

To ask *What is ..?*, *Who is ..?*, use **Co** (*what*) and **Kdo** (*who*) with **je** (*is*):

Co je to?	<i>What is that?</i>
Kdo je ten pán?	<i>Who is that man?</i>

To reply to either use **To je ...** (*it is* or *that/this is*).

To je pan Smith. *That is Mr Smith.*

**To** is a demonstrative ('pointing') pronoun. If the item to be introduced is plural, use the same **kdo**, **co** or **to**, but with the verb form **jsou** (*are*):

To jsou Smithovi. *They are/Those are the Smiths.*

### 11 What about ..?

Such questions are expressed by a simple formula equivalent to *And what ..?* e.g. **A co Praha?** (*And what about Prague?*), whether the phrase is used as the basis of an inquiry, a suggestion or in amazement.

### 12 Here and there

Notice the opposition between **tady** (*here*) and **tam** (*there*). You may also meet **zde** and **tu** for *here*.

### 13 The reflexive pronoun: se, 'self'

This vital little word has many uses in Czech. So far you have met it in its two primary uses: in forms of the verbs **představit se** (*to introduce oneself*) and **znát se** (*to know one another* – its reciprocal use). Notice that **se** is the same form for all persons:

Smím se představit?	<i>May I introduce myself?</i>
Smíme se představit?	<i>May we introduce ourselves?</i>
Známe se z letadla.	<i>We know each other from the plane.</i>

### 14 Identifying verbs

Verbs are quoted in the dictionary in the infinitive (equivalent to English forms with *to*, e.g. *to know*). In Czech all infinitives end in **-t**. So far you have met **představit** (*to introduce*), **jít** (*to go*), **spěchat** (*to hurry*) and, in 13 above, **znát** (*to know*).

The forms **jsou** (*they are*) and **mají** (*they have*) are your first encounter with the 3rd person plural (*they* form) of verbs – of **být** (*to be*) and **mít** (*to have*). All 3rd person plural forms end in either **-ou** or **-í**.

### 15 Adding informality to requests

**Můžu** in, say, **Můžu se vám představit** means *can I* and is an informal alternative to **smím** (*may I*), met previously.

### 16 More about verbs

You have now met various verb endings with a common function, such as **-ou** or **-í** both meaning *they*. There are four main verb classes in Czech. Each verb class is associated with a

particular vowel or other marker: -a-, -i-, -e- and -uje- (though these may not appear in all the forms of a particular class).

You should now familiarize yourself with the verb classes, or conjugations, in full.

	a-conjugation	i-conjugation	e-conjugation	uje-conjugation
	<b>znát</b> (know)	<b>mluvit</b> (speak)	<b>moci/moci</b> (can)	<b>jmenovat</b> (name)
I	znám	mluvím	můžu/mohu	jmenuju/jmenuji
you	znáš	mluviš	můžeš	jmenuješ
he/she/it	zná	mluví	může	jmenuje
we	známe	mluvíme	můžeme	jmenujeme
you	znáte	mluvíte	můžete	jmenujete
they	znají	mluví	můžou/mohou	jmenujou/jmenují

**i** As a learning strategy, familiarize yourself with the infinitive and the he/she/it (3rd person singular) form of any verb where you are given it. This will usually enable you to predict the other forms. The need for this applies particularly to members of the e-conjugation, of which the example used, **moci**, is typical in the apparent lack of correlation between the two crucial parts.

Note: where two equivalent forms of a verb appear in the tables, the right-hand ones are the more formal – largely, though not exclusively, restricted to written language. Infinitives of the **moci** type are the only survivors, when used, of infinitives not ending in -t.

#### The uje-conjugation

This class is entirely predictable: any infinitive ending in -ovat (see **jmenovat** above) will follow this pattern, i.e. exchanging the -ova- for -uj- before adding the endings. Similarly, most verbs ending in -it or -at (but not -ovat!) can safely be predicted to follow **mluvit** and **znát** respectively.

Like most other languages, Czech has the odd irregularity, and due warning of these will be given as they arise.

#### Infinitives ending in -et or -ět

With these it is essential also to learn the *they*-form (the 3rd person plural). Some are members of the same class as **mluvit**; others, while generally similar, have a different *they* form, e.g. **pocházet** (come from), hence **Pocházejí z Brna** (They come from Brno).

When you begin to learn new verbs in their dictionary forms, rather than as parts of phrases, the *they*-form will be indicated until you learn how to predict which one will apply. The issue is complicated by a number of verbs which have competing, but equally accepted forms, such as **muset**: **musí** *he, she, it must, musí* or **musejí** *they must*. Similarly with **večeřet** *to dine* (that is, take one's evening meal).

#### Watch for the -š ending

The first *you*-form (2nd person singular) always ends in -š; it is reserved for addressing children, animals, God and, in certain contexts, social equals. It will therefore be usual, at the outset, for you to employ the *you* forms ending in -te (2nd person plural), which it is polite to use even when addressing one person.

### 17 The verb být ('to be')

This is an irregular verb.

<b>jsem</b>	<i>I am</i>	<b>nejsem</b>	<i>I am not</i>
<b>jsi</b>	<i>you are</i>	<b>nejsi</b>	<i>you are not</i> (familiar singular)
<b>je</b>	<i>he/she/it is</i>	<b>není (!)</b>	<i>he/she/it isn't</i>
<b>jsme</b>	<i>we are</i>	<b>nejsme</b>	<i>we aren't</i>
<b>jste</b>	<i>you are</i>	<b>nejste</b>	<i>you aren't</i> (plural or polite singular)
<b>jsou</b>	<i>they are</i>	<b>nejsou</b>	<i>they aren't</i>

On the other hand, **mít** (*to have*) is entirely regular, like **znát** (3rd person singular **má**), though its infinitive would not predict this. Thus **mít**, like **moci**, may serve as a warning to take particular care when learning how to assign monosyllabic verbs to their conjugational class.

### Exercises

- Imagine yourself at a party, where few people know each other. This exercise will help you to cope with several things you might hear asked or need to ask yourself. First say the answers out loud then write them down checking you know exactly which accents go where.
  - Reply to the question **Odkud jste?**, suggesting Prague, London, England, Wales: J... z P.../L.../A.../W... .
  - In what two ways would you expect to hear someone proposing to introduce himself to you? S.../M... s. v. p.....?



- c Remind them that you met in the plane: Z.... s. z l.....  
 d You have been asked to identify the person(s) opposite, who you know as Mr Smith/Mrs Smith/the Smiths: N....., t. j. p.. S..../p... S..... . T. j... S.....  
 e Now someone wants to know who this person is (i) here, (ii) there; what will you expect to hear? (i) K.. j. t. t...? (ii) ... .. t...?  
 f Explain that he/she is a student from Edinburgh: J. t. s...../.. z E.....  
 g You will frequently need to find out what something is; what will you say? C. j. t.?  
 h Now make your first excuses: apologize for having to hurry to the conference: P..... (or: O..... s.), a.. m.... s..... n. k.....

7 Unscramble the following sentences:

- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a máte jak se                   | d Londýně vítám v vás    |
| b Brna profesor z pochází       | e představit slečno vás  |
| c tady jsem jsem že v rád Praze | f představit vám smím se |

8 You should now be able to pronounce most things you read in Czech. Rehearse the various sections on pronunciation and make sure you understand and remember them, and then read out loud the following passage. If you have the recording, check your pronunciation with what you hear.

Manželé Brabcovi bydlí v hotelu Jalta. Jejich kufr je ještě v taxíku, protože taxikář chce deset dolarů a Brabcovi mají jenom kreditní karty a koruny. Honem hledají směnárnu, protože už jsou unavení a mají taky hlad.

v taxíku (pron. ftaxíku)	in the taxi
protože	because
chce	he wants
deset	ten
honem	in a hurry
hlad (pron. hlat)	hunger
mají hlad	they are hungry

manželé Brabcovi (pron. braptsovi) Mr and Mrs Brabec  
 hledají směnárnu (pron. smňenárnu) they are looking for a  
 bureau de change  
 už (pron. uš) jsou unavení (pron. unaveňí) they're tired by now

9 Just to get you familiar with the forms of the verbs, make up sentences in Czech based on the following:

- a He is looking for the hotel.  
 b I must hurry.  
 c We don't know you.  
 d They come from London.  
 e She is staying at Hotel Jalta (v hotelu Jalta).  
 f You are Mr Smith.

### i Some free time

You will find Czechs out shopping, having done their day's work, relatively early in the afternoon because the working day starts as early as six or seven in the morning (a custom blamed on the 19th-century Austrian Emperor Francis Joseph, within whose territories the Czech Lands fell).



Without having to keep their shopping to the weekends, many Czechs use the weekend to get away from the towns and spend time at the second homes which many are fortunate enough to possess. These **chalupas** and **chatas** (cottages or purpose-built chalets – though the terms can apply to almost any building used for weekend recreation) are an important institution, but one which has declined slightly, since the market economy has made their upkeep, and the petrol needed to reach them, more costly. For the time being, you may still, if you acquire personal contacts in the Czech Republic, look forward to a weekend in the country with your hosts and their family. The Czechs are very hospitable, and this is one of the best ways to see the country's beautiful landscapes.

# 03

## kde pracujete? where do you work?

- In this unit you will learn
- how to ask where someone works
  - how to ask what their job is
  - how to use basic kinship terms
  - how to ask about the work of others in the family
  - how to express more complex things about work

### ▣ Dialogue 1

A number of people meet and quickly become acquainted.

- Navrátil Smith** Dobrý den. Vy jste ten pán z letadla, že?  
**Navrátil Smith** Dobrý den. Ne, my se neznáme, já jsem cizinec. Promiňte. A odkud jste?  
**Navrátil Smith** Z New Yorku. Jsem tu na konferenci. To je moje žena a syn.  
**Navrátil Mrs Smith** Těší mě. Navrátil.  
**Navrátil Smith** Mě také. Alice Smith. Bohužel nemluví česky. (to Mr Smith) Kde pracujete?  
**Navrátil Smith** Jsem inženýr. Pracuji v továrně. A vy?  
**Navrátil Smith** Pracuji ve školství. Jsem učitel. Vaše žena taky pracuje?  
**Smith** Ano, je úřednice, pracuje v bance.  
**Navrátil Smith** A co dělá váš syn?  
**Navrátil Smith** Je také úředník. Pracuje v pojišťovně v Manhattanu.  
**Smith** Moje žena pracuje v divadle. Je herečka.  
**Smith** To je zajímavé. Můj otec je také herec. A matka pracuje v kanceláři. V návrhářství.

*The hotel porter approaches.*

- Porter** Promiňte, že ruším. Pane Smith, máte telefon.

<b>cizinec</b>	<i>foreigner</i>
<b>moje žena a (můj) syn</b>	<i>my wife and (my) son</i>
<b>Kde pracujete?</b>	<i>Where do you work?</i>
<b>kde</b>	<i>where</i>
<b>pracovat</b>	<i>to work</i>
<b>inženýr</b>	<i>engineer (f. inženýrka)</i>
<b>v továrně</b>	<i>in a factory</i>
<b>ve školství</b>	<i>in education</i>
<b>učitel</b>	<i>teacher (f. učitelka)</i>
<b>Vaše žena taky pracuje?</b>	<i>Does your wife work as well?</i>
<b>úřednice</b>	<i>office worker (f)</i>
<b>v bance</b>	<i>in a bank</i>
<b>A co dělá váš syn?</b>	<i>And what does your son do?</i>
<b>dělat</b>	<i>to do</i>
<b>Je také úředník</b>	<i>He's a clerk (office worker) too</i>
<b>v pojišťovně</b>	<i>in an insurance office</i>
<b>v divadle</b>	<i>in the theatre (at a theatre)</i>
<b>herec/herečka</b>	<i>actor/actress</i>
<b>To je zajímavé.</b>	<i>That's interesting.</i>
<b>můj otec</b>	<i>my father</i>

<b>matka</b>	<i>mother</i>
<b>v kanceláři</b>	<i>in an office</i>
<b>v návrhářství</b>	<i>in design</i>
<b>rušit</b>	<i>to disturb, intrude</i>
<b>Máte telefon</b>	<i>You have a phone-call</i>
<b>telefon</b>	<i>telephone (-call)</i>

**Vy jste ten pán z letadla, že?** *You're that (gentle)man from the plane, aren't you?*  
**My se neznáme** *We haven't met* (Lit. We don't know each other)  
**také** *also* (a more formal version of *taky*)

## Notes

### 1 Stating your job

One basic way of stating your employment (or other characteristics) is, as in English, to use the verb *to be* and the noun denoting the profession. Remember, the form of that noun will usually differ according to the sex of the speaker. You have already met such pairs as **úředník/úřednice** (*office worker*) and **cizinec/cizinka** (*foreigner*). Note some others:

Male herec inženýr učitel novinář doktor

Female herečka inženýrka učitelka novinářka doktorka

Another way is to use the preposition *v* (*in, at*) plus either a the physical place of employment:

<b>továrna</b>	<i>factory</i>
<b>v továrně</b>	<i>in a factory</i>
<b>banka</b>	<i>bank</i>
<b>v bance</b>	<i>in a bank</i>
<b>kancelář</b>	<i>office</i>
<b>v kanceláři</b>	<i>in an office</i>
<b>pojišťovna</b>	<i>insurance office</i>
<b>v pojišťovně</b>	<i>in an insurance office</i>
<b>divadlo</b>	<i>theatre</i>
<b>v divadle</b>	<i>in a/the theatre</i>
<b>škola</b>	<i>school</i>
<b>ve škole</b>	<i>in (a) school</i>

or **b** the abstract noun denoting the general area of employment:

<b>školství</b>	<i>education</i>
<b>ve školství</b>	<i>in education</i>
<b>dráha</b>	<i>course, track, railway</i>
<b>na dráze</b>	<i>on the railways</i>
<b>doprava</b>	<i>transport</i>
<b>v dopravě</b>	<i>in transport</i>
<b>pojištnictví</b>	<i>insurance</i>
<b>v pojištnictví</b>	<i>in insurance</i>
<b>návrhářství</b>	<i>design(ing)</i>
<b>v návrhářství</b>	<i>in design</i>
<b>novinářství</b>	<i>journalism</i>
<b>v novinářství</b>	<i>in journalism</i>

The two ways do not necessarily mean the same thing, any more than in English: not everyone in journalism is a journalist. Of, say, a journalist or designer proper the more likely description will be to use the nouns: **Jsem novinář/-ka, Jsem návrhář/-ka.**

### 2 Kinship terms

<b>otec</b>	<i>father</i>	<b>dcera</b>	<i>daughter</i>
<b>matka</b>	<i>mother</i>	<b>syn</b>	<i>son</i>

The word **muž** means a *man, b husband*; **žena** means a *woman b wife*. There are more specific words for *husband* and *wife*, namely **manžel** and **manželka** (remember **manželé** *married couple* or *Mr and Mrs* from the last unit, and note again the feminine suffix *-ka*), but these are less likely to occur in more informal situations.

### 3 Můj, váš – 'my, your', and so on

These are possessive pronouns and they change according to the gender of the noun which they are specifying. For the time being, all you need to remember is that you must use the form **můj** (*my*) and **váš** (*your*) to accompany nouns in the singular denoting males e.g. **můj/váš otec** (*my/your father*), and all other grammatically masculine nouns (see below), and **moje** and **vaše** for females e.g. **vaše matka** (*your mother*) and feminine nouns. The same pattern of distribution applies to **náš** and **naše** (*our*) e.g. **náš syn** (*our son*), **naše dcera** (*our daughter*).

In practice, kinship terms very often dispense with the possessive pronoun, especially if it is apparent from the context whose relation is meant:

Otec je bankéř.  
Žena pracuje?

*My father is a banker.  
Does your wife work?*

#### 4 Such economical verb forms!

You may have noticed (if not, look back at some phrases) that the forms of the verb correspond to a variety of forms in English.

Žena pracuje is entirely adequate both to *my/your wife works* (or *is working* or *has a job*), and, as a question, *Does your wife work?* (or *Is your wife working?*). Similarly, for example, *Co dělá Jan?* means *What does Jan do?* (permanently) or *What is Jan doing?* (here and now).

Also, since Czech often does not use the *I, you* and so on as the subject of the verb (*pracuju* is *I work*, even without putting in *já* for *I*), notice that the third person singular form, e.g. *pracuje*, will mean variously *he* or *she* (even *it*) *works/is working* according to context. To avoid ambiguity, or for emphasis (or simply as a feature of more informal speech patterns) the pronouns *on* (*he*) and *ona* (*she*) may be inserted.

#### 5 Personal pronouns

<b>já</b> <i>I</i>	<b>on</b> <i>he</i>	<b>my</b> <i>we</i>
<b>ty</b> <i>you</i> (singular familiar)	<b>ona</b> <i>she</i>	<b>vy</b> <i>you</i> (singular formal or plural)
	<b>ono</b> <i>it</i>	<b>oni</b> <i>they</i>

Note that *oni* is only one of three forms for *they*, the others being *ony* and *ona* (this too is explained later). *Ono* (*it*) is often replaced by *to*.

#### 6 Addressing a person

Addressing someone requires a special case form – the vocative. In a previous unit Miss Smith was addressed as *slečno Smithová*, where *slečno* is the vocative case of the noun *slečna* (*young/unmarried woman*). And in the dialogue above in this unit the porter addresses Mr Smith (*pan Smith*) as *pane Smith*. Here *pane* is also the vocative form. Most types of noun have a distinctive form in this function (see Unit 14).

#### 7 A small matter of spelling

Related words can vary in the length of syllables, which affects the spelling and pronunciation. In this unit this applies to such pairs as *váš* (m.) and *vaše* (f.) (*your*), and *pán* (*gentleman*) and *pan* (*Mr, sir*).

This is not a trivial matter since the meaning may change considerably:

Chceme **byt** v Londýně.      *We want a flat in London.*  
Chceme **být** v Londýně.      *We want to be in London.*

Remember that the same difference of long or short syllables may also apply to totally unrelated words (see p. xii).

#### 8 When does *v* become *ve*?

If the preposition *v* stands before a word beginning with *v-*, *f-* or certain groups of consonants, it acquires the support of the vowel *-e*, hence *ve vodě* (*voda* = *water*), *ve farmácii* (*farmacie* = *pharmacy*) and *ve škole* (*škola* = *school*).

The different endings of the various expressions you have met with *v/ve* will be explained later in the course.

#### 9 More about *že*

Another of the functions of *že* is that, informally, it is an adequate equivalent to any of the vast number of English question tags (e.g. *will she, wouldn't you, did they, mightn't he*):

Vy mě neznáte, **že**?      *You don't know me, do you?*  
Petr pracuje, **že**?      *Peter's working, isn't he?*

This makes it even more economical than the verb forms above!

#### Exercises

1 You're still getting to know people. Now you can be a bit inquisitive as to their families and jobs:

- a Ask a man where he works, then what his wife does:  
K.. p.....? A c. d... v... ž...?
- b Then they ask what you do: *Co děláte vy?*; reply that you are: i a journalist; ii a doctor; iii a teacher; iv an office worker. (Give the male then the female versions.)  
i J... n...../-..      iii u...../-..  
ii d...../-..      iv ú...../ú.....

- 2 You'll then be asked **Kde pracujete?** Reply, substituting the items suggested after the samples, according to: a place, b place of work, c field.
- Pracuju v Brně (London, New York, Prague, Edinburgh)
  - Pracuju v hotelu (factory, office, theatre, a school)
  - Pracuju v pojištnictví (education, design, banking, transport)  
(Did you remember when to replace *v* by *ve*?)
- 3
- Now you ask where the other person's wife works:  
**K.. p..... v... ž...?**
  - and what their son does:  
**A c. d... v.. s...?**
  - Indicate that your own son works in the theatre, and why:  
**M.. s.. p..... v d....., j. h....**
  - The conversation is interrupted by the telephone; excuse yourself for breaking off the conversation, explaining why: **P....., m.. t.....** . (There are of course two other possibilities for the apology: **O..... s., and P.....**)
- 4 Now try to create sentences of your own similar to some of the questions above, about members of your family and their jobs. You can compile, from a dictionary, a list of jobs and workplaces that would be useful to talk about your own circumstances. Be sure to check for female equivalents where relevant.
- 5 **Je to pravda nebo ne?** (*Is it true or not?*) Reply: **Ano, je to pravda** (*Yes, it is true*), or **Ne, není to pravda** (*No, it isn't true*) to the following statements based on the dialogue:
- Pan Smith a pan Navrátil se už znají.
  - Pan Smith je z New Yorku.
  - Paní Smithová mluví česky.
  - Pan Smith je v Praze na konferenci.
  - Paní Navrátilová je bankérka.
  - Paní Smithová je učitelka.
- 6 Where you answered **Ne, není to pravda**, in 5, supply a short true statement.

## ▣ Dialogue 2

The Smiths are on holiday in Prague. Mr Smith and a new acquaintance, Dr Jiří Švejda, are getting to know more about each other's background.

- Švejda** Dobré ráno, pane Smith.  
**Smith** Dobrý den. Jak se máte?  
**Švejda** Děkuju, dobře. Co dělá paní Smithová?  
**Smith** Ještě spí.  
**Švejda** A co vlastně dělá doma?  
**Smith** Máme vlastní podnik, tak mi někdy pomáhá v práci. Jinak je v domácnosti.  
**Švejda** A máte děti?  
**Smith** Ano, syn je nezaměstnaný, ale dcera je zaměstnaná v hotelu. Má docela dobré místo, v kanceláři.  
**Švejda** Co dělá váš podnik?  
**Smith** Naše továrna vyrábí koberce. A co vy a vaše rodina?  
**Švejda** Já přednáším na univerzitě, ale bohužel jsem svobodný.  
**Smith** Bohužel nebo bohudík?...  
 Ještěže žena spí a neslyší mě!



Ještěže paní Smithová spí!

<b>ještě spí</b>	<i>he/she is still asleep</i>
<b>spát (spí)</b>	<i>to sleep</i>
<b>doma</b>	<i>at home</i>
<b>máme vlastní podnik</b>	<i>we have our own business</i>
<b>vlastní</b>	<i>one's own</i>
<b>podnik</b>	<i>enterprise, firm, business</i>
<b>tak</b>	<i>so</i>
<b>někdy</b>	<i>sometimes</i>
<b>v práci</b>	<i>at work</i>
<b>práce</b>	<i>work</i>
<b>pomáhat (pomáhá)</b>	<i>to help</i>
<b>jinak</b>	<i>otherwise</i>
<b>je v domácnosti</b>	<i>she is a housewife</i>
<b>domácnost</b>	<i>household</i>
<b>máte děti?</b>	<i>have you got children?</i>
<b>syn je nezaměstnaný</b>	<i>my/our son is unemployed</i>



zaměstnání	employment
místo	place, job
naše továrna vyrábí koberece	our factory makes carpets
továrna	factory
koberec	carpet
rodina	family
přednáším na univerzitě	I lecture at the university
univerzita	university
jsem svobodný	I am single
bohudík	fortunately
ještěže	it's a good thing
slyšet (slyší)	to hear

co vlastně dělá doma?	What does she actually do at home?
tak mi někdy pomáhá v práci	so she sometimes helps me at work
dcera je zaměstnaná v hotelu	my/our daughter is employed at a hotel
má dobré zaměstnání (or místo), má dobrou práci	he/she has a good job
vyrábět (he/she/it vyrábí, they vyrábějí)	make, manufacture
přednášet (he/she/it přednáší, they přednášejí)	to lecture
ještěže žena spí a neslyší mě	It's a good thing my wife's asleep and can't hear me

## Notes

### 10 Getting to grips with gender

In Unit 2 you saw the variety of verb forms. Now we must begin to clarify the situation with nouns and their gender.

All Czech nouns belong to one of three genders: masculine, feminine or neuter. This has consequences not only for how they change, but also for how other words, such as adjectives and some parts of verbs, show agreement with them. Some of these patterns have already appeared, for example the differences between *náš* and *naše*, or now between *nezaměstnaný*, referring, as it does in the dialogue, to a male, as opposed to *zaměstnaná*, referring to a female.

Gender has nothing to do with the sexes. Thus *Londýn*, *hotel*, *podnik* are masculine; *Praha*, *továrna*, *univerzita* are feminine; and *Brno*, *divadlo* and *letadlo* are neuter. The gender of very

many such nouns – which we shall call ‘hard’ nouns, since they have hard stems – can be predicted easily from these examples.

Unless they denote a male human, all nouns ending in *-a* are feminine; all nouns ending in *-o* are neuter. Nouns ending in a ‘hard’ consonant are masculine. But which consonants are hard? It is actually easier to exclude those which are ‘soft’ – there are fewer ‘soft’ consonants. Soft consonants are those that carry the háček (or its equivalent ‘apostrophe’ – in *ř* and *ď*), and *c* and *j*. Thus *zub* (*tooth*), *oběd* (*lunch*), *dialog* (*dialogue*) and *oděv* (*clothing*) are ‘hard’, while *muž*, *novinář*, *koberec* are ‘soft’ masculine nouns. Here predictions are less easy, since many feminine nouns end in the same range of ‘soft’ consonants, e.g. *garáž*, *kancelář* or *tramvaj*.

Moreover, there are numerous types of noun which have an ending, typically *-e*, on a soft stem (the part of the word without the ending) and could be members of any gender, for example:

masculine	<i>průvodce</i> guide
neuter	<i>vejce</i> egg
feminine	<i>práce</i> work

It is essential that each word whose gender cannot be predicted from the dictionary form should be learnt with its gender.

In future vocabulary boxes gender will be marked by the simple abbreviations (m), (f) and (n). Various tips for identifying certain gender sub-groups will be given as the opportunity arises. For example, the word *domácnost* from the dialogue is one representative of a vast class of feminine nouns with their own typical set of endings. They are recognized by the suffix *-ost*. Or again, almost any noun ending in *-í*, except *paní* (*Mrs, lady*) and *Jirí* (*George*), will belong to a special neuter class.

Throughout this note we have been referring to the form in which you will find nouns in the dictionary. It represents the nominative case of these nouns, the main function of which is to express the subject of the sentence: *Učitel spí* (*The teacher's asleep*). You have also seen such forms after the verb *být* (*be*): *Je učitel* (*He's a teacher*).

### 11 How to say where things are

The simplest ways of saying where something is are by means of *in* and *on*. You have already seen many such expressions, mostly containing *v* (*in*, sometimes *at*). The various forms of words

following *v* have been the locative case forms of the various noun classes. The locative case is also required after *na* (*on, at*) and a few other prepositions, including *o* (*about, concerning*), *po* (*up, down, along, all over and after*). In fact the locative case never occurs without a preposition. You will have seen that there are four endings for the word classes encountered so far, namely, *-ě, -u, -i* and *-í*.

### **-ě and -u endings**

The ending *-ě* is for most 'hard' stem nouns of any gender, except masculines and neuters whose stems end in *-g, -h, -ch, -k,* or *-r* which will usually have *-u*. Hence:

masculine	<i>v Londýně</i> , but: <i>v dialogu</i>
feminine	<i>na univerzitě</i>
neuter	<i>v autě</i> ( <i>in the car</i> ), <i>ve Skotsku</i>

The ending *-ě* only shows in this form after stems ending in *-b, -p, -f, -v* and *-m,* and *-d, -t* and *-n,* with the consequent changes in pronunciation (if you are uncertain about this, revise *The Czech alphabet and pronunciation* starting on p. xi). After other consonants the *-ě* appears as *-e*.

*v* pase *in the passport*    *ve váze* *in the vase*    *na kole* *on/by bicycle*

<b>pas</b>	<i>passport</i>	<b>kolo</b>	<i>wheel, bicycle</i>	<b>váza</b>	<i>vase</i>
------------	-----------------	-------------	-----------------------	-------------	-------------

Feminine nouns ending in *-g, -h, -ch, -k* or *-r* entail major consonant alternations, caused by the *-ě* ending:

<i>k</i> → <i>c</i>	as in <i>banka</i> , hence	<i>v bance</i> ( <i>in the bank</i> )
<i>h</i> → <i>z</i>	as in <i>knih</i> a ( <i>book</i> ), hence	<i>v knize</i> ( <i>in althe book</i> )
<i>g</i> → <i>z</i>	as in <i>Olga</i> , hence	<i>o Olze</i> ( <i>about Olga</i> )
<i>ch</i> → <i>š</i>	as in <i>stře</i> cha ( <i>roof</i> ), hence	<i>na střeše</i> ( <i>on the roof</i> )
<i>r</i> → <i>ř</i>	as in <i>fara</i> ( <i>vicarage</i> ), hence	<i>na faře</i> ( <i>at the vicarage</i> )

(*g*-stems are rare and occur only in foreign words)

Similar alternations before *-ě* apply to a small number of masculines and neuters (which therefore have not adopted the *-u* ending); such words will be duly indicated as they occur.

**Two advance warnings:** the above rules do not apply to most masculine names of people and animals, which will be dealt with separately. And many more 'hard' masculine nouns take the locative ending *-u* than the foregoing might suggest. They will include cases such as *ve Walesu* and *v hotelu*.

### **-í ending**

The ending *-í* is general for soft noun types, irrespective of gender:

masculine	<i>koberec</i> ( <i>carpet</i> )	<i>na koberci</i> ( <i>on the carpet</i> )
feminine	<i>kancelář</i> ( <i>office</i> )	<i>v kanceláři</i> ( <i>in althe office</i> )
masc. in -e	<i>správce</i> ( <i>caretaker</i> )	<i>o správci</i> ( <i>about the caretaker</i> )
neut. in -e	<i>moře</i> ( <i>sea</i> )	<i>v/na moři</i> ( <i>in/on the sea</i> )

Even the special class of feminine nouns to which *domácnost* belongs uses the *-í* ending, as you saw in the dialogue.

### **-í ending**

One of the largest noun classes overall are the neuters ending in *-í*. You have seen several already as the abstract nouns denoting various callings and disciplines (*novinářství* *journalism*). This class has relatively few distinct forms, indeed you have seen that their locative forms are like the nominative, ending in the same long *-í* (*v novinářství*). Not all items in the class share the abstract suffix *-ství* or *-ctví*; other examples include, say, *zelí* (*cabbage*), *nádraží* (*station*), *umění* (*art*) – the last two represent large sub-classes of neuter nouns.

## **12 Functions of na with the locative case**

While *na* literally means *on*, as in *na židli* (*židle* [f]) *on the chair*, *na Temži* (*Temže* [f]) *on the Thames*, it is widespread in many names of locations where English uses *at*.

<i>na univerzitě</i> ( <i>univerzita</i> )	<i>at (althe) university</i>
<i>na této poště</i> ( <i>pošta</i> )	<i>at this post-office</i>
<i>na tom koncertě</i> ( <i>koncert</i> )	<i>at that concert</i>
<i>na přednášce</i> ( <i>přednáška</i> )	<i>at a lecture</i>
<i>na trhu</i> ( <i>trh</i> )	<i>at (or on) the market</i>

Sometimes the opposite is true; English uses *at* and Czech *v*:

<i>v kině</i> ( <i>kino</i> )	<i>at/in the cinema</i>
<i>ve škole</i> ( <i>škola</i> )	<i>at/in the school</i>
<i>v práci</i> ( <i>práce</i> )	<i>at work</i>

Sometimes, especially with highland and island placenames, *na* replaces English *in*:

<i>na Slovensku</i>	<i>in Slovakia</i>
<i>na Kypru</i> ( <i>Kypr</i> )	<i>in Cyprus</i>

## **13 Fleeting -e-**

Notice that in the word *koberec* (*carpet*) the *-e-* before the final consonant is lost in *na koberci*.

## 14 Ways of expressing relief

ještěže (*it's a good thing that* or *thank goodness that*) conveys a particular attitude for which there is no convenient one-word device in English. Unlike the more neutral **bohudík** (*fortunately*), **ještěže** must stand at the head of the sentence.

## 15 Gender in adjectives

Had Jiří (*George*) been Jiřina (*Georgina*) – both are common names – and had she too been single, she would have said: **Jsem svobodná**, using the feminine adjectival ending.

The form of the adjective **zajímavý** (*interesting*) appearing in the dialogue – **zajímavě** – contains the basic neuter singular ending, previously met in **dobré ráno**. There will be more on adjectives in the next unit. Meanwhile, remember that the nominative singular of the main class of adjectives is:

-ý (masculine) -á (feminine) -é (neuter)

## 16 Negation

Earlier you learnt that the verb is negated by simple addition of the prefix **ne-**. Many adjectives can be negated in the same way: **nezaměstnaný** (*unemployed*). To a lesser extent it also works with nouns: **neodborník** (*non-specialist*), **Nečech** (*a non-Czech*). In all cases the stress shifts to the **ne-**, as the new first syllable.

## Exercises

- 7 You are still finding out about the people round you.
  - a Ask Mr Navrátil what job he does: C. d....., p... N.....?
  - b You may have been misunderstood to be inquiring what he happens to be doing here and now, so ask him instead where he works: K.. p.....?
  - c Ask if he has a good job: M... d.... m.....?
- 8 He has now asked you to state your own job; tell him, but bear in mind your sex (you may be a doctor, engineer, journalist, teacher, or you may use a dictionary to find an expression for your actual job): J... d...../-.. / i...../-.. / n...../-.. / u...../-..
- 9
  - a Now ask about Mr Navrátil's children's jobs (he has a son and a daughter): C. d... v.. s..? A c. d... v... d....?
  - b Conjecture that his wife also has a good job: V... ž... m. t... d.... m....., ž.?

10 Mr Navrátil now conjectures that you have no children; what do you expect to hear: V. n..... d..., ž.?

11 Express regret that you have no children: B..... n.... d... .

▶ 12 You have been asked where you met someone. According to the pattern: **Bylo to** (*it was*) ... **na konferenci**, reply in turn: At the post office, in school, in Brno, at home, at the university, at work, at the bank, in the plane.

You could now increase your active vocabulary by returning to the start of the course, retrieving all the nouns you have met and assigning them to gender – this really is an exercise in teaching yourself! In most cases it will be obvious; for the rest you may need to use the Glossary at the back of the book.

## i A few Czech conventions on titling

One of this unit's new words has been **inženýr**, which is used differently from its English apparent equivalent. Chiefly it is associated with a level of education roughly equivalent to any non-arts master's degree. Hence anyone comparable to an Englishman with M.Sc. after his name will write **Ing.** before the name in Czech. (The spelling **Ing.**, unofficially 'abbreviated' further to **ing.**, reflects an earlier spelling of the whole word from the time when it was borrowed into Czech from French.) Moreover since this is a title which precedes the name, it often enters into how you address people: in courteous usage, Czechs frequently employ, as in German, academic or functional titles instead of names, such as **pane doktore**, **pane profesore**, **paní profesorko**, **pane inženýre**, also **pane starosto** (*Mr Mayor*), **pane správce** (*Mr caretaker*). These terms are in the vocative (see Unit 14).

Note that, outside direct address, all titles, from **pan** and **paní** (abbreviated **p.**, **pi**) to **ing.**, **prof.** or even **král** (*king*, no abbreviation), and the alien **sir** and **lord**, are traditionally written with small letters, though increasingly **Dr**, **Lord**, **Prof.** and **Sir** are to be seen capitalized (wrongly according to Czech rules, but probably under the influence of English or German).

However, abbreviations of the Latin designations of academic degrees use capitals, usually before the name, in contrast to English usage: thus **PhDr.** Jan Moudrý, **RNDr.** Josef Ptáček, **JUDr.** Václav Pravec, and **MUDr.** Bedřich Stavinoha have doctorates in, respectively, philosophy (or arts), natural sciences, laws and medicine. Note also the titles **Mgr.** (**magistr**, f **magistra** *master*) written before the name and used by arts graduates after a full five-year course, and **Bc.** (**bakalář** *bachelor*) for those who have completed three years of undergraduate study; these came into use only in the 1990s.

# 04 jak bydlíte?

what is your house like?

- In this unit you will learn
- how to talk about how people live
  - how to say numbers
  - how to talk about going visiting
  - how to express possession
  - how to use *can* and *must*
  - how to express the 'direct object'

## ▶ Dialogue 1

Here is a conversation between pan Navrátil and his English friend Mr Smith, who are comparing notes on their respective homes.

- Smith** A jak bydlíte?  
**Navrátil** Bydlíme v bytě, ve věžáku. A vy?  
**Smith** My bydlíme v domě, máme svůj vlastní.  
**Navrátil** Bydlí někdo v Anglii v bytě?  
**Smith** Samozřejmě – v činžáku, nebo ve věžáku, jako u vás.  
**Navrátil** Kolik máte v domě místností?  
**Smith** Pět, jestliže počítáme kuchyň. A vy?  
**Navrátil** Náš byt je malý. Zato bratr má pěkný dům na české poměry. Má čtyři velké pokoje a příslušenství, dílnu, sklep a zahradu.  
**Smith** A váš byt?  
**Navrátil** Máme byt tři plus jedna.  
**Smith** Co to znamená?  
**Navrátil** Že máme tři pokoje – obývací pokoj a dvě ložnice – a kuchyň.  
**Smith** A co koupelna?  
**Navrátil** Ovšemže máme koupelnu a záchod, ale ty se nepočítají.  
**Smith** Váš byt tedy není zvlášť malý?  
**Navrátil** Asi ne, ale my máme pocit, že v tom velkém věžáku je malý.

<b>Bydlíme v bytě</b>	<i>We live in a flat</i>
<b>ve věžáku</b>	<i>in a tower block</i>
<b>v domě</b>	<i>in a house</i>
<b>v činžáku</b>	<i>in a tenement block</i>
<b>byt</b>	<i>flat</i>
<b>činžák</b>	<i>tenement block</i>
<b>věžák</b>	<i>tower block</i>
<b>dům</b>	<i>house</i>
<b>někdo</b>	<i>someone</i>
<b>Máme svůj byt/dům</b>	<i>We have our own flat/house</i>
<b>kolik</b>	<i>how much, how many</i>
<b>pokoj (m)</b>	<i>room</i>
<b>u nás</b>	<i>in our house, etc.</i>
<b>jestliže počítáme kuchyň</b>	<i>if we count the kitchen</i>
<b>jestliže</b>	<i>if</i>
<b>počítat</b>	<i>count</i>
<b>kuchyň or kuchyně (f)</b>	<i>kitchen</i>



Náš byt je malý	Our flat is small
malý	small
zato	on the other hand
bratr má pěkný dům	my brother has a nice house
bratr	brother
pěkný	nice
na české poměry	by Czech standards
čtyři velké pokoje	four big rooms
velký	big, large, great
příslušenství (n)	bathroom and lavatory
dílna	workshop
sklep	cellar
zahrada	garden
Co to znamená?	What does that mean?
ložnice (f)	bedroom
koupelna	bathroom
záchod	lavatory
ty se nepočítají	they don't count
váš byt tedy není zvlášť malý	so your flat isn't particularly small
zvlášť	particularly
asi ne	perhaps not
máme pocit, že ...	we have a/the feeling that ...
pocit	feeling
v tom velkém věžáku	in that great tower block

**Jak bydlíte?** *How do you live? (in the sense What is your home like?)*

**bydlet (bydlí)** *live (= dwell), also stay, as in a hotel*

**Kolik máte místností (or pokojů)?** *How many rooms do you have?*

**místnost (f)** *room (this word behaves like domácnost in Unit 3)*

**u vás** *in your house, country, street, class, case, etc.*

**poměry** *conditions (poměr relation(ship), ratio, attitude)*

**(my) máme byt 3 + 1** (read as **tři plus jedna**) *we have a three-room flat*

**obývací pokoj** (colloquial **obývák**) *living room (from obývat to inhabit)*

**ovšemže** *of course (conjunction, = it goes without saying that)*

## Notes

### 1 Numerals

You cannot progress far without numbers in any language. *One* is **jeden**, which has three forms according to the three genders:

jeden dům/pokoj	one house/room
jedna koupelna/ložnice	one bathroom/bedroom
jedno okno/zelí	one window/cabbage

Sometimes, where there is no direct reference to any item of a particular gender, the feminine form, **jedna**, is used as the neutral form. This will become more significant later, but note the conventional way in which Czech flat sizes are given (3 + 1 – **tři plus jedna** meaning a living room, two bedrooms and a kitchen).

*Two* has two forms, **dva** for masculine and **dvě** for feminine and neuter; they are followed by nouns in the plural, which you have not learnt yet, so for the time being learn these as phrases.

dva pokoje	two rooms
dvě ložnice	two bedrooms
dvě okna	two windows

*Three, tři*, and *four, čtyři*, are also followed by plurals, but there is only one form, irrespective of gender:

tři pokoje	three rooms
čtyři ložnice	four bedrooms
tři/čtyři okna	three/four windows

*Five, pět*, and all numbers above five are subject to special rules which will be dealt with in a later unit. The same applies to indefinite numerals like *several, many*, and interrogative *how many* (the only one met so far: *kolik*).

### 2 'Hard' and 'soft' adjectives

You will recall the important division of nouns into 'hard' and 'soft' types (see Unit 3). There are 'hard' and 'soft' adjectives too: all those discussed so far, with distinct gender forms, have been of the 'hard' type. The 'soft' adjectives are much simpler to handle; they are instantly recognizable, irrespective of the nature of the stem-final consonant, by their ending **-í**, which is the same for all genders in the nominative.



obývací pokoj (m)  
vlastní ložnice (f)  
cizí město (n)

living room  
one's own bedroom  
strange city

### 3 How to express possession

Possession may be expressed in the same two basic ways as in English, with *mít* (to have): *Máme nové auto* (We have a new car), and using the possessive pronouns, such as *můj* (my), *náš* (our) and *váš* (your). Later in this unit you will meet most other possessive words, but so far you have met *svůj* (one's own): *Máme svůj byt* We have our own flat.

This translation of *svůj* is deceptive, since the word lacks the emphasis of *own*, which is properly expressed by *vlastní*. The function of *svůj* is to express *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *our*, or *their*, wherever *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *we* or *they* respectively, is the subject of the sentence.

Therefore, you cannot say *Miluju můj dům* (I love my house), *Milujete váš dům* (You love your house), but only:

Miluju	} svůj dům.	I	love	{ (my) own house.
Milujete		You		

If subject and possessor are not the same, then the normal possessive adjectives are used, as in: *Milujeme váš starý dům* (We love your old house).

### 4 Another use of se

Notice how the reflexive pronoun *se* can be used to form passive sentences:

*Ty se nepočítají.* They do not count./ They are not counted.  
(Lit. Those do not count (them)selves)

This is a very common feature of Czech.

### 5 Alternating vowels: *ů* and *o*

The word *dům* (house) has a *-ů-* in the nominative, but the other form in the dialogue – the locative after *v* (*in*), *v domě* – has *-o-*. Alternation of *ů* and *o* is particularly common between short and longer versions of the same item. Another word where it occurs is *svůj*: *Miluje svůj byt* (She loves her (own) flat), but *Miluje svoje auto* (She loves her car).

### 6 A pair of near-synonyms

The two words for *room*, *místnost* and *pokoj*, are not interchangeable. *Místnost* is the more general word, *pokoj* being confined to 'habitable' rooms, such as bedrooms or sitting rooms in the home, or hotel rooms. So if the question asked has been *Kolik máte pokojů?*, the answer would probably be the same, but there would be no need to exclude explicitly the kitchen and bathroom.

Another pair of synonyms is *příslušenství* (only one word but much commoner than *appurtenances*) and *záchod a koupelna*.

### 7 V tom velkém věžáku ... – 'In that great tower block ...'

*Tom* is the locative masculine singular of *ten* (*that*) after *v* (*in*); *ty*, as in *ty se nepočítají*, is one of the plural forms. Fuller details are given in Unit 6.

### Exercises

- Familiarity with your new Prague friends leads you to enquire about their home.
  - First ask the daughter Jana where she lives. Her reply (*v Brně*) suggests she has left home, so ask about the kind of accommodation she lives in.
  - You are then asked a similar question. Say that at home you (as a family, i.e. *we*) live in a house; a flat in a tenement block; a flat in a tower block.
  - But you happen to be in Prague, where you are alone and in a hotel. Reply accordingly.
- Now ask your Czech friend Ivan about his home: ask about the number of rooms.
  - You are impressed by his answer (*Máme čtyři pokoje*), so complain that your flat is small, but that your daughter has a big house.
  - Add that she has four large rooms, kitchen and bathroom. (There is a special Czech way of saying this. Can you remember it?)
- Question words: you have already met some of these in this and previous units, and since they are central to several sets of related words, we may begin to systematize them, including one or two new ones:

<b>kdo</b>	<i>who</i>	<b>někdo</b>	<i>someone</i>
<b>co</b>	<i>what</i>	<b>něco</b>	<i>something</i>
<b>kde</b>	<i>where</i>	<b>někde</b>	<i>somewhere</i>
<b>kdy</b>	<i>when</i>	<b>někdy</b>	<i>sometime(s)</i>
<b>jak</b>	<i>how</i>	<b>nějak</b>	<i>somehow</i>
<b>jaký</b>	<i>what ... like, what kind of</i>	<b>nějaký</b>	<i>some, a</i>
<b>který</b>	<i>which</i>	<b>některý</b>	<i>a certain</i>
<b>kolik</b>	<i>how many/much</i>	<b>několik</b>	<i>several</i>
<b>odkud</b>	<i>where from</i>	<b>odněkud</b>	<i>from somewhere</i>
<b>kam</b>	<i>where to</i>	<b>někam</b>	<i>(to) somewhere</i>

Using this table, attempt to:

- ask when someone is in (use: *at home*).
- say you sometimes live in London.
- ask someone what their flat is like.
- indicate that the phone is somewhere in the office.
- ask which room is yours (i.e. asking *mine* or *ours*), or
- which is your room.
- regret that you have to go somewhere.
- ask Miss Brabec what she is doing.

## ▶ Dialogue 2

The Smiths' Czech friend, Ivan, is inviting them to visit his flat.

- Ivan** Chceme vás pozvat k nám na návštěvu.  
**Smith** Děkuju, to je od vás milé.  
**Ivan** Přijďte tedy zítra v poledne.  
**Mrs Smith** Už se těšíme.  
*The Smiths are getting ready to go (and practising their Czech!).*  
**Smith** Máme něco vzít?  
**Mrs Smith** Snad bonboniéru nebo kytici?  
**Smith** Ano, to je dobrý nápad.  
*They arrive and are met at the door.*  
**Ivan** Dobrý den, vítám vás u nás!  
**Smith** Dobrý den. (He begins to remove his shoes.)  
**Ivan** Nemusíte se zouvat. My se sice zouváme, ale návštěvy rozhodně nemusí.  
**Mrs Smith** Ale ano. My se doma zouváme taky.  
**Ivan** Tak dobře. Tady máte bačkory. Pojdte dál!  
**Smith** Děkujeme.  
**Ivan** (whose wife has appeared) Můžu vás představit? To je moje žena, Marie.

- Marie** Těší mě.  
**Smith** Smith.  
**Mrs Smith** Smithová.  
**Marie** Paní Smithová, vítám vás. Oh, to je krásná kytice. Děkuju pěkně. Omlouvám se, ale já moc neumím anglicky.  
**Mrs Smith** A já jenom trochu česky.  
**Ivan** Ale dvě ženy se vždycky domluví! A my dva taky, že? Máme na to čas. Večeříme až v sedm.

<b>chtít</b> (see Note 8)	<i>to want</i>
<b>pozvat</b> (pozve)	<i>to invite</i>
<b>k nám</b>	<i>to us, to our place</i>
<b>na návštěvu</b>	<i>on a visit</i>
<b>přijďte</b>	<i>come</i>
<b>v poledne</b>	<i>at noon</i>
<b>poledne</b> (n)	<i>noon, midday</i>
<b>už se těšíme</b>	<i>we're looking forward to it</i>
<b>máme něco vzít?</b>	<i>should we take something?</i>
<b>vzít</b>	<i>(vezme) to take</i>
<b>bonboniéra</b>	<i>box of chocolates</i>
<b>kytice</b> (f)	<i>bunch of flowers</i>
<b>snad</b>	<i>perhaps</i>
<b>nápad</b>	<i>(sudden) idea</i>
<b>nemusíte se zouvat</b>	<i>you needn't take your shoes off</i>
<b>muset</b> (or <b>musit</b> ) (-í; -í/-ejí)	<i>must, have to</i>
<b>nemuset</b>	<i>need not, not have to</i>
<b>zouvat se</b>	<i>remove one's shoes</i>
<b>zouvat</b>	<i>remove (of footwear)</i>
<b>sice</b>	<i>(see Note 11)</i>
<b>rozhodně</b>	<i>definitely</i>
<b>bačkory</b> (f pl)	<i>slippers</i>
<b>krásný</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>pojd'te dál</b>	<i>come in</i>
<b>děkuju pěkně</b>	<i>thank you very much</i>
<b>pěkně</b>	<i>nicely</i>
<b>večeříme až v sedm</b>	<i>we don't eat until seven</i>
<b>až</b>	<i>not until, as late as</i>
<b>v sedm</b>	<i>at seven</i>

**chceme vás pozvat k nám na návštěvu** *we want to invite you to our house* (Lit. we want to invite you to us on visit)  
**návštěva** *visit (also visitor(s), as in Máme návštěvu We've got visitors)*

**mít** (here auxiliary verb denoting *should*)  
**my se sice zouváme, ale návštěvy nemusí** while we do  
*change our shoes, visitors needn't*  
**domluvit se** make oneself understood, come to an agreement  
**večeřet (-í; í/-ejí)** have dinner (i.e. evening meal, remember  
*večer evening*)

## Notes

### 8 Can, may, must, should, mustn't, needn't

Modal verbs are those verbs which add a dimension beyond the statement of a fact or a question about a fact; these added dimensions are chiefly to do with necessity, possibility, desirability and so on, and are expressed in English by such verbs as *can, may, must, need not, ought, should*, and some others. You have previously met **mocet** (*can*) and **smět** (*may*); **chtít** (*to want*) is sometimes included in the same general group. Not only **mocet** (Unit 2, Note 16), but also **smět** and **chtít** have certain peculiarities in their various forms, but since they are extremely common the deviant forms must be mastered.

	<b>mocet</b> ( <i>can</i> )	<b>smět</b> ( <i>may</i> )	<b>chtít</b> ( <i>want</i> )
<i>I</i>	můžu (mohu)	smím	chci
<i>you</i> (sg)	můžeš	smíš	chceš
<i>he/she</i>	může	smí	chce
<i>we</i>	můžeme	smíme	chceme
<i>you</i> (pl)	můžete	smíte	chcete
<i>they</i>	můžou (mohou)	smějí	chtějí

Another common pair are **muset** (alternatively **musit**) (*must, have to*) and **mít** (*should, be supposed/expected to*) – most definitely not 'have to', even though it looks like the ordinary **mít** *have*, denoting possession. Compare the sentences:

Musím být doma v sedm. *I have to (must) be home at seven (otherwise I'll be in trouble).*

Mám být doma v sedm.

*I'm supposed to be at home at seven (that's what I promised). or I should be home at seven (that's when the train should get me there).*

Another important verb is **umět** (with endings like **smět**), which also means *can*, but in the case of 'acquired skills', though it may sometimes need to be translated in other ways:

Neumíš počítat? *Can't you count?*  
 Umí pracovat. *He knows how to work (is a good worker).*

It is also widely used, like **mluvit**, with words ending in -y to denote a language known or spoken:

Umějí česky a anglicky. *They speak Czech and English.*  
 Rusky neumí. *He doesn't know any Russian.*

An important factor about some of these modal verbs is their behaviour with negation; it is the modal itself which is negated in such oppositions as:

Musí být doma v sedm. *He must (has to) be at home at seven.*

but  
 Nemusí být doma v sedm. *He needn't (doesn't have to) be at home at seven.*

and  
 Smí tady být ráno. *He may (is permitted to) be here in the morning(s).*

but  
 Nesmí tady být ráno. *He must not (is not permitted to) be here in the morning(s).*

and  
 Může tady být ráno. *He may be here in the morning. (i.e. it is possible or permissible)*

but  
 Nemůže tady být ráno. *He cannot be here in the morning. (i.e. it is impossible; also meaning he is not allowed)*

### 9 Expressing the object (accusative case)

You have already met the nominative (see Unit 1, Note 11), vocative (see Unit 3, Note 6) and locative cases (see Unit 1, Note 11 and Unit 3 Note 11). Here is the accusative case. Its main

function is to express the person or thing to whom or to which an action is done – this is called the direct object. Thus in:

Vidím auto/stůl/ženu/Marii. *I (can) see the car/table/woman/Mary.*

the words **auto**, **stůl**, **ženu** and **Marii** are in the accusative.

a The good news is that several types of nouns are unchanged in the accusative: all neuters (**auto**, **nádraží**), all 'inanimate' masculines – those which do not refer to people or animals (**stůl**, **večer**), and those feminines that end in a consonant (**kuchyň**; **noc**, **domácnost**).

b Other types of feminine noun undergo a change:

- 'hard' feminine nouns drop the final -a and replace it by -u: **Praha** becomes **Prahu**; **Petr zná dobře Prahu** (*Peter knows Prague well*).
- 'soft' feminine nouns drop the final -e and replace it by -i: **Anglie** becomes **Anglii**; **Ivan miluje Anglii** (*Ivan loves England*).

In the dialogue the words **bonboniéru** and **kytici** are feminine accusatives, direct objects of the verb *to take* understood from the previous utterance.

c 'Hard' masculine nouns denoting male beings and living creatures ('masculine animate nouns') add, in the accusative, the ending -a: **Petr má syna/psa** (*Peter has a son/a dog*) (from **pes**, which loses the -e-); 'soft' masculine animate nouns add -ě/-e (subject to the spelling rules):

Neznám bankéře. *I don't know a banker.*  
Má koně. *He has a horse.* (from **kůň** – note also the alternation **ů/o** in **kůň**)

Many masculine nouns end in -ek or -ec, which, like **pes** above, contain a 'fleeting -e-', lost when the accusative case ending is added.

potomek/potomka *descendant, offspring*  
chlapec/chlapec *boy*

Masculine animate nouns that end in -e in the nominative remain unchanged in the accusative:

Nemáme průvodce. *We have no guide.*

The distinction between animate and inanimate, or between 'living' and 'non-living', is a crucial subdivision within the masculine gender only.

To summarize the main accusative endings of nouns:

	Nominative	Accusative
Masculine 'hard' inanimate	dům	dům
Masculine 'soft' inanimate	koberec	koberec
Masculine 'hard' animate	pán	pána
Masculine 'soft' animate	muž	muže
	průvodce	průvodce
Feminine 'hard'	žena	ženu
Feminine 'soft'	práce	práci
Other feminine types	kuchyň	kuchyň
	domácnost	domácnost
Neuter 'hard'	letadlo	letadlo
Neuter 'soft'	moře	moře
Neuter ending in -í	zelí	zelí

Some nouns will have to be learnt as 'soft' in their behaviour despite their final consonant. These will be marked when necessary. Those whose stem ends in **l** are common, such as feminine **židle** (*chair*) (where the nominative ending -e gives a hint) and masculine animate **učitel** (*teacher*) – accusative **učitele**.

## 10 Place versus motion

You may have noticed the use of different prepositions, and with them different cases, in phrases expressing place as opposed to motion, such as **u nás** (**nás** happens to be genitive) *at our house* and **k nám** (**nám** is dative) *to our house*. The same type of opposition may also be expressed by different forms of related adverbs, such as **doma** (*at home*) and **domů** (*home(wards)*). The full pattern of place/motion oppositions will have to be developed gradually. Meanwhile, another type is the opposition between different cases after one and the same preposition, as happens with **na**. Compare for example:

(být) na návštěvě (někde) *(be) on a visit (somewhere)*  
(jít) na návštěvu (někam) *(go) on a visit ('to' somewhere)*

The different case forms after the preposition **na** – locative (to express location, place, i.e. *on, at*) and accusative (for destination, direction or goal, i.e. *onto, on, to*) respectively, express this opposition regularly.

Auto stojí na mostě. *The car is standing on the bridge.*  
Jsmo na koncertě. *We're at a concert.*



Auto jede na most. *The car is driving onto the bridge.*

Jdeme na koncert. *We're going to a concert.*

A related use is that of *na* with just the accusative to denote purpose – 'goal' of a slightly different sort:

blok na poznámky *notepad* (pad for notes)  
otvírák na konzervy *tin-opener* (opener for tins)

### 11 Sice ... ale – 'Though'

The word *sice*, which is paired with *ale* in the next clause, has no direct equivalent in English; it may be rendered by the conjunction *while* or *though*, or by the insertion of forms of *do* in the verb-phrase:

Doma sice pije jenom čaj, *While/Though at home he drinks only tea, in Prague*  
ale v Praze pije také pivo *he also drinks beer.*  
(pít to drink).

Doma sice pije čaj, ale v Praze *He does drink tea at home,*  
ho odmítá (odmítat to refuse) *but in Prague he declines it.*

### 12 až – 'as much as'

The word *až* is combined with phrases expressing quantity or time to suggest relative lateness, distance and so on.

v sedm	at seven
až v sedm	as late as at seven i.e. not until seven
čtyři míle	four miles
až čtyři míle	as much as four miles

### 13 Bidding 'Come!'

The full details of how to make commands will be introduced later. For now, simply note that when *Come!* means here and now, as in *Come in* in the dialogue, you should use *Pojďte* (*Pojď* if addressing someone with whom you are on familiar terms). If the invitation is for the person to come at a later time or date, use *Přijďte* (or *Přijď*).

Pojďte sem! *Come here.*  
Přijďte zítra! *Come tomorrow.*

milovat	to love
pes (psa)	dog
kůň (koně)	horse
potomek	descendant
chlapec	boy
domů	home(wards)
stát (stojí)	to stand; cost
jít (jde)	to go (on foot)
poznámka	note
jet (jede)	to go (involving vehicles)
most	bridge
blok	notepad
otvírák	opener
čaj (m)	tea
pivo	beer
pít (pije)	to drink
odmítat	to decline, refuse
konzerva	tin, can, jar (of foods)

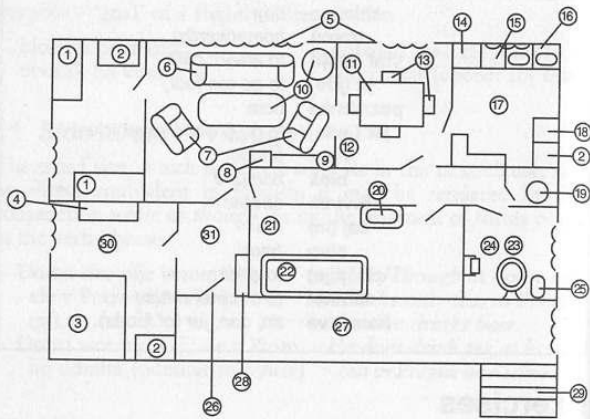
### Exercises

Practise these phrases which you will need if you wish to arrange a visit.

- 4 a Tell the person you are talking to that you wish to invite him to your home. Try two versions, one speaking for yourself (*I*), and one speaking for yourself and your spouse (*we*). In either case you may refer to their visiting *us*.
- b Tell him to come not before seven.
- c Later on, when he arrives, bid him come in and say he needn't change his shoes.
- d He may well indicate that it is normal for him to change his shoes at home as well; what will he probably say – speaking for himself (*I*), or of the whole family (*we*)?
- 5 a Now you are the visitor: remark what a beautiful flat your hosts have.
- b Ask where the toilet is in their flat.
- c You have been asked the size of your own flat; reply i you have two bedrooms (the English response), ii you have four main rooms (in the Czech manner).
- d Finally, apologize for having to rush home.



- 6 Using the diagram below, describe the apartment as if it were a your host or hostess's; and **b** your own; you may need the assistance of a native speaker. You will also need the words for *his, her* and/or *their*.



- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 postel <i>bed</i>                  | 17 kuchyň <i>kitchen</i>              |
| 2 skříň <i>cupboard, wardrobe</i>    | 18 sporák <i>stove</i>                |
| 3 manželská postel <i>double bed</i> | 19 boiler <i>boiler</i>               |
| 4 prádelník <i>chest of drawers</i>  | 20 umyvadlo <i>wash basin</i>         |
| 5 okna <i>windows</i>                | 21 koupelna <i>bathroom</i>           |
| 6 gauč <i>settee</i>                 | 22 vana <i>bath</i>                   |
| 7 křesla <i>armchairs</i>            | 23 záchod <i>lavatory</i>             |
| 8 televizor <i>television</i>        | 24 toaletní papír <i>toilet paper</i> |
| 9 knihovna <i>bookcase</i>           | 25 košík <i>bin, basket</i>           |
| 10 stolek <i>(coffee-) table</i>     | 26 hlavní dveře <i>front door</i>     |
| 11 jídelní stůl <i>dining table</i>  | 27 chodba <i>corridor</i>             |
| 12 jídelna <i>dining room</i>        | 28 botník <i>shoe rack</i>            |
| 13 židle <i>chair(s)</i>             | 29 schody <i>stairs</i>               |
| 14 pračka <i>washing machine</i>     | 30 podlaha <i>floor</i>               |
| 15 myčka <i>dishwasher</i>           | 31 předsíň <i>hall</i>                |
| 16 dřez <i>sink</i>                  |                                       |

Unlike, say, *můj* or *náš*, which change their forms according to the nouns they qualify, the words *jeho* (*his*) and *jejich* (*their*) never change at all! Thus you can say not only *jeho byt* and *jeho auto* or *jejich ložnice* and *jejich dům*, but also, for example, *v jejich bytě* (*in their flat*), or *v jejich ložnici* (*in their bedroom*).

To say *her* use *její*, which does change according to function, but in the same way as the 'soft' adjectives – like *them* it ends in *-í*.

Begin your sentences variously with *Můj/náš/jeho byt* (etc.) *má...* or *V pokoji* (etc.) *má/mají/mám/máme*, according to sense. Remember that any words following will have to be in the accusative. Check any new words in the vocabulary list at the back of the book.

### f The footwear ritual

You may have been perplexed about the issue of footwear. Whenever a Czech arrives home he will automatically and immediately, in the doorway, change his outdoor shoes for house shoes or slippers. Equally, it is almost unknown for someone to pop out without changing his indoor shoes. All this may even happen outside the front door, where the shoe box or shelf (*botník*; *boty* = *shoes*) may be located, though more usually it will be just inside the door.

Instead of *bačkory* for *slippers* you may meet another word, *pantofle* – a rare instance of a word with variable gender, from either masculine *pantofel* or feminine *pantofle*.

Czechs visiting friends will equally automatically kick off their outdoor shoes before entering the flat and be prepared to wander round in their stockinged feet or, more probably, accept the use of a spare pair of indoor shoes from the shoe-shelf. In some households an explicit exception is made for visitors, hence the line taken in the dialogue in this unit. The Czechs are immensely houseproud and the footwear ritual is just one of the manifestations.

# 05

je tu někde  
knihkupectví?  
is there a bookshop near here?

In this unit you will learn

- how to watch your Ps and Qs
- how to ask questions politely
- how to say *there is, there are*
- how to say that you like something
- how to form and use adjectives in the accusative

## Dialogue 1

Mr Smith is lost in a strange town and turns to a passer-by, pan Novák, for help.

- Smith** Promiňte, prosím. Jsem tu cizí a nevím, kde jsem.  
**Novák** To se u nás stává. Nemáte mapu? Mapu potřebujete.  
**Smith** Nemám. Je tu někde knihkupectví?  
**Novák** Ano, velmi blízko. Vidíte, tam na rohu je hotel.  
**Smith** Ta velká budova?  
**Novák** Ano. Potom vidíte tu benzínovou pumpu, že? Dále jsou tři obchody a hned první je knihkupectví.  
**Smith** Děkuju. A prosím vás ještě...



- Novák** Ano?  
**Smith** Nevíte náhodou, jak daleko je odsud hotel Jadran? Musím si nejdříve odpočinout. Mám tenhle velký kufr a malou, ale těžkou tašku.  
**Novák** Hotel Jadran přece vidíte tam na rohu.  
**Smith** Ach ano, jsem slepý.  
**Novák** Ale ne, jenom unavený.  
**Smith** Máte pravdu. Děkuju ještě jednou za pomoc.  
**Novák** Nemáte zač. Určitě se zastavte v tom knihkupectví. Mají tam dobré mapy.  
**Smith** Jak to víte?  
**Novák** Já jsem jeho majitel. Na shledanou!

<b>Promiňte, prosím</b>	<i>Excuse me, please</i>
<b>Jsem tu cizí</b>	<i>I'm a stranger here</i>
<b>cizí</b>	<i>strange, foreign, alien; someone else's</i>
<b>nevím, kde jsem</b>	<i>I don't know where I am</i>
<b>nevím from vědět</b>	<i>know (see opposite)</i>
<b>stávat se</b>	<i>happen</i>
<b>mapa</b>	<i>map</i>
<b>potřebovat</b>	<i>to need</i>
<b>Je tu někde knihkupectví?</b>	<i>Is there a bookshop near here?</i>
<b>knihkupectví</b>	<i>bookshop</i>
<b>blízko</b>	<i>near</i>
<b>vidět (-i)</b>	<i>see</i>
<b>roh</b>	<i>corner</i>
<b>ta velká budova</b>	<i>that big building</i>
<b>ta</b>	<i>that (f)</i>
<b>budova</b>	<i>building</i>
<b>benzínová pumpa</b>	<i>petrol station, petrol pump</i>
<b>dále jsou tři obchody</b>	<i>further on there are three shops</i>
<b>dále</b>	<i>further on</i>
<b>obchod</b>	<i>shop</i>
<b>hned první je knihkupectví</b>	<i>the very first one is a/the bookshop</i>
<b>hned</b>	<i>immediately</i>
<b>náhoda</b>	<i>chance, coincidence</i>
<b>daleko</b>	<i>far</i>
<b>Jadran</b>	<i>Adriatic</i>
<b>musím si nejdříve odpočinout</b>	<i>I must have a rest first</i>
<b>nejdříve</b>	<i>first (adverb)</i>
<b>odpočinout si (-ne)</b>	<i>to have a rest</i>
<b>tenhle</b>	<i>this (m)</i>
<b>kufr</b>	<i>suitcase</i>
<b>těžký</b>	<i>heavy</i>
<b>taška</b>	<i>bag</i>
<b>přece</b>	<i>surely (used in mild protestation)</i>
<b>slepý</b>	<i>blind</i>
<b>jenom (also jen)</b>	<i>only</i>
<b>unavený</b>	<i>tired</i>
<b>máte pravdu</b>	<i>you're right</i>
<b>pravda</b>	<i>truth</i>
<b>děkuju ještě jednou</b>	<i>thank you once again</i>
<b>děkovat za (+ accusative)</b>	<i>to say thank you for something</i>
<b>nemáte zač</b>	<i>don't mention it</i>
<b>určitě</b>	<i>definitely</i>

<b>zastavte se</b>	<i>call in (imperative)</i>
<b>Jak to víte?</b>	<i>How do you know?</i>
<b>jeho</b>	<i>its</i>
<b>majitel (-e)</b>	<i>owner</i>

**To se u nás stává** *that happens here (u nás here = in our town)*  
**tam na rohu je hotel** *there is a hotel there on the corner*  
**a prosím vás ještě** *and one more thing ('and please again')*  
**nevíte náhodou, jak...** *do you happen to know how ('don't you know by chance how...')*  
**odsud** *from here (remember odkud from where)*  
**Hotel přece vidíte na rohu** *Surely you can see the hotel on the corner*  
**pomoc (f)** *help (although not ending in -ost, pomoc behaves like domácnost)*  
**určitě se zastavte v tom knihkupectví** *be sure to call in that bookshop*  
**mají tam dobré mapy** *they have (some) good maps there*

#### **vědět (know)**

vím víš ví víme víte vědí

This is one of the commonest verbs in Czech. It is, as you see, rather irregular, but you cannot go far without needing it, so familiarize yourself with it quickly!

## **Notes**

### **1 Saying 'please'**

The basic word for *please* is *prosím* (*prosit* = *to ask, beg*). Usually it is tacked on to the end of the request or intrusion.

Promiňte, prosím. *Excuse me, please.*

If it precedes a request, it is often, though not necessarily, accompanied by *vás* (*you*, accusative after 'I beg').

Prosím vás, ještě něco.

*Please, (there's) something else  
(a variant of the expression in  
the dialogue).*

Very commonly, **prosím** and **prosím vás** are followed, almost redundantly, by the adverb **pěkně** (*nicely*). This is really a mark of deference.

**Prosím** is also used in these contexts:

a when waiters or shop assistants indicate their readiness to take your order or serve you, or when an official is ready to deal with your enquiry, etc.; they may simply say **Prosím?** (said with various rising or falling intonations), i.e. in place of English *Yes, please* or *Can I help you?*

b when you stand back to let someone else through a door first, again say simply **Prosím** (on a falling intonation; you will hear the same version after someone has done you a service – brought your meal, handed you your purchase, etc.). This version is also the almost automatic, neutral response to **Děkuju**.

c and it is more polite than **Co?** (*What?*) to use **Prosím?** (with a rising intonation) if you failed to catch what someone has said.

## 2 Saying 'thank you'

You met the basic **děkuju** in Unit 1. It too can be enhanced to **děkuju pěkně** or **velmi pěkně**, to give rough equivalents to *thank you very much* or *thank you very much indeed*.

To thank *for* something, use the preposition **za** and the accusative case:

Děkuju za krásný večer.

*Thank you for a wonderful evening.*

If someone has thanked you for a minor service, you can dismiss it with **Nemáte zač** or **Není zač** (*Don't mention it*). An alternative, with the same function, is **Za málo** (Lit. for little).

## 3 Saying 'there is/there are'

This is a very simple matter; there is no element in Czech for *there* in this sense. You simply use **je** and **jsou**. Typically these expressions are used to indicate the presence of something somewhere, and in Czech the give-away to the *there is/are* meaning will usually be mention of *the place* first:

Na rohu je hotel.

*There is a hotel on the corner.*

or  
Dále jsou tři obchody.

*Further on there are three shops.*

These are distinct from:

Hotel je na rohu.

*The hotel is on the corner.*

and

Obchody jsou dále.

*The shops are further on.*

Notice how in the second type of English sentence *hotel* and *shops* are accompanied by *the*.

## 4 How to make a polite enquiry

As you saw earlier, a verb form, e.g. **máte**, may mean not only *you have*, but also *have you?* or *do you have?* If you express a question as an enquiry or request, there are several degrees of politeness. The simplest is to ask the question in the negative.

Nevíte, kde je hotel Jadran? *Do you (not) know where the Jadran is?*

This tells the person asked that *you* want to know. The positive form of the question, **Víte, kde...** is more appropriate to, say, quizzes – I already know the answer and am checking whether you do. A (slightly) more deferential inquiry includes the word **náhodou** (*by chance*), and is a good counterpart to the English formula based on *happen* (and similar):

Nevíte náhodou, kde je Jadran?

*Do you happen to know where the Jadran is?*

Similarly:

Nemáte náhodou sirky?

*Do you happen to have a light? (sirky = matches)*

Nejste náhodou pan Novák? *Aren't you Mr Novák?*

Not every negative question expresses a polite enquiry or request. They can be neutral and based on the same assumptions as an English negative question. Look at the other one in the dialogue:

Nemáte mapu?

*Haven't you got a map (I assume not)?*

This is also one type of utterance where it is (also) appropriate to use the subject pronoun, hence the alternative form of the last question: **Vy nemáte mapu?**

## 5 Two kinds of knowing: vědět versus znát

When you met **znát** earlier, it involved acquaintance: **známe se z letadla** (*We know each other from the plane*). Use this verb for other types of acquaintance too, with places or books, as well as people:

Neznám Prahu. *I don't know Prague.*  
Eva nezná Češtinu pro samouky. *Eva doesn't know Teach Yourself Czech.*

For knowing facts, use **vědět**. This means that in most cases it will be followed by clauses beginning with **že**:

Pan Novák ví, že tam mají dobré mapy. *Mr Novák knows that they have good maps there.*

or with question words, like **kde** (*where*) or **jestli** (*if*):

Víme, kde mají dobré mapy. *We know where they have good maps.*

Nevědí, jestli je hotel daleko. *They don't know if the hotel is far away.*

Notice how, in written Czech, all conjunctions – such words as **jestli**, **kdy** or **že**, words that introduce a special type of clause and ‘conjoin’ it to the main clause – are preceded by a comma when they are not at the beginning of the sentence. This is a grammatical convention; the comma has no association with a pause – as is commonly the case in English.

## 6 Right and wrong

**Pravda** means *truth*. It combines with **mít** to give the basic meaning of ‘being right’ or ‘wrong’ of persons:

Paní Nováková má pravdu. *Mrs Novák is right.*  
Pan Novák nemá pravdu. *Mr Novák is wrong.*

and with **být** to express that something is true (as in an earlier exercise):

To je pravda. *That's true/That's right.*  
To není pravda. *That isn't true/That's wrong.*

In answer to questions you are possibly more likely to hear **Ano, je to pravda** and **Ne, není to pravda**, but the two word-orders are largely interchangeable.

## 7 Adjectives in the accusative

Two new ‘hard’ adjective endings now need to be learnt:

**a** the feminine singular, which ends in **-ou**, hence Mr Smith’s complaint:

Mám těžkou tašku.

**a** pattern repeated in the expression (**vidíte**) **benzínovou pumpu**;

**b** the special ending to match animate (i.e. a living being such as a person, animal) masculine nouns which is not illustrated in the dialogue. This is the ending **-ého**:

Eva má hodného muže. *Eva has a kind husband.*  
Vidím nového studenta. *I (can) see a new student.*

For the ‘soft’ adjectives the only new ending is also for agreement with animate masculine nouns – all other forms have simply **-í**. The special form is **-ího**, as in:

Známe prvního pacienta. *We know the first patient.*

## 8 ‘my’: můj (m), moje/má (f), moje/mé (n); ‘our’: náš (m), naše (f), naše (n)

The possessives (*my* etc.) must also change according to case. **Můj** *my* shows some similarity – where there are long endings – to the above adjective forms:

Vidí mého nového pacienta. *He can see my new patient.*  
Pije mou studenou kávu. *He is drinking my cold coffee.*

The same forms apply to **tvůj** *your* (familiar) and **svůj** (the reflexive possessive, see Unit 4, Note 3), though **svůj** has no *nominative* forms (it refers back to the subject, so cannot be part of the subject). The longer forms **moje**, **moji** are less formal and therefore more likely to be encountered in conversation.

The possessive **náš** *our* only has short endings, which it shares with **moje**, **moji**. The forms of **náš** are shared by **váš** *your* (plural or polite). Remember that the long **-á-** of **náš** and **váš** shortens in all forms with an ending.

For **jeho** (*his*), **jejich** (*their*) and **její** (*her*) see pp. 50–1.



	Masculine inanimate	Masculine animate	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	můj dům	můj pacient	moje/má taška	moje/mé auto
Accusative	můj dům	mého pacienta	moji/mou tašku	moje/mé auto
Nominative	naš dům	naš pacient	naše taška	naše auto
Accusative	naš dům	našeho pacienta	naši tašku	naše auto

### 9 Pointing things out: *ten* (m), *ta* (f), *to* (n)

These are the words used to point to things (demonstrative pronouns), usually translated as *that*, but occasionally as *this*:

ta benzínová pumpa *that petrol station*

It has a special form **tu** for agreement with nouns in the accusative:

Vidíte **tu** benzínovou pumpu? *Can you see that petrol station?*

It also has a special form for agreement with masculine animate nouns in the accusative:

ten první pacient *that first patient*

Neznáme **toho** prvního pacienta. *We don't know that first patient.*

To specify *this* as opposed to *that*, add *-hle* to the appropriate form of *ten*, hence Mr Smith points to:

tenhle velký kufr *this big suitcase*

or you might say:

Neznám tohoto pacienta. *I don't know this patient.*

The *-hle* ending is appropriate to the generally informal version of Czech which you are teaching yourself. By all means use it, but be prepared to hear forms of *ten* with *-to* on the end instead (i.e. *tento, tato, toto, tuto, tohoto*), also meaning *this*, but slightly more formal in tone.

To say *that* of something further away, or directly contrasted to *this*, put *tam-* in front of the forms of *ten*:

Tenhle kufr je jeho, můj je tamten. *This case is his, mine's that one.*

Here is a summary table for nominative and accusative of *ten* and adjectives.

	Masculine inanimate	Masculine animate	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	ten nový dům	ten nový pacient	ta nová taška	to nové auto
Acc.	ten nový dům	toho nového pacienta	tu novou tašku	to nové auto
Nom.	ten cizí kufr	ten cizí pacient	ta cizí taška	to cizí auto
Acc.	ten cizí kufr	toho cizího pacienta	tu cizí tašku	to cizí auto

(See Unit 4, Note 9 for an explanation of inanimate and animate nouns.)

hodný	kind	samouk	self-taught person
nový	new	sírka	match
byznysmen	businessman	studený	cold
pacient	patient		

### Exercises

- Looking back at the dialogue on p. 53 say whether these are true (**Ano, je to pravda**) or false (**Ne, není to pravda**).
  - Je pravda, že pan Novák má knihkupectví?
  - Je pravda, že pan Smith ví, kde je?
  - Je pravda, že na rohu je benzínová pumpa?
  - Je pravda, že pan Smith nemá mapu?
  - Je pravda, že pan Smith je slepý?
  - Je pravda, že pan Smith nemluví česky?
  - Je pravda, že pan Novák je dobrý byznysmen?
- Attempt true statements for those sentences where you answered **Ne, není to pravda**.
- In the following sentences, which form is correct?
  - Ivan má (pravda/pravdu).
  - (Ta taška/Tu tašku) je těžká.
  - Pan Smith nevidí (benzínová pumpa/benzínovou pumpu).
  - Paní Navrátilová vítá (pana Čermáka a paní Čermákovou/pan Čermák a paní Čermáková).

- e Spěchám tam na (ta pošta/tu poštu).  
f Neznáme (ten starý cizinec/toho starého cizince).  
g Neví, kde je (moje židle/moji židli).  
h Zná (vaši matku/vaše matka) a (váš otec/vašeho otce).

## 4 Complete your part of this conversation:

- You *Excuse me, I need help.*  
Čech Ano?  
You *Do you happen to know where the Hotel Forum is?*  
Čech Mm, Forum je odsud daleko.  
You *How far exactly?*  
Čech Dva kilometry.  
You *That's not far – I haven't got a suitcase.*

## ▶ Dialogue 2

The Smiths have just rung the Navrátils' door bell again and Mr Navrátil has opened the door.

- Smith** Dobrý večer, Zdeňku, tak jsme zase tady.  
**Navrátil** Dobrý večer, Alane, vítám vás. Pojdte dál. Dobrý večer, paní Smithová.  
**Mrs Smith** Dobrý večer. Už se těším, že si sednu. Máme za sebou dlouhý den.  
**Smith** Ano, je to tak. Mám rád Prahu, ale někdy mě hodně unavuje.  
**Navrátil** Tak pojdte, pojdte – ne, nezouvejte se. Manželka se na vás těší.  
**Mrs Smith** Já se taky těším. Velmi ráda poslouchám její historky o rodině.  
**Navrátil** To nerad slyším, to určitě znamená nějakou kritiku na můj účet!  
**Mrs Smith** Kdepak! Vás jenom chválí... většinou. Má vás ráda.  
*While they're still chatting Mrs Navrátil comes towards them.*  
**Navrátilová** Dobrý večer, Heleno. Dobrý večer, pane Smith. Co tady děláte tak dlouho? Slyším zvonek, slyším dveře, čekám, čekám – a nic. Ale jsem velmi ráda, že jste tady. Pojdte. Večeře bude hned.  
**Smith** (*šeptem*) Ta tvoje kamarádka opravdu mluví hodně.

tak jsme zase tady zase	here we are again again
už se těším, že si sednu	I can't wait to sit down
máme za sebou dlouhý den	we've had a long day
mít (něco) za sebou dlouhý	to have (something) behind one long
je to tak	that's so, that's right
tak	so, thus
mám rád Prahu	I like Prague
mít rád	to like, to love
někdy mě hodně unavuje	sometimes it tires me a lot
hodně	a lot, a great deal, greatly (adverb)
těšit se na (+ acc.)	to look forward to something
ráda poslouchám její historky	I like listening to her tales
o rodině	about the family
poslouchat	to listen; obey
historky	tales, stories, anecdotes
to nerad slyším	I don't like the sound of that
to určitě znamená nějakou	that's bound to mean some
kritiku	(sort of) criticism
znamenat	to mean
kritika	criticism
účet	account, bill
kdepak!	not a bit of it! oh no!
vás jenom chválí	she only praises you
chválit	praise
většinou	mostly
má vás ráda	she loves you
co tady děláte tak dlouho?	what's taking you so long?
dlouho	(for) a long time
zvonek	bell
dveře (f pl)	door
čekat	to wait
nic	nothing
jsem ráda, že ...	I'm glad that ...
večeře (f)	dinner (main evening meal)
bude	will be
hned	at once
šeptem	in a whisper
ta tvoje kamarádka	that friend of yours
opravdu mluví hodně	really does talk a lot
opravdu	really

Zdeňku, Alane (vocative case-forms of Zdeněk and Alan)  
**těšit se, že ...** look forward (to the prospect) that ...  
**unavovat** to tire (think of **unavený** tired in Dialogue I)  
**nezouvejte se** don't take your shoes off (a simpler command used instead of **nemusíte se zouvat**)  
**manželka se na vás těší** my wife's looking forward to (seeing) you  
**nějaký** some (kind of); it often means little more than a  
**na můj účet** to my account (here, at my expense)  
**čekám, čekám – a nic** I wait and wait – and nothing (happens)

## Notes

### 10 Expressing 'like'

The crucial word here is **rád**, which means *glad*, as in *jsem rád, že ...* (I'm glad that ...). In combination with **mít** it means both *like* and *love*:

Má rád zlatou Prahu.	He likes golden Prague.
Má rád Helenu.	He loves Helena.
Nemám rád politiku.	I don't like politics.

(Note **zlatý** *golden* has become an automatic epithet for Prague.)

The structure of the phrase is something like 'x has y gladly'. It is the nature of the object that determines the English interpretation of what is being said.

An extension of the use of **rád** with **mít** (which you can now think of as 'like having') is to combine **rád** with almost any other verb, when it means *like ...-ing*. Mrs Smith *likes listening* to Mrs Navrátil's family gossip; Mr Navrátil *doesn't like hearing* that she does; you may or may not *like learning* Czech.

This vital little word **rád** is a new kind of adjective (what makes it special is that it only combines with verbs, not nouns). And as an adjective it will change form to agree with the subject of the sentence, in any of its functions. Hence Mrs Smith will require feminine agreement and so she **ráda poslouchá** family gossip, while her husband is masculine and so **nerad slyší** about it. With a neuter word, such as **dítě** (*child*), the ending would be -o:

Dítě rádo hraje fotbal. *The child likes playing football.*

(Note the coincidence between the endings of **rád** and those of the main, 'hard' noun types.)

### Negating 'like'

Note that negative sentences with *like ...-ing* usually attach the negative prefix **ne-** to **rád**, NOT to the verb (except in the case of **mít rád**, as can be seen in the third example above), and the middle -á- shortens. Thus

Pan Navrátil to nerad slyší.	Mr Navrátil doesn't like hearing that.
Paní Navrátilová nerada čeká.	Mrs Navrátil doesn't like waiting.
To dítě nerado hraje fotbal.	That child doesn't like playing football.

Apart from plurals, there are no other forms (case-endings) of **rád** to be learnt.

### 11 More expressions with **těšit**

In Unit 2 you met **těší mě** (Lit. *it consoles me*), as the idiom *pleased to meet you*. There are two uses of **těšit se**, a reflexive verb (it must have **se** in these senses). The commoner construction contains the preposition **na** (+ accusative) denoting the direction, goal or target of your hopes, for **těšit se** means *to look forward to* ('console oneself at the prospect of something').

Jiří se těší na večeři.	George is looking forward to dinner.
Ivan se těší na Olgu.	Ivan is looking forward to (seeing) Olga.

Other expressions denoting 'goal' besides **na** may also be used.

Těším se k vám.	I'm looking forward to (coming to see) you.
Těším se domů.	I'm looking forward to (going) home.

The other use of **těšit se** is with the conjunction **že**. You may meet more instances of it after you learn the future tense. (**Sednu si = I'll sit down** – in the Dialogue it is in the future.)

## 12 How many doors do Czechs knock on at once?

In the next unit you will look at plurals. One or two plural forms (mostly ending in -y) have already crept into some of the dialogues and were left without comment. But they did denote 'proper' plurals – like the *tales* (*historiky*) that Mrs Navrátil is said to tell. But Czech, like English, has several plural words – such as *trousers* or *scissors* – that refer to single items. But there are other odd plurals as well, like *oats* in English or *dveře* (*door*) in Czech, without any obvious reason. Watch out for others.

## 13 Word order with *se* and *si*

These little words, forms of the reflexive pronoun (see Unit 2, Note 13), cannot stand at the beginning of the sentence. In fact they must stand in the second grammatical 'slot' (i.e. not necessarily second word) in the sentence. This is why they always follow the word they go with in the vocabulary boxes (*těšit se, odpočinout si*), although the order may easily be reversed in actual sentences: *manželka se na vás těší, musím si nejdříve odpočinout*. Many pronouns are subject to a similar rule.

## 14 Word order generally

In Czech, a general principle applies that items in a sentence referring to information already mentioned – or otherwise 'known' – stand at the front; new, or more important, information stands at the end. This can frequently mean that the object (accusative) may stand first.

Vás jenom chválí.                      You (acc.) (she) only praises.

You is known from the situation, the praise being the substantially new information. Do not worry about the finer issues governing word order just yet; you will learn things that are subject to strong rules when they arise (as with *se/si* above).

Note also that word order matters in two types of statements:

Na stole je kniha.                      There is a book on the table.  
Kniha je na stole.                      The book is on the table.

(see Note 3), but in the questions *Where is the book?* or *Where is there a book?* you have little to worry about: *Kde je kniha?* is used for either, but for the second version it would be better to add a form of *nějaký* – *Kde je nějaká kniha?* – an instance where, as noted on p. 64, it is close to the English *a*.

## Exercises

5 Read and reply in Czech, using full sentences:

- Jak se jmenujete?
- Bydlíte v Londýně?
- Čekáte rád?
- Paní Smithová ráda poslouchá historiky?
- Hrajete fotbal?
- Kdo chválí pana Navrátila?
- Mluví váš muž/vaše žena hodně?

Note that there is more to *play* (*hrát, hraje*) than football:

*hrát* is just to *play* (non-human subject)  
*hrát si* to *play* (human subject)  
*hrát na* + acc. to *play* an instrument  
*hrát na* + acc. for some children's games  
*hrát* + acc. to *play* cards, games that are sports, music  
and theatre parts

rozhlas hrál	<i>the radio was on</i>
my si jenom hrajeme	<i>we're just playing</i>
hrát na klavír	<i>to play the piano</i>
hrát na slepou bábu	<i>to play blindman's buff</i>
hrát karty/fotbal/valčík/ Hamleta	<i>to play cards/football/ a waltz/Hamlet</i>

6 See if you can ask the following questions (as politely as circumstances may require):

- Do you have a light?
- Do you happen to know where Mrs Navrátil is?
- Do you like hearing criticism?
- Are you looking forward to lunch?
- Is she tired?
- Does she want to rest first?
- Isn't that Mrs Smith?
- Are you looking forward to seeing Prague?
- Are they looking forward to going to Prague?
- Is he outside (*venku*) playing football?

▶ 7 Read the following text and answer the questions in English:

Pan Smith je v Praze. Doma v Anglii bydlí v bytě v činžáku, ale tady v Praze má luxusní pokoj v hotelu. Je bankovní úředník, svobodný a každý rok tráví měsíc někde v cizině. Takhle si může krásně odpočinout. Rád poznává osobně každé město, které zná jen z obrázků. Všude kupuje pohlednice, ale zásadne nikomu nepíše. Je rád, že může být chvíli sám.

obrázek	picture	město	town, city
všude	everywhere	z obrázků	from pictures
každý	each, every	kupovat	buy
rok	year	pohlednice	picture postcard
trávit	to spend (time)	zásadně	on principle
měsíc (m)	month; moon	cizina	foreign parts
v cizině	abroad	chvíli	for a while
takhle	like this	sám	alone
osobně	personally		

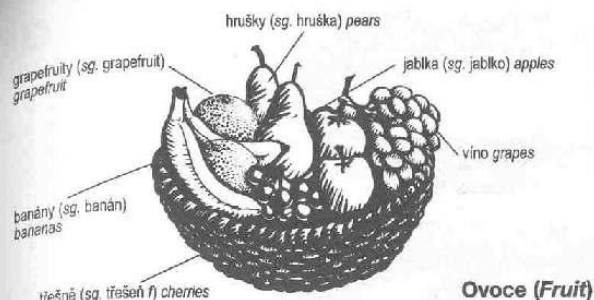
**luxus** (noun), **luxusní** (adj.) *luxury*  
**banka** (noun), **bankovní** (adj.) *bank*  
**poznávat** *to get to know; recognize*  
**nikomu nepíše** *he doesn't write to anyone*

- What is Mr Smith's job?
- How often does he go abroad?
- For how long?
- Find two reasons why.
- Compare his home and holiday accommodation.

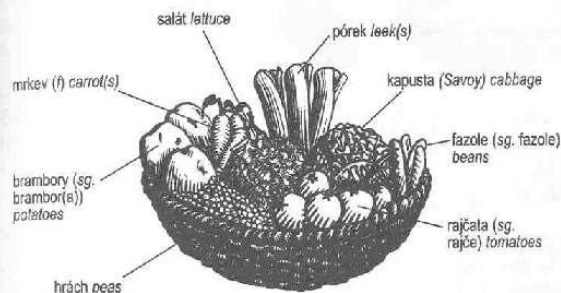
### i Czechs and their stomachs

Czechs are great eaters. The national dish is commonly known as **vepřoknedlozelo**, a jocular combination of **vepřové** (*pork* – roast or braised), **knedlíky** (*dumplings* – long fat sausage-shaped things, made of flour, yeast, eggs and croutons, boiled, then sliced into rounds on a special slicer) and **zelí** (*cabbage* – either sweet or as sauerkraut). They also eat a lot of **hovězí** (*beef*), **drůbež** (*f*) (*poultry*) and many kinds of **salám** (*salami*), but little or no lamb. Cooked vegetables are not very varied, except **brambory** (*potatoes*). There is much more variety in those served as mixed cold garnishes out of a tin. In season **rajčata** (*tomatoes*), **okurek** (*cucumber*) and **zelená** and **červená paprika** (*green and red peppers*), including some very hot ones, are widely used. At any time of year, **okurky** (*pickled gherkins*) are delicious (and widely exported). Many types of **salát** (*salad*) are eaten; however, if not further qualified, **salát** just means *lettuce*. As well as potatoes or dumplings, **rýže** (*rice*) and **těstoviny** (*pasta*) are common accompaniments to meat.

The eating day begins with **snídaně** (*f*) (*breakfast*), usually fairly light in the continental manner. Many people have a second breakfast, **přesnídávka**, mid-morning. The midday meal, **oběd**, may, according



Ovoce (Fruit)



Zelenina (Vegetables)

to family practice or such considerations as subsidized lunches in the workplace, be more substantial than the evening meal, **večeře** (*f*), while for many the latter is *the* big meal of the day. This may in part depend on whether a teatime snack, **svačina**, has been taken; the latter word may also apply mid-morning, and it is used for 'packed lunch'.

Before people start eating it is customary to wish them **Dobrou chuť** (*Good appetite*) – **chuť** (*f*) = *appetite, taste*. You will eat well – so learn this bit of Czech etiquette for use from the first moment you sit down to table.

Also, at meals or just out for a drink, you will find plenty of **pivo** (*beer*) and **víno** (*wine*), so it's vital to know **Na zdraví!** (*Cheers!*) as well – **zdraví** (*n*) = *health*.



# 06

## na celnici at customs

- In this unit you will learn
- how to understand questions about your person
  - how to answer in an appropriate manner
  - how to begin to use plurals
  - how to use some means of expressing reason and purpose

### Dialogue 1

Mr Smith is going through customs.

- Celník Smith** Dobrý den. Toto jsou vaše zavazadla?  
**Celník Smith** Ano, prosím. Tenhle kufr a taška.  
**Celník Smith** Máte nějaké zboží na prodej v České republice?  
**Celník Smith** Ne, v kufru mám jenom osobní věci – oblečení, fotoaparát a podobně.  
**Celník Smith** A v tašce?  
**Celník Smith** Tam mám jenom věci na cestu – mycí potřeby, nějaké jídlo, knihu.  
**Celník Smith** Tak proč je ta taška tak těžká?  
**Celník Smith** Protože tam mám kameny.  
**Celník Smith** Cože? Jaké kameny?  
**Celník Smith** Různé. Budu je v Praze potřebovat.  
**Celník** (to his colleague) Hele, Honzo, tady ten pán si myslí, že v Praze potřebuje kameny!  
**Honza Celník** Není sám.  
**Honza Celník** Jak to?  
**Honza** Tento týden se přece v Praze koná geologická konference. Jsou to vědci, geologové.  
**Smith** To je pravda, jsem geolog. Proto mám ty kameny a proto je moje taška tak těžká. Hrozně těžká.  
**Celník** Tak můžete jít. Hezkou konferenci přeju!



Pan Smith je geolog. V tašce má kameny, proto je taška tak těžká

<b>celník</b>	<i>customs officer</i>
<b>zboží na prodej v České republice</b>	<i>goods for sale in the Czech Republic</i>
<b>republika</b>	<i>republic</i>
<b>osobní věci</b>	<i>personal items, belongings</i>
<b>oblečení</b>	<i>clothing</i>
<b>v tašce</b>	<i>in the bag</i>
<b>věci na cestu</b>	<i>things for the journey</i>
<b>cesta</b>	<i>journey, trip, way, path, track</i>
<b>mycí potřeby</b>	<i>washing things (toiletries)</i>
<b>potřeba</b>	<i>need, (item of) necessity</i>
<b>jídlo</b>	<i>food; also meal, dish</i>
<b>knih</b>	<i>book</i>

	<b>proč</b>	why
	<b>protože</b>	because
	<b>kameny</b>	stones (singular = kámen)
	<b>cožel</b>	what!
	<b>jaký</b>	what kind (of)
	<b>různý</b>	various, different
	<b>budu je potřebovat</b>	I will need them
	<b>hele</b>	hey!, I say!
	<b>tady ten pán</b>	this chap here
	<b>myslet si (-l)</b>	to think
	<b>jak to?</b>	how come?, what do you mean?
	<b>týden</b>	week
	<b>konat se</b>	to be held, to be going on
	<b>geologický</b>	geological
	<b>vědci</b>	scientists (singular = vědec)
	<b>geologové</b>	geologists (singular = geolog)
	<b>proto</b>	that's why, therefore
	<b>tak můžete jít</b>	all right, you can go
	<b>hezky</b>	nice
	<b>přát (přeje)</b>	to wish

<b>zavazadla</b>	luggage (zavazadlo a piece of luggage)
<b>ano, prosím</b>	yes (the prosím adds a degree of deference)
<b>zboží</b>	goods (a neuter singular collective word)
<b>věc (f)</b>	thing, object (a word in the same class as domácnost)
<b>fotoaparát</b>	camera (beware: kamera means cine-camera)
<b>a podobně</b>	and such like (in printed texts often abbreviated to apod.)
<b>mycí</b>	adjective from mýt (myje) to wash
<b>Honzo</b>	vocative of Honza, familiar form of Jan John
<b>není sám</b>	he's not alone, he's not the only one
<b>tento týden se přece koná geologická konference</b>	after all, there's a geological conference going on this week
<b>přece</b>	after all (remember its previous use as surely; here it amounts to surely you know)
<b>hrozně</b>	terribly, awfully, dreadfully (from hrozný terrible, awful, dreadful)

## Notes

### 1 Forming the plural

You cannot get far without the plural. How do you form it?

<sup>a</sup> 'Hard' nouns: feminines, like žena, historka or potřeba, replace their final -a by -y.

ženy	women
historky	tales, anecdotes
potřeby	requisites

The same ending is simply added to such 'hard' masculine inanimate nouns as hotel, obchod, kámen or stůl.

hotely	hotels	kameny	stones
obchody	shops	stoly	tables

Notice how sometimes there may be a change in the vowel: kámen-kameny; stůl-stoly. 'Hard' neuter nouns, such as zavazadlo, slovo (word), kolo (wheel, bicycle) replace the ending -o by -a.

zavazadla	items of luggage
slova	words
kola	wheels

<sup>b</sup> All the 'soft' matching types of any gender, such as pokoj (m) (room), kancelář (f) (office), or kuchyně (f) (kitchen), and a few neuters such as moře (sea) end in -e or -ě - subject to the spelling rules (if in doubt about these still, see the Introduction).

pokoje	rooms	kuchyně	kitchens
kanceláře	offices	moře	seas

Note: most feminines and neuters that already end in -e/-ě in the singular appear not to change. You will soon see that there can rarely be any ambiguity.

<sup>c</sup> The other feminine nouns, like domácnost or věc, form their plural by adding -i, just like their locative singular (remember žena v domácnosti to describe a housewife) (see Unit 3, Note 10):

domácnosti	households	věci	things
------------	------------	------	--------

Many case-forms of these words end in -i, which is why they are commonly referred to as i-declension words. (For an explanation of 'declension', see the Glossary of grammatical terms.)

d The many neuter nouns that end in long *-í* retain this in the plural, as in their locative singular.

zelí	<i>cabbage(s)</i>
knihkupectví	<i>bookshop(s)</i>
nádraží	<i>station(s)</i>

The same applies to the only such feminine noun, *paní* (*lady/ladies*).

## 2 Nominative/vocative/accusative plurals

For all the words in a–d above, the nominative, vocative and accusative plural forms are the same.

## 3 Masculine animate nouns

In the accusative the endings are as for the inanimate (see 1 a and b above) – *-y* for ‘hard’ nouns and *-e* for ‘soft’ nouns.

studenty	<i>students</i>	geology	<i>geologists</i>
vědce	<i>scientists</i>	majitele	<i>owners</i>
Angličany	<i>Englishmen</i>		

(Note that nouns ending in *-tel* behave as ‘soft’, although *l* itself is not normally a ‘soft’ consonant.) However, in the nominative plural of masculine animate nouns there are three endings.

a *-i* is used for most whether ‘hard’ or ‘soft’.

‘hard’  
student → studenti (and remember that *-ti* at the end will be pronounced *či*)

‘soft’  
vědec → vědci (remember ‘fleeting *-e-*’; see Unit 4, Note 9c)

Just as final *t* is pronounced *t* before *-i*, so a final *d* is pronounced *ď*, and a final *n* is pronounced *ň*.

kamarád (*pal*) → kamarádi      had (*snake*) → hadi  
vegetarián (*vegetarian*) → vegetariáni      rabín (*rabbi*) → rabíni

Also final *k*, *h*, *ch* and *r* change, but far more conspicuously, to *c*, *z*, *š* and *ř* respectively.

celník → ( <i>customs officer</i> ) celníci	Slovák → ( <i>Slovak</i> ) Slováci
vrah → ( <i>murderer</i> ) vrazi	pstruh → ( <i>trout</i> ) pstruzi
Čech → ( <i>Czech</i> ) Češi	mnich → ( <i>monk</i> ) mniši
manažer → ( <i>manager</i> ) manažeri	doktor → ( <i>doctor</i> ) doktoři

The changes of *k* to *c*, and *r* to *ř*, are particularly common because many words end in *-ek*, *-ník*, *-er*, *-ér*, *-or* and *-ýr*.

b *-ové*, much easier to handle, is chiefly used with ‘international’ words for professions.

biolog-ové	<i>biologist(s)</i>	ekonom-ové	<i>economist(s)</i>
fotograf-ové	<i>photographer(s)</i>	politik-ové	<i>politician(s)</i> (also <i>politici</i> )

It is also widely used to form the plural of one-syllable words, including many names of nationalities.

syn-ové	<i>son</i>	Švéd-ové	<i>Swede(s)</i>
pán-ové	<i>gentleman/-men</i>	Skot-ové	<i>Scot(s)</i>
Ir-ové	<i>Irishman/-men</i>	Dán-ové	<i>Dane(s)</i>

(Pán has an alternative plural in *-i*: *páni*.)

c *-ě* is mainly confined to readily identifiable groups of words.

Nouns ending in <i>-tel</i> :	majitel-ě <i>owner(s)</i>	učitel-ě <i>teacher(s)</i>
Nouns with <i>-(ě)an</i> :	Angličan-ě <i>Englishman/(men)</i>	Velšan-ě <i>Welshman/(men)</i>
Nouns with <i>-at</i> :	Kanad'an-ě <i>Canadian(s)</i>	občan-ě <i>citizen(s)</i>
	demokrat-ě <i>democrat(s)</i>	byrokrat-ě <i>bureaucrat(s)</i>

And a few common oddments:

soused-ě <i>neighbour(s)</i>	host-ě <i>guest(s)</i>
Žid-ě <i>Jew(s)</i>	Španěl-ě <i>Spaniard(s)</i>

It is also used for *manželé* (*Mr and Mrs, husband and wife*), plural of *manžel* (*husband*).

Colloquially, many words, especially those ending in *-(ě)an*, *-at* and the ‘common oddments’ above, may also take *-i* instead of *-ové*.

These endings, and any changes they entail, apply solely to the nominative plural, so note the contrast with the accusative plural:

Nominative	Accusative	Nominative	Accusative
celníci	celníky	vrazi	vrahy
Češi	Čechy	inženýři	inženýry
geologové	geology	Irové	Iry
Angličané	Angličany	učitelé	učitele (!‘soft’)

Animacy only applies to masculine nouns, i.e. it affects all masculine nouns denoting living creatures. It is an important factor in the nominative plural and the accusative singular, as you have seen.

#### 4 More uses of *na*

In an early unit you met the preposition *na* with the accusative of *konference*, i.e. *konferenci*, and it means *for a conference* (i.e. the *reason* or *purpose* for being somewhere). In this unit you have two related expressions (like those in Unit 4, note 10):

(zboží) na prodej	<i>goods for (the purpose of) sale</i>
(věci) na cestu	<i>things for the journey</i>

There are countless other possibilities, which will not be commented on separately, but you could need:

prášek na prádlo	<i>washing powder</i>
místo na kufry	<i>room for the cases</i>

#### 5 How to ask 'why?'

*Why* is expressed by *proč*, from *pro co* (*for what*). To explain his heavy bag Mr Smith says he is a geologist and *proto* (*that is why*) (from *pro to for that [reason]*) he needs his stones. He could have said:

Mám kameny, protože jsem geolog.	<i>I have the stones because I am a geologist.</i>
-------------------------------------	--

This includes *protože* (from *pro to že = for the fact that*) which is the ordinary way of saying *because*.

Pan Novák ví, že v knihkupectví mají mapy, protože je jeho majitel. Remember the rule about commas before clauses – Unit 5, Note 5.

#### 6 Hezkou konferencí přeju – 'I wish you a pleasant conference'

*Přát* means *to wish* (somebody something) and takes the accusative for the 'something' (here a *pleasant conference*). Very often *přeju* (*I wish you*) is dropped. This explains why *good night* in Unit 1 took the form *dobrou noc* (*noc* is a feminine i-declension noun). And why *bon appétit* has the form it does – see the end of Unit 5. *Bon voyage*, another wish, is expressed by *Šťastnou cestu!* (*šťastný = happy, lucky*).

### Exercises

1 Convert the verbs and nouns in these sentences to the plural. Be sure you understand both versions of each sentence.

- |   |  |   |                              |
|---|--|---|------------------------------|
| a | Jsem cizinec.                          | f | Pan Smith je v Praze         |
| b | Dívka ( <i>the girl</i> ) je Velšanka. |   | týden.                       |
| c | Chci knihu.                            | g | Fotografa neznám, je to Ir.  |
| d | Má tašku a kufr.                       | h | Syn nemá zavazadlo.          |
| e | Kanaďan si myslí, že vidí<br>celníka.  | i | Host neví, kde je<br>záchod. |

2 Using *na*, make sensible expressions out of the following pairs of words (the order in which they are given is not necessarily a guide). Example: *šaty* (*dress, clothes*) and *ramínko* (*hanger*) → *ramínko na šaty*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a | <i>pneumatika</i> ( <i>tyre</i> ) and <i>škodovka</i> ( <i>Škoda</i> ) |
| b | <i>dopis</i> ( <i>letter</i> ) and <i>papír</i> ( <i>paper</i> )       |
| c | <i>hadr</i> ( <i>cloth</i> ) and <i>podlaha</i> ( <i>floor</i> )       |
| d | <i>zub</i> ( <i>tooth</i> ) and <i>kartáček</i> ( <i>brush</i> )       |
| e | <i>asfalt</i> and <i>silnice</i> ( <i>road</i> )                       |
| f | <i>dřevo</i> ( <i>wood</i> ) and <i>pila</i> ( <i>saw</i> )            |
| g | <i>růže</i> (f. <i>rose</i> ) and <i>váza</i> ( <i>vase</i> )          |
| h | <i>nůžky</i> ( <i>scissors</i> ) and <i>papír</i>                      |
| i | <i>dveře</i> and <i>nový zámek</i> ( <i>new lock</i> )                 |

▶ 3 In Dialogue 1 of this unit Mr Smith talks to the customs official; now answer the following questions for him. Your answers may not be as detailed as Mr Smith's own.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a | To jsou jeho zavazadla?                      |
| b | Má nějaké zboží na prodej v České republice? |
| c | Co má v tašce?                               |
| d | Proč je taška tak těžká?                     |
| e | Na co potřebuje kameny?                      |

### ▶ Dialogue 2

Mr Smith has now moved on from customs to immigration.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Pasový úředník | Pasová kontrola. Dobrý den. Váš pas, prosím.   |
| Smith          | Prosím.  |
| Úředník        | Vaše jméno a příjmení.                         |
| Smith          | Alan Smith.                                    |
| Úředník        | Kde máte trvalé bydliště? – To tu v pase není. |
| Smith          | V Maidenheadu.                                 |

Úředník	Přesná adresa?
Smith	17, Fountain Gardens, Maidenhead, Berkshire.
Úředník	Znáte svoje PSČ?
Smith	PSČ?
Úředník	Poštovní směrovací číslo – poštovní kód.
Smith	Ach, ano. SL6 9DX
Úředník	Tak je to v pořádku. Nezlobte se, že Vás takhle obtěžuji.
Smith	To nic. Jistě máte své důvody!
Úředník	Ano, očekáváme jiného pana Smithe, známého pašeráka drog a mí kolegové na celnici trošku podezřívají vaše těžká zavazadla.
Smith	Už chápu. Mám moc běžné příjmení, ale je opravdu moje.
Úředník	Jsmo na tom stejně – já se jmenuji Novák.

úředník	official
pasový úředník	immigration official
pasový	adjective from <i>pas</i> passport
kontrola	control, check(-ing)
příjmení (n)	surname
trvalý	permanent
bydliště (n)	abode (remember <i>bydlet</i> )
to tu v pase není	it isn't here in the passport
přesný	exact
adresa	address
poštovní směrovací číslo (PSČ)	postcode
poštovní	adj. from <i>pošta</i> post, post office
směrovací	adj. from <i>směřovat</i> to direct
číslo	number, also size
kód	code
tak je to v pořádku	so that's all right then
v pořádku	in order, all right
pořádek	order; tidiness
nezlobte se (a common apology)	don't be angry
obtěžovat	to pester, annoy, intrude
to nic	never mind, not to worry
jistě máte své důvody	I expect you've got your reasons
důvod	reason
očekávat	to expect; be waiting for
známý	well-known, familiar, notorious
pašerák drog	drug-smuggler
pašerák	smuggler

droga	drug
kolega (m!)	colleague
trošku podezřívají	they're a bit suspicious about
podezřívát	to suspect
už chápu	I see now
chápat (chápe)	see as in <i>grasp</i> , understand
mám moc běžné příjmení	my surname's too common
moc	too, very (in informal use)
běžný	common, ordinary
ale je opravdu moje	but it really is mine!

*jméno* name = first name, sometimes = whole name  
(remember *jménovat se*)  
*nezlobte se, že vás takhle obtěžuji* forgive me for pestering you like this  
*takhle* like this (remember *tak thus, so* and *-hle* after *to* to express 'this' in pointing)  
*jistě* surely, I expect (conveys the idea of a conjecture)  
*jsme na tom stejně* (idiom) we're both in the same boat (Lit. we are on it the same)

## Notes

### 7 Stating your personal details

Many of the details you could be asked, by an official or on a form, are taken care of in the Dialogue. The slightly simplified mock-up of a form (*formulář*) shown overleaf adds a few more – study the vocabulary list before trying to fill it in.

dřívější	previous
m = muž	i.e. male
ž = žena	i.e. female
datum	date
místo	place
narození	birth
povolání	profession
tel. = telefonní	(adj. from <i>telefon</i> )
zaměstnavatel	employer
nehodící se škrtněte	delete where inapplicable
hodit se	to be suitable, applicable



**škrtnout** to cross out  
**pohlaví** sex

**název** name, title (e.g. of company, book, etc., not personal name)

Note: the forms *manžela*, *manželky*, *vašeho* and *zaměstnavatele* are in the genitive case (translate as *of*), which you have not yet learned fully.

Příjmení _____	Jméno _____
dřívější příjmení _____	M/Ž* _____
jméno a příjmení manžela/-ky _____	
datum a místo narození – vaše _____	manžela/-ky _____
děti: _____	
jména _____	data narození _____
adresa _____	
	PSČ _____ tel. č. _____
povolání – vaše _____	manžela/-ky _____
název a adresa zaměstnavatele – vašeho _____	
	manžela/-ky _____

\*Nehodící se škrtněte

## 8 Plural adjectives and possessives

As you have already seen, adjectives have 'long' endings. So too in the plural. The great thing about their nominative, vocative and accusative plural is that there are relatively few forms to worry about. The basic ending for 'hard' adjectives for agreement with masculine inanimate or feminine nouns is *-é*.

*různé kameny various stones* *různé věci various things*

Two special forms are:

(i) those ending in *-á* for agreement with neuters.

*těžká zavazadla heavy luggage* *běžná příjmení common surnames*

(ii) those ending in *-í* for the nominative and vocative of adjectives agreeing with masculine animate nouns. As in the case of the *-í* ending of masculine animate nouns, this *-í* causes changes to final consonants, some more 'visible' than others, as in the nouns.

t + í (pron. t'í)	bohatí cizinci	rich foreigners (from <i>bohatý cizinec</i> )
d + í (pron. d'í)	mladí kluci	young lads (from <i>mladý kluk</i> )
n + í (pron. ňí)	hodní celníci	kind customs men (from <i>hodný celník</i> )
k + í → cí	nějací studenti	some students (from <i>nějaký student</i> )
h + í → zí	drazí přátelé	dear friends (from <i>drahý přítel</i> )
ch + í → ší	hluší staříci	deaf old men (from <i>hluchý stařík</i> )
r + í → ří	staří sousedé	old neighbours (from <i>starý soused</i> )

Adjectives ending in *-ský* and *-cký* are treated differently.

sk + í → ští	čeští studenti	Czech students (from <i>český student</i> )
ck + í → čti	američtí turisté	American tourists (from <i>americký turista</i> )

'Soft' adjectives show no new changes at all: the ending is *-í* for nominative, vocative and accusative plural of all three genders. Thus in Dialogue 1, *osobní věci* was feminine accusative plural, no different formally from *směrovací číslo* – neuter accusative singular.

Patterns of endings similar to those now seen in nouns and adjectives in the nominative (and the vocative) and accusative plural also apply to the possessive and demonstrative pronouns:

můj (my), tvůj (your) (fam.) and svůj (own)	
Masculine animate	Nominative } mí tví moji tvoji
	Vocative }
	Accusative } mé tvé *své moje tvoje *svoje
Masculine inanimate and feminine	Nominative } mé tvé *své moje tvoje *svoje
	Vocative }
	Accusative }
Neuter	Nominative } má tvá *svá moje tvoje *svoje
	Vocative }
	Accusative }

The shorter forms, ending in long vowels, are just like the 'hard' adjectives. The longer, more colloquial, forms, containing *-j-*, show a soft pattern of endings, which, as usual, is more economical to learn; only the masculine animate nominative is distinct.

\*Note: No form of *svůj* can ever occur in the nominative, i.e. the subject position, since it can only cross-refer to whatever is the subject:

Má rád svou sestru. *He (x) loves his (x's) sister.*

náš (our), váš (your)	
Masculine animate	Nominative } naši vaši
	Vocative }
	Accusative } naše vaše
Masculine inanimate, feminine and neuter	Nominative } naše vaše
	Vocative }
	Accusative }

These two items, ending in -š, take 'soft' endings, hence they are just like the longer versions of 'my', etc. (only the masculine animate nominative plural is distinctive).

ten, ta, to (that/this)	
Masculine animate	Nominative } ti
	Vocative }
	Accusative } ty
Masculine inanimate and feminine	Nominative } ty
	Vocative }
	Accusative }
Neuter	Nominative } ta
	Vocative }
	Accusative }

These endings reflect those of 'hard' nouns, so you might combine:

Ti studenti jsou Češi. *Those students are Czech.*  
Ty studentky jsou Češky.  
Vidíme ty studenty/studentky. *We can see those students (m/f).*

## 9 Another way of apologizing

Inviting somebody to *avoid getting enraged* may seem a bit much to say *I'm sorry*, but *nezlobte se* is a very common formula for this. It comes from *zlobit se* (to *belget angry*) which in turn comes from *zlobit* (to *annoy*).

## 10 Masculine nouns that end in -a

There is no shortage of such words, but many are names and many have identifiable meanings, having been borrowed from other languages. In the singular they have many case forms like the feminines (accusative ends in -u, for example) but in the plural they are like 'hard' masculine nouns. Most, like *kolega*, however, have the nominative plural ending -ové – *kolegové*, but the accusative is just like any other 'hard' masculine noun: *kolegy*. A large group of these words end in -ista and take the other secondary masculine animate nominative plural ending, -é, hence *turisté* (tourists), from *turista*, though -i may also be met in colloquial usage. All masculine nouns ending in -a are animate.

## 11 Přátelé! – 'Friends!'

The word *přítel* (friend) is one of the many that end in -tel (and are 'soft' in their behaviour) and so it has -é in the nominative plural. It is an oddity in having the extra change of -í- to -á- in the middle, hence *Přátelé!* (Friends!), *Nepodezříváme své přátele* (We do not suspect our friends).

## Exercises

4 Complete your part of the following dialogue with a hotel receptionist.

**Vy** Say 'Excuse me, please'.  
**Recepční** Ano, co si přejete?  
**Vy** Ask if this is Hotel Jalta.  
**Recepční** Ano. Máte tady objednávku?  
**Vy** Say you do have a booking.  
**Recepční** Vaše jméno, prosím.  
**Vy** Give your name (remember what to do if you're female).  
**Recepční** Váš cestovní pas, prosím. ... Děkuju (she hands it back).  
**Vy** (respond appropriately)  
**Recepční** Mohu se Vás zeptat, kde v Anglii bydlíte?  
**Vy** You live in Manchester. Say so.  
**Recepční** Já tam mám přátele. Jmenují se Wimpenny. Neznáte je náhodou.  
**Vy** Say unfortunately not. Manchester is a big city.  
**Recepční** Nezlobte se, že vás tak obtěžuju.

**Vy** Say that's all right (adding that you must hurry and you still need your key), klíč (m).

**Recepční** Tady je. Číslo 53 (padesát tři).

**Vy** Thank her and say goodbye.

- 5 To what questions might you give these answers?
- Tašku mám v hotelu.
  - Protože toto město neznám.
  - M znamená 'muž', ž znamená 'žena'.
  - Mám jen malý byt.
  - V kufru mám jenom osobní věci.
  - Tento papír je na dopisy.
  - To jsou Novákové.
- 6 Identify from both dialogues in this unit all the nominative and accusative plural forms. Separate nouns from adjectives and pronouns, and accusative forms from nominative forms.
- 7 What basic fact follows from the immigration officer's final sentence in the dialogue?

### **i** More quirks about singular and plural words

In the last unit you learnt that the singular English *door* happens to be a plural word in Czech – **dveře**. Now you have met the English word *luggage*, which has no plural, while its strict Czech equivalent is a countable word, **zavazadlo**, plural **zavazadla**, so you must think of it as meaning *item(s) of luggage*. **Informace** (f) (*piece of*) information and **rada** (*piece of*) advice behave in the same way.

Then we have the English plural word *goods*, which normally has no singular, while its Czech equivalent **zboží** is a singular word with no plural.

Another related problem is where one word in one language may mean two things and you have to be alert to the difference: English *hair* meaning a single hair is Czech **vlas**; but the Czech plural **vlasy** is hair in the mass, i.e. on the head: **Má černé vlasy** (*He has black hair*). At least there's some logic to that one! Then again, while the Czech plural word **šaty** has, as one equivalent, an English plural *clothes*, its first meaning is a *dress*!

# 07

## Kde jste vlastně studoval? where exactly did you study?

In this unit you will learn

- how to say something about past events
- how to say more about going places
- how to use numbers above four

## Dialogue 1

Mr Smith and his Czech colleague, Mr Navrátil, are finding out about each other's past during a break at the geological conference.

- Smith** Ještěže si můžeme během konference občas odpočinout.
- Navrátil** Jsem také rád, protože jsem se vás chtěl na pár věcí zeptat.
- Smith** Já také, pojdte někam na kávu.  
*They go off to the coffee place outside the conference hall.*
- Navrátil** Dáte si kafe nebo čaj?
- Smith** Radši čaj. Kávu jsem pil dřív, ale teď mi nedělá dobře.
- Navrátil** Kde jste vlastně studoval? Na které univerzitě?
- Smith** Původně jsem studoval v Edinburghu, ale na doktorát jsem se připravoval nejprve v Londýně a potom v Praze. Proto mluvím trochu česky.
- Navrátil** Neznal jste náhodou doktora Stuarda v Edinburghu, nebo profesora Williamse v Londýně?
- Smith** Ano, znal, ale doktor Stuart je teď v New Yorku a profesor Williams zemřel.
- Navrátil** Já jsem vlastně věděl, že doktor Stuart je v New Yorku, ale tu smutnou zprávu o profesoru Williamsovi jsem ještě neslyšel. Kdy se to stalo?
- Smith** Minulý týden. Měl tady být na konferenci, ale bohužel není. Bylo to velmi nečekané a velmi jsme jeho odchodu litovali.

<b>během konference</b>	<i>during the conference</i>
<b>během</b>	(preposition + genitive) <i>during</i>
<b>občas</b>	<i>sometimes, from time to time</i>
<b>chtěl</b>	past tense of <i>chtít</i> (to want)
<b>pár</b>	<i>pair, couple, a few</i>
<b>pojdte někam na kávu</b>	<i>come somewhere for a coffee</i>
<b>káva</b>	<i>coffee</i>
<b>dáte si kafe nebo čaj</b>	<i>will you have coffee or tea</i>
<b>kafe (n)</b>	(colloquial) <i>coffee</i>
<b>čaj (m)</b>	<i>tea</i>

<b>radši</b>	<i>preferably</i>
<b>kávu jsem pil dřív</b>	<i>I used to drink coffee</i>
<b>dřív</b>	<i>earlier, before</i>
<b>mi</b>	<i>to me</i>
<b>kde jste vlastně studoval?</b>	<i>where did you actually study?</i>
<b>na které univerzitě</b>	<i>at which university</i>
<b>nejprve</b>	<i>first of all</i>
<b>profesor Williams zemřel</b>	<i>Professor Williams has died</i>
<b>zemřel</b>	past tense of <i>zemřít</i> (zemře) <i>die</i>
<b>já jsem vlastně věděl, že ...</b>	<i>I actually knew that ...</i>
<b>smutný</b>	<i>sad</i>
<b>kdy se to stalo?</b>	<i>when did it happen?</i>
<b>minulý</b>	<i>past, last</i>
<b>nečekaný</b>	<i>unexpected</i>
<b>odchod</b>	<i>departure, leaving</i>
<b>lítovat (lituje) + genitive</b>	<i>to regret</i>

- chtěl jsem se vás na pár věcí zeptat** *I wanted to ask you about a few things*
- zeptat se** a form of **ptát se** + genitive to ask (someone)
- teď mi nedělá dobře** *now it makes me ill* (idiom Lit. it doesn't do me well)
- na doktorát jsem se připravoval** *I prepared for my doctorate*
- připravovat se** *prepare (oneself), get ready, train, study*
- neznal jste náhodou doktora Stuarda?** *did you happen to know Dr Stuart?*
- doktor Stuart je teď v New Yorku** *Dr Stuart's in New York now*
- zpráva** *report, (item of) news* (plural *zprávy* the news)
- stalo se** past tense of **stát se** (*stane se*) to happen
- tu smutnou zprávu jsem ještě neslyšel** *I hadn't heard that sad news yet*
- měl tady být na konferenci** *he was to have been at the conference*
- měl** past tense of **mít** (here *mít* is in the special meaning of 'be supposed to')
- velmi jsme jeho odchodu litovali** *we much regretted his passing*
- velmi** *very* (with adjectives); (*very*) *much* (with verbs)

## Notes

### 1 Forming the past tense

To form the past tense of a verb, first find the infinitive. Remove the final -t and replace it with -l. This gives the form for *he* (masculine singular): dělat → dělal (*he was doing*).

Now, because past tense forms *must* agree with the gender of the subject, add -a for *she* (or any feminine subject) and -o for *it* (or any neuter subject).

Marie dělala snídani.	Mary was making breakfast.
Cesta byla dlouhá.	The trip was (a) long (one).
To bylo nečekané.	It was unexpected.
Na rohu stálo kino.	At the corner stood a cinema.

In the plural (*they* forms), gender matters more in writing than speaking. The strict written endings are -i for masculine animate plural (muži chtěli *the men wanted*), -y for masculine inanimate and feminine plural (stoly/ženy byly *the tables/women were*), and -a for neuter plural (města byla *the cities were*), but normally you will hear (and may use) a general i-ending in speech. Notice how the past-tense endings match the ends of the basic types of noun you have met:

	Masculine animate	Masculine inanimate	Feminine	Neuter
Singular	student byl	kámen byl	studentka byla	město bylo
Plural	studenti byli	kameny byly	studentky byly	města byla

To form the other persons you must use an auxiliary verb (like English *have* or *was* in, for example, *I have done it*, *I was doing it*).

However, you have not much new to learn here: the Czech auxiliary verb in the past tense is the 1st and 2nd person forms of the verb *být*, which you already know. This explains the following forms in the dialogue: *chtěl jsem*, *pil jsem*, *studoval jsem*, *připravoval jsem se*, *neslyšel jsem* (all *I* – male speaker); *studoval jste*, *neznal jste* (*you*: on *vy*-terms; the person addressed is male); *litovali jsme* (*we* – at least one of whom is male).

The full past tense, based on *být*, is in the following table:

byl jsem	I was (or byla for female I)
byl jsi	you (thou) were (or byla [ř])
byl	he (or other masculine) was
byla	she (or other feminine) was
bylo	it (or other neuter) was
byli jsme	we (at least one of us is male) were
byly jsme	we (who are all female) were
byli jste	you (at least one of whom is male) were
byly jste	you (who are all female) were
byl jste	you (one male, non-familiar) were
byla jste	you (one female, non-familiar) were
byli	they (of whom one is masculine animate) were
byly	they (of whom none is masculine animate) were
byla	they (neuter) were

Note the important variety of *you* forms:

a singular past-tense forms (ending in -l or -la) with singular auxiliary *jsi* for informal address, e.g. among children and close friends, by adults to children, among students or soldiers – people who address one another as *ty*;

b plural past-tense forms (ending in -li or -ly) with plural auxiliary *jste* for any group of persons being addressed;

c the version you are most likely to need first: singular past-tense forms with plural auxiliary *jste* to address those with whom you are still on *vy* terms. There are social niceties to be observed here and you should wait until your Czech friends suggest you switch from *vy* to *ty* forms.

### Past tense and word order

You will notice that the past-tense forms in the table have the auxiliary verb in second place although in the dialogue you might have noticed that the two parts were sometimes inverted or not even next to one another. This is because the auxiliary verb must be in the second grammatical slot in the sentence or clause. Auxiliaries are, like *se* and *si*, stressless words (Unit 5, Note 12). This means that Mr Smith might have said not only *Původně / jsem / studoval / v Edinburghu* (/ separates the slots in the sentence) but also *Studoval / jsem / původně / v Edinburghu*. *Studoval* moves, but *jsem* (the auxiliary verb) remains firmly in the second slot.



Where there are several stressless items fighting for this second slot, the past-tense auxiliary always wins, followed by the reflexives *se* and *si*, followed by other pronouns, hence Dr Novák's: ..., **protože / jsem se vás / chtěl / zeptat**. The same sentence without *because* would be: **Chtěl / jsem se vás / zeptat**. Similarly, **velmi / jsme / jeho odchodu / litovali** could be converted to **jeho odchodu / jsme / velmi / litovali**. The difference in emphasis brought about by this change of word order is relatively slight. In other circumstances the change of emphasis could be much greater.

### An important Czech-English contrast

In English, you can answer what someone else has said using the relevant auxiliary part, e.g. 'Has she been?' 'Yes she has', and 'Did she go?' 'No she didn't'. If the question has no auxiliary, you use one anyway, e.g. 'She went on Tuesday.' 'Oh no she didn't!'

In Czech, auxiliaries are weak words and aren't even used in the third persons, so it is the main part of the verb that is used in replies. In the dialogue Mr Smith is asked whether he had known Dr Stuart. His reply omits the auxiliary and so is simply **znal** for *I had (known) or I did (know)*; because this is a dialogue it would not be misunderstood to be the sort of **znal** that would mean *he knew*.

### The Czech past tense is simple!

There is only one form of the past tense in Czech to translate all the formal variety of the English *I wanted, did you study, I used to drink, I haven't or hadn't heard*.

Negation is also a simple matter: just add *ne-* to the main verb (not to the auxiliary): **neslyšel jsem**.

### Watch out for verbs of one syllable

One-syllable verbs tend to be very common and you won't get far without them. So not only must you learn their 3rd-person singular form, you must also learn any oddities there may be in their past-tense forms. Basically, the rule is that their long vowel is shortened: **být** → **byl**; **znát** → **znal**; **pít** → **pil**.

But if the infinitive contains *-í-*, shortening it may change the vowel: **mít** → **měl**; **chtít** → **chtěl**.

This may also happen with some other verbs: **zemřít** → **zemřel**. All such verbs must be specially noted. Some verbs with *-á-* keep the long vowel: **stát** (*stand, cost*) → **stál**; **hrát** (*play*) → **hrál**.

There is a simple test for this: length is not lost if the present tense contains a *-j-*, as in **stojí** *he/she is standing, it costs, hraje* *he/she is playing*.

The verb **jít** has a totally irregular past tense:

	Singular		Plural	
Masculine	šel	Masculine animate	šli	
Feminine	šla	Masculine inanimate	šly	
Neuter	šlo	Feminine	šly	
		Neuter	šla	

## 2 Animate masculines and the locative singular

The locative singular ending for masculine animate nouns is *-ovi*, but if more than one word is involved *-u* is used except for the last word:

Mluvíme o profesorovi.	<i>We are talking about the professor.</i>
Mluvíme o profesoru Novákovi.	<i>We are talking about Prof. Novák.</i>

'Soft' masculine nouns use just the ordinary soft locative ending *-i*: o **muži** (*about the man*), unless it is a proper name, when *-ovi* is used: o **Milošovi** (*about Miloš*). Notice that English names that end in *-s* usually follow the Czech soft declension, hence **znám profesora Williamse** ('soft' accusative).

## 3 Adjectives and the locative singular

'Hard' masculine and neuter:	<b>-ém</b>	'Hard' feminine:	<b>-é</b>
'Soft' masculine and neuter:	<b>-im</b>	'Soft' feminine:	<b>-í</b>

na starém hradě <i>at the old castle</i>	v cizím kufru <i>in someone else's suitcase</i>
ve starém městě <i>in an old city</i>	v cizím autě <i>in someone else's car</i>
o staré univerzitě <i>about an old university</i>	na cizí univerzitě <i>at a foreign university</i>

Possessive **můj, tvůj, svůj** share the 'hard' adjective endings:

v mém kufru <i>in my suitcase</i>	na tvém stole <i>on your desk</i>
v tvé knize <i>in your book</i>	

while **náš, váš** have the endings **-em** (masculine and neuter) and **-í** (feminine); remember the vowel will shorten:

v našem hotelu *in our hotel*  
ve vaší ložnici *in your bedroom*

The demonstrative pronoun **ten, ta, to** has the forms **tom** (masculine and neuter) and **té** (feminine):

v tom případě *in that case (případ = case, event)*  
v této situaci *in this situation (situace = situation)*

## Exercises

- Read the dialogue and answer the questions. **Přečtěte rozhovor a odpovězte na otázky.**
  - Kde studoval pan Smith?
  - Proč mluví pan Smith česky?
  - Kde teď pracuje doktor Stuart a kde pracoval dřív?
  - Co víme o profesoru Williamsovi?
  - Na jaké konferenci se setkali (*setkat se = meet*) pan Smith a doktor Navrátil?
- Put in the past. **Převedte do minulého času.**
  - Nemají mapu.
  - Jsme na návštěvě u pana Navrátila.
  - Mluví celý den česky.
  - Chcete si večer odpočinout?
  - Doma se zouváme.
  - Konference nás velmi unavuje.
  - Co to znamená?  
(Before checking your answers, make sure you've got the word order right!)
  - Translate your answers into English in writing, check them, set them aside, and then, after a suitable interval (at least an hour), put them back into Czech without reference to the book.
- What questions might you have asked to get the following answers?
  - Studoval jsem na univerzitě v Berlíně.
  - Protože mi káva nedělá dobře.
  - O jeho smrti (*smrt, i-declension = death*) jsem neslyšel.
  - Stalo se to včera (*včera = yesterday*).
  - Ano, Prahu máme velmi rádi.
  - V tašce mají jenom pár věcí.

## Dialogue 2

The conference is over for the day and Mr Smith wants to go somewhere interesting for the evening. He asks his colleague, Mr Navrátil, for some help.

- Smith** Řekněte mi, kam můžu jít večer?  
**Navrátil** Můžete jít do divadla – ve městě je osm různých divadel, nebo na koncert. Můžete jít samozřejmě do kina, běží alespoň šest anglických filmů, pokud se chcete cítit jako doma.
- Smith** Radši ne. Chci něco, co je typicky pražské.  
**Navrátil** Aha. Většina cizinců jde při první návštěvě Prahy do hospody u Fleků. Je to odsud jenom pět minut pěšky.  
**Smith** Co tam mají?  
**Navrátil** Unikátní černé pivo. Víte, že máme hodně dobrých piv.  
**Smith** Ale já nechci jenom sedět u piva. A taky potřebuju být v hotelu ve slušnou hodinu a střízlivý. Chci do rána přepsat několik pasází ve svém zítřejším referátu.
- Navrátil** Váš referát není zítra, ale pozítří. Víte co, pojdte do mé laboratoře. Mám klíč a je tam pár zdejších kuriozit, které jste určitě nikdy neviděl.

<b>řekněte mi</b>	<i>tell me</i>
<b>kam můžu jít večer?</b>	<i>where can I go this evening?</i>
<b>můžete jít do divadla</b>	<i>you can go to the theatre</i>
<b>divadlo</b>	<i>theatre</i>
<b>osm</b>	<i>eight</i>
<b>samozřejmě</b>	<i>of course, obviously</i>
<b>do kina</b>	<i>to the cinema</i>
<b>kino</b>	<i>cinema</i>
<b>běžet (-i)</b>	<i>to run</i>
<b>alespoň</b>	<i>(colloquial also aspoň) at least</i>
<b>šest</b>	<i>six</i>
<b>pokud se chcete cítit jako doma</b>	<i>if you want to feel at home</i>
<b>pokud</b>	<i>if, in so far as</i>
<b>cítit se</b>	<i>to feel</i>
<b>jako</b>	<i>as, like</i>
<b>něco, co</b>	<i>something that/which</i>
<b>pražský</b>	<i>(adjective from Praha) of Prague</i>
<b>většina cizinců</b>	<i>most foreigners</i>
<b>většina</b>	<i>the majority (of)</i>
<b>při první návštěvě</b>	<i>on their first visit</i>
<b>do hospody</b>	<i>to a/the pub</i>
<b>pět minut pěšky</b>	<i>five minutes on foot</i>

minuta	minute
pěšky	on foot
unikátní	unique
černý	black
sedět u piva	to sit around drinking beer
sedět (-i)	to sit
u	at (preposition + genitive)
ve slušnou hodinu	at a respectable hour
slušný	decent, respectable
hodina	hour
střízlivý	sober
do rána	by morning
několik	several
pasáž (f)	passage
zítejší	(adjective from <i>zítra</i> ) tomorrow's
pozítří	the day after tomorrow
laboratoř (f)	laboratory
zdejší	(adjective from <i>zde</i> here) local
kuriozita	curio, (item of) curiosity
nikdy	never

ve městě je osm různých divadel *there are eight different theatres in the city*

běží alespoň šest anglických filmů *there are at least six English films on*

chci něco, co je typicky pražské *I want something that is typically (of) Prague*

typicky (adverb from *typický* typical) typically

u Fleků at *Fleky* (a well-known Prague pub)

přepsat (compound of *psát-píše* write) to re-write

referát (conference, seminar, etc.) paper, report

## Notes

### 4 How to express 'to somewhere'

The main preposition for *to*, or *into* is **do**, which is followed by the genitive case. You will almost always need it where the goal is an enclosed space, hence, in the dialogue, the items **divadlo**, **kino**, **hospoda**, hotel, **laboratoř**. (Also in the dialogue, **do rána**, where **do** means *by*, also *until*, in time expressions.)

The tables below summarize the genitive case endings of the main types of nouns and adjectives/pronouns. You will see some

familiar endings from the various phrases you have already met containing **z** (*from*), which also takes the genitive.

	Nominative singular	Genitive singular	Genitive plural
Hard masculine animate	student	studenta	studentů
Hard masculine inanimate	stůl	stolu	stolů
Masculine ending in -a	kolega	kolegy	kolegů
Soft masculine animate	muž	muže	mužů
Soft masculine inanimate	klíč	klíče	klíčů
Hard feminine	hospoda	hospody	hospod
Soft feminine	pasáž	pasáže	pasáží
	kuchyně	kuchyně	kuchyní
Hard neuter	město	města	měst
Soft neuter	moře	moře	moří
Feminine i-declension	věc	věci	věcí
Neuters ending in -i	nádraží	nádraží	nádraží

Some other points to note:

a if a feminine or neuter noun would end in a group of consonants in the genitive plural, which has a 'zero' ending, they will be separated by **-e-**: *studentka-studentek*, *divadlo-divadel*. This does not happen with final **-st**: *město-měst*.

b 'soft' feminine nouns ending in **-ice** and a small number of others also have no ending in the genitive plural: *ulice-ulic* (*street*), *košile-košil* (*shirt*). 'Soft' neuters ending in **-iště** have the same feature: *letišťe-letišť* (*airport*).

c some feminine and neuter words of two syllables with a long vowel or diphthong in the first syllable shorten this in the genitive plural: *dílo-děl* (*work*), *kráva-krav* (*cow*), *moucha-much* (*fly*), *míle-mil* (f) (*mile*). Shortening, as you see, may, as with the past tense, change the vowel.

### Adjectives and pronouns (genitive)

Study the tables on p. 96 at length, noting how the available endings are distributed (for example, in the *nouns* genitive singular masculine animate = accusative singular masculine animate; all soft genitive singulars end in **-e/-ě**; 'hard' feminine and neuter genitive plural both end in zero; all genitive plurals in *adjectives* and *pronouns* are the same, irrespective of gender).

Using the models: **do těch malých hospod** or **z toho malého města** or **během té nudné** (*boring*) **konference**, write down phrases of your own until you begin to be more spontaneous in achieving the

right combinations. The table is followed by more prepositions which can be followed by the genitive:

		Nominative singular	Genitive singular	Genitive plural
Hard adjective	masculine	dobrý	dobrého	dobrých
	feminine	dobrá	dobré	dobrých
	neuter	dobré	dobrého	dobrých
Soft adjective	masculine	cizí	cizího	cizích
	feminine	cizí	cizí	cizích
	neuter	cizí	cizího	cizích
This, that	masculine	ten	toho	těch
	feminine	ta	té	těch
	neuter	to	toho	těch
My	masculine	můj	mého	mých
	feminine	má/moje	mé	mých
	neuter	mé/moje	mého	mých
Our	masculine	naš	našeho	našich
	feminine	naše	naší	našich
	neuter	naše	našeho	našich

<b>bez</b>	<i>without</i>	<b>od</b>	<i>(away) from</i>
<b>blízko</b>	<i>near</i>	<b>podle</b>	<i>according to</i>
<b>kolem</b>	<i>round, past</i>	<b>vedle</b>	<i>beside</i>
<b>kromě</b>	<i>besides, except</i>	<b>u</b>	<i>at, by, near</i>

To go from place to place you need to learn the formula: *Jak se dostanu do ..?* (or *na ..?* if the name of the destination warrants it) meaning *How do I get to..?* Also learn the version: *Nevím, jak se dostat do ... (na ...) I don't know how to get to...*

In the next unit you will meet some of the advice you might get in response to these.

## 5 Numbers 5 to 10

pět	5	sedm	7	devět	9
šest	6	osm	8	deset	10

Higher numbers will be dealt with later. They are all followed by the genitive plural, e.g. *osm divadel, šest anglických filmů, pět minut.*

Other expressions denoting quantity also require the genitive plural, as in *několik pasáží (several passages)*, and you've already seen *pár věcí (a few things)*. Other 'quantifiers' of the same type include:

<b>kolik</b>	<i>how many</i>	<b>nemnoho</b>	<i>not many</i>
<b>tolik</b>	<i>so many</i>	<b>hodně</b>	<i>a lot of</i>
<b>mnoho</b>	<i>many</i>	<b>dost</b>	<i>enough</i>
<b>málo</b>	<i>few</i>		

Note: unlike *několik* and *pár*, the above words may also combine with the genitive singular, in the senses 'much' and 'little': *mnoho času (plenty of time), kolik práce? (how much work?), málo piva (little (not much) beer).*

Some quantifiers such as *většina*, as in *většina cizinců (most foreigners)*, also *řada (many, several)*, behave entirely like the nouns from which they have come: *většina (the majority), řada (line, row, series, queue).*

## 6 Verb agreement with counted expressions

Numbers above five, and most of the other quantifying words, behave as neuter singular nouns, so when any phrase containing them is the subject of the sentence the verb is singular:

<i>ve městě je osm divadel</i>	<i>v laboratoři je pár kuriozit</i>
<i>sedm koncertů se koná</i>	<i>většina cizinců jde</i>

Note what happens in the past tense:

<i>ve městě bylo osm divadel</i>	<i>v laboratoři bylo pár kuriozit</i>
<i>sedm koncertů se konalo</i>	

These verbs, above, are in the neuter singular, but in

*většina cizinců šla*

the verb agrees with the feminine noun *většina*.

## 7 'One/ones': avoid noun repetition

The pattern of agreement with adjectives and pronouns means there is never any doubt about what is referred to.

<i>Petr má nové auto,</i>	<i>Peter has a new car,</i>
<i>já mám jen staré.</i>	<i>I only have an old (one).</i>

Můžete jít do divadla –  
máme tu sedm různých.

Tamta hospoda je dobrá,  
tahle není.

*You can go to the theatre –  
we have seven different  
(ones) here.*

*That pub is (a) good (one),  
this (one) isn't.*

### 8 Double negatives

If you combine, in English, 'not ... anyone/anywhere', or use 'nobody', 'nowhere', etc. in a sentence, you must use the Czech forms beginning with *ni-* and reinforce the negation in the verb:

Nikdo nešel do divadla.  
Nepotřebuji nic.

*No one went to the theatre.  
I don't need anything.*

Triple (and higher) negation is also obligatory where applicable:

Nikdy nikde nikomu  
nic nekupuju.

*I never buy anything for  
anyone anywhere.*

### Exercises

- 4 Read the dialogue and answer the questions.
  - a Kolik divadel je ve městě?
  - b Jak je daleko do hospody u Fleků?
  - c Jaké pivo mají u Fleků?
  - d Proč se chce pan Smith vrátit do hotelu střízlivý?
  - e Co má doktor Navrátil ve své laboratoři?
- 5 a Tell a friend: you have two daughters and five sons; it is only ten minutes' walk to work; you have several types (*druh* = *type, sort*) of beer at home.
  - b Ask him if they have: a lot of foreigners in the town; enough time; six suitcases.
  - c Tell him there were: two sad items of news yesterday; five different keys on the table; seven English geologists on (in) the plane besides that German colleague.
- 6 Make the following suggestions to a friend:
  - a Come for a beer/a coffee.
  - b Come and see us this evening.
  - c Where do you feel more (*víc*) at home: at the office or in the pub?
  - d Can we go to the theatre or the cinema together?
  - e Do you want to rest first?
  - f Come into the kitchen for (some) tea.

### Pubs and beers

The Czechs and their beers are renowned the world over. Pils, Pilsen and Pilsner are all variants on one of the few Czech words borrowed by other languages. It comes from the name of the city of **Plzeň** (*Pilsen*). It is not the only beer, though most others are of the same general **ležák** (*lager*)-type. To recognize what beers are on sale you need to spot the name of the town that is home to the particular **pivovar** (*brewery*) or the adjectival form of the name: **plzeňský** in the Pilsen case, or **velkopopovický** from Velké Popovice, **vratislavický** from Vratislavice nad Nisou, **budějovický** from České Budějovice, home of the original Budweiser-Budvar, and so on. Some brands have a name: **Prazdroj**, the local name for Pilsner Urquell, **Staropramen** (*Old Spring*), a well-known Prague brew, **Kozel** (*Goat*) from Velké Popovice, and countless others.

There are three common strengths, described as **desítka** (ten per cent gravity), **jedenáctka** (eleven per cent) and **dvanáctka** (twelve per cent), though you may find a **čtrnáctka** (fourteen per cent).

Pubs themselves are easily recognized, by the words **hostinec** or **pivnice**; the word you have learned, **hospoda**, usually doesn't figure on signs. Pub names are of two main types, based on a surname in the genitive plural, as in **U Fleků**, or on the name of an animal, plant or other object, as in **U Supa** (*The Vulture*), **U Dvou koček** (*The Two Cats*), **U Kalicha** (*The Chalice*), etc. Very widespread is **U Lipy** (*The Linden Tree*), the Czech national tree. Common to both types is the use of the preposition **u**, here meaning *at the place of* or *at the sign of*. Occasionally you may meet plain names referring to places, such as **Port Artur** (*Port Arthur*) or **Na Bojišti** (*On the Battlefield*).

**Pivovar u Fleků**  
**Fidelní listek**

Menu head from U Fleků





# 08

## nemůžu najít klíč I can't find the key

- In this unit you will learn
- how to use the past tense
  - how to complain about this and that
  - how to ask what something costs
  - how to use higher numbers
  - how to give and understand simple directions

### Dialogue 1

Mr and Mrs Navrátil are having a discussion at home, Mr Navrátil having just pronounced himself a *smolař*, one dogged by misfortune (*smůla*).

- Ona** Proč si myslíš, že jsi *smolař*?  
**On** Jestli to chceš opravdu vědět, tak nemůžu najít klíče od kanceláře, hodinky mi nejdou, rozhlas v pracovně nefunguje, celou noc jsem nespal, protože tramvaje dělaly hluk, a teď mě už dvě hodiny bolí hlava.  
**Ona** Ale, broučku, klíče byly včera na televizi, musels je tam vidět. Hodinky zlobí delší dobu, proto ti právě dnes kupuju nové. Rozhlas při práci nepotřebuješ. Tramvaje dělají stejný hluk každou noc, tak nevím, proč jsi nespal zrovna dnes, a na tu hlavu sis mohl něco vzít dávno.  
**On** Děkuju za útěchu! Víš, že mi prášky nepomáhají. Ještě mi řekni, jak mám celý den pracovat.  
**Ona** Ty si pořád na něco stěžuješ. Mě také někdy budí tramvaje, ale dnes jsem se náhodou vyspala krásně.

<b>proč si myslíš, že ...</b>	<i>why do you think that ...</i>
<b>jestli to chceš opravdu vědět</b>	<i>if you really want to know</i>
<b>nemůžu najít klíče od kanceláře</b>	<i>I cannot find the office keys</i>
<b>najít</b>	<i>to find</i>
<b>hodinky mi nejdou</b>	<i>my watch isn't working</i>
<b>hodinky (f pl)</b>	<i>watch</i>
<b>rozhlas</b>	<i>radio</i>
<b>pracovna</b>	<i>study, private office</i>
<b>fungovat</b>	<i>work, function</i>
<b>celou noc</b>	<i>all night</i>
<b>hluk</b>	<i>noise</i>
<b>bolí mě hlava</b>	<i>I've got a headache</i>
<b>bolet (bolí)</b>	<i>hurt, ache</i>
<b>mě</b>	<i>me</i>
<b>hlava</b>	<i>head</i>
<b>musels je tam vidět</b>	<i>you must have seen them there</i>
<b>je</b>	<i>them</i>
<b>zlobit</b>	<i>annoy, be naughty, cause trouble</i>
<b>delší dobu</b>	<i>for some time</i>
<b>delší (comparative of dlouhý long)</b>	<i>longish</i>
<b>doba</b>	<i>time</i>
<b>ti</b>	<i>to/for you</i>
<b>právě dnes</b>	<i>this very day</i>

právě	just, exactly, precisely
při práci	at work = while you're working
stejný	the same
každou noc	every night
zrovna dnes	today of all days
zrovna = právě	(above)
vzít (si)	take
mohl	past tense of <i>moci</i>
dávno	long ago
děkuju za útěchu	thanks for the consolation
útěcha	consolation
prášek	powder, pill
ještě mi řekni	now tell me
pořád	all the time
stěžovat si + na (+ acc.)	to complain (about)
budit	to wake
vyspat se (vyspí se)	to have a good night's sleep

od Lit. from (i.e. the keys belong to the office)  
 mi dative of I (denoting either possessor of the watch or the victim of its refusal to work)  
 broučku vocative of *brouček* little beetle (a common term of endearment)  
 na tu hlavu sis mohl něco vzít dávno you could have taken something for that head long ago  
 za (preposition + accusative) for, in exchange for

## Notes

### 1 Complaining

If something doesn't work, use negative forms of *jít* (go) or *fungovat* (function). *Pracovat* (work) is usually limited to people. Other useful expressions are *zlobit* (give trouble), *mít poruchu* (have something wrong), *být rozbitý* (be broken).

Aches and pains are all expressed by *bolet* (hurt), either with the offending body-part as the subject and the sufferer as the object:

Bolí mě hlava. I've got a headache. Bolí jí noha. She's got a sore leg. Bolí ho ucho. He's got earache. Bolely mě zuby. I had toothache.

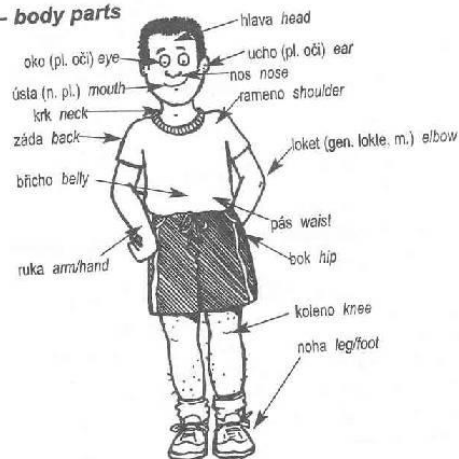
or by saying where the pain is:

Bolí mě v krku. I've got a sore throat. Bolí ho v kříži. He's got lumbago.

Note: Ji (her), ho (him). Like se, si and mě, mi these are stressless words and go in the second slot in the sentence.

Here are three sets of words that could be useful.

### Části těla – body parts



### Other useful body parts

jazyk	tongue
kotník	ankle, knuckle
kříž (m)	small of the back (Lit. cross)
nehet (gen. nehtu)	nail
obočí	eyebrow(s)
palec (gen. palce, m)	thumb, big toe
pata	heel
prst	finger, toe
ret (pl. rty)	lip
srdce (n)	heart
střevo	intestine
zadek (gen. zadku)	bottom
zápěstí	wrist
žaludek (gen. žaludku)	stomach

## Basic instruments

rozhlas, rádio	radio	holící strojek	shaver
televize (f)	TV	zásuvka	socket, plug; drawer
vypínač (m)	switch	počítač (m)	computer
lampa	lamp	zámek	lock
světlo	light	stroj (m)	machine
kohoutek	tap	hodiny (f pl)	clock
voda	water	pračka	washing machine
fax	fax	sprcha	shower

Note that in **kohoutek**, **strojek** and **zámek** the **-e-** disappears before endings, e.g. gen. **kohoutku**.

You are not expected to learn all these words at once, but they may be used in exercises, etc., and of course the sooner you do learn them, the less you'll have to use dictionaries.

## 2 Using the past tense when addressing other people

In Unit 7 Mr Navrátil asked Mr Smith whether he knew certain people, and he used the form **neznal jste**. He is using **vykání**, saying **vy**, the polite plural **you** to him. Had he been speaking on the same terms with a woman he would have said, following the rules given in Unit 7, Note 1, **neznala jste**.

In this unit, in the informal dialogue of a married couple, who use **tykáni**, saying **ty** to each other, **nespal jsi** is the masculine singular form addressed to Mr Navrátil. Had **he** been speaking to **her** he would have said **nespala jsi**, the feminine equivalent. Thus it is vital to appreciate the degree of intimacy between yourself and the other speaker. If, however, **you** refers to a group of people, at any degree of (in)formality, then the true plural of the past tense is used, for example, **byli jste** (*you were*), where at least one of those addressed is male, or **byly jste**, where all the addressees are female. Of course, you cannot hear the difference, but it is observed in writing.

You are less likely to need the informal singular forms of **tykáni**, but you should note what may happen to the auxiliary verb **jsi**. If the verb stands at the beginning of a sentence, **jsi** may be reduced to **-s**, as in **musels** for **musel jsi** in the dialogue. Moreover, if the verb is accompanied by **si**, which should follow **jsi** in past-tense phrases, the two items merge as **sis**, as in **na tu hlavu sis mohl něco vzít**.

A similar situation applies in verbs accompanied by **se**, so for **nepředstavil jsi se panu Novákovi** (*you didn't introduce yourself to Mr Novák*), you will normally hear: **nepředstavil ses ...**

**Jsi** is commonly reduced to **-s** after question words:

Co s viděl?	What did you see?
Kdes byl?	Where have you been?

## 3 Time/duration

Many common time notions are expressed by the simple accusative case. With masculine expressions like **celý den** (*all day*) or **dnes večer** (*this evening*), or plurals like **dvě hodiny** (*two hours*), you cannot tell that this is accusative, but with feminines in the singular, thanks to agreement with any adjectives, it becomes obvious: **celou noc** and **každou noc**. It is even more obvious with nouns that show a distinct accusative case form, such as in **celou dobu** (*all the time*), **každou sobotu** (*every Saturday*), **čekal hodinu** (*He waited an hour*) and others.

## 4 Za followed by the accusative

The preposition **za** has various meanings and takes various cases. The most important is to express *for*, denoting in some sense 'exchange'. Hence it follows **děkovat to thank** (my thanks are in exchange for some gift, kindness, etc.), or after verbs of giving, selling, offering, etc. for a price: **nabízím mu** (*to him*) **za jeho auto svou chatu** (*I'm offering him my cottage for his car*) (**nabízet, nabízí**, 3rd pl. **nabízejí to offer**).

It is also used when you do something for someone:

Já to dělám za Petra, on sám nemůže.	I'm doing it for Peter, he cannot (do it) himself (sám, sama, etc. -self m., f.).
---	---

## 5 Past tense: verbs ending in a consonant + t

Several Czech infinitives have a consonant before the final **-t**. You have so far met **mocht** (*to be able*). Some others are **číst** (*to read*), **nést** (*to carry*), **vést** (*to lead*), **krást** (*to steal*), **téct** (*to flow*; *run of water*). Their past tenses usually have to be learnt separately, since there will be a consonant before the **-l** that indicates past, but it may not be the same as that in the infinitive, or indeed that of the present tense. Exact forms will be indicated as required, but note the ones quoted:

mocht-může-mohl	číst-čte-četl	nést-nese-nesl
vést-vede-vedl	krást-krade-kradl	téct-teče-tekl

## Exercises

- 1 Answer according to the dialogue.
- Myslíte, že pan Navrátil je opravdu smolař? (Give a positive and a negative answer.)
  - Kde má pan Navrátil klíče? Jaké klíče to jsou?
  - Proč nemohl pan Navrátil spát?
  - Proč kupuje paní Navrátilová nové hodinky?
  - Kde má pan Navrátil rozhlas?
  - Bolí pana Navrátila zub?
  - Kdo si u Navrátilů stěžuje?
- 2 Answer as appropriate: Co ho/ji bolí?



- 3 Replace the English responses with suitable Czech expressions.

Přítel Co ti je? (*What's the matter with you?*)  
 You I've got a headache.

Přítel Musíš si vzít aspirín.  
 You It doesn't help.  
 Přítel Nespals?  
 You Not much. The trams kept waking me (say: woke me all the time).  
 Přítel Zrovna dnes mě taky bolí hlava.  
 You So that makes two of us (say: So we are two).

- 4 Ask the hotel porter:
- how to get to the cinema;
  - whether he has seen your keys;
  - whether he has a watch; yours isn't working;
  - how many aspirins he has; you need two because you have a headache and one isn't enough (use *stačit to suffice*);
  - if the receptionist (*recepční* – an adjectival noun, m or f) can wake you;
  - if he happens to know where the post office (station) is.

## Dialogue 2

Dr Navrátil has arrived to collect Mr Smith from his hotel.

Smith Dobrý den.  
 Navrátil Dobrý den. Vyspal jste se?  
 Smith Děkuju. Velmi dobře.  
 Navrátil Promiňte, že jdu pozdě. Měl jsem na křižovatce nehodu.  
 Smith Kudy jste jel?  
 Navrátil Z domova doleva, potom doprava a rovně až na křižovatku u obchodního domu. Tam se to stalo, u semaforu, když jsem odbočoval sem.  
 Smith Co se vlastně stalo?  
 Navrátil Nic moc. Mám jenom trochu pomačkaný blatník.  
 Smith Kolik tu stojí oprava blatníku?  
 Navrátil Asi pět set korun, ale ten druhý řidič to zaplatí – prý. Jsem na to zvědav – ale mám jeho adresu.  
 Smith Aspoň nemusíte mít nový blatník.  
 Navrátil Zaplaťpánbůh! Tak pojďte, jedeme na ten fotbal nebo ne!?  
 Smith Tak dobře, když auto máte jakžtakž v pořádku. Jen pozor na křižovatky!

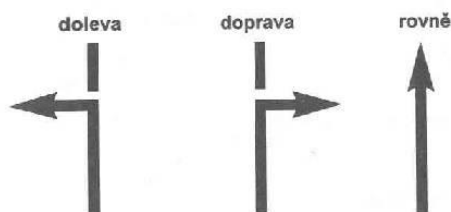
promiňte, že jdu pozdě	sorry I'm late
pozdě	(adverb, not adjective) late
křižovatka	crossroads
nehoda	accident
kudy jste jel	which way did you come/go
domov	(genitive domova) home
doleva	to the left
potom	then
doprava	to the right
rovně	straight on
až na	all the way to
semafor	traffic light(s)
když jsem odbočoval sem	as I was turning (to come) here
když	as, when
odbočovat	to turn off; to digress
nic moc	not(hing) much
nic	nothing
moc	much, a lot
pomačkaný	dented
blatník	mudguard, wing (from bláto mud)
oprava	repair
asi pět set korun	about five hundred crowns
druhý	second, the other
řidič	driver
zaplatí	will pay
prý	here, he says
jsem na to zvědav	I wonder... (I'm curious about it)
zaplatpánbůh	thank God!
když	here, if, since
pozor na (+ acc.)	watch out for

**kudy** which way (contrast kam where to)  
**jet (jede)** to go (by some means of transport)  
**z domova** from home (goes with doma at home and domů home(wards))  
**až** intensifying particle; compare Unit 4, Note 12  
**obchodní dům** department store (Lit. commercial house)  
**obchodní** commercial, business from obchod trade, business, shop  
**sem** (to) here (opposite of tam (to) there; used for motion, direction, goal, not location)  
**kolik tu stojí oprava** how much does a/the repair cost here  
**když auto máte jakžtakž v pořádku** if/since your car's more or less okay  
**jakžtakž** (colloquial) more or less, also so-so

## Notes

## 6 Giving directions

The three main items you will need are in the dialogue:



Related words are vlevo, nalevo (on the left) and vpravo, napravo (on the right).

You may also need to use and/or recognize such expressions as first/second, etc. street/building, etc. on the left/right. This is done by combining the ordinal numerals given below with ulice (street), budova (building), etc. and those adverbs denoting on the left/right – třetí ulice vpravo = third street on the right. Places at which you might be told to turn will take the prepositions na (+ locative) and u (+ genitive) basically according to whether they are open spaces (like a crossroads) or 3-dimensional objects (like traffic-lights or a department store, as in the dialogue). If you ask the way somewhere, expect the answer to contain jděte (go – if on foot), jeďte (go – if driving), zahněte (turn), pokračujte (continue, carry on). These are all imperative (command) forms. Further commands are explained in a later unit.

první	1st	třetí	3rd	pátá	5th
druhá	2nd	čtvrtá	4th	šestá	6th

Ordinal numerals are adjectives and therefore agree with the noun. These forms are feminine to agree with ulice and budova.

## 7 How to ask what something costs

The ordinary question is Kolik to stojí? (How much does it cost?). This uses one of those verbs with no obvious direct relationship between the infinitive and the personal forms. The infinitive is stát, and because the present tense forms contain -j-, the past tense keeps the vowel long (see the note on p. 91):



Kolik stál váš nový dům?

*How much did your new house cost?*

Statements of cost are numerical or general, so in addition to actual prices you will often hear utterances like:

Stálo to majlant.

*It cost a fortune.*  
(Lit. It cost Milan!)

Hostina stála fůru peněz.

*The reception cost loads.*  
(Lit. a (wagon)load of money).

To state real costs you now need the rest of the Czech numerals (numbers 1–4, p. 39; numbers 5–10, p. 96).

## 8 More numbers

jedenáct	11	dvacet	20	dvacet jedna	21
dvanáct	12	třicet	30	třicet dva	32
třináct	13	čtyřicet	40	čtyřicet tři	43
čtrnáct	14	padesát	50	padesát čtyři	54
patnáct	15	šedesát	60	šedesát pět	65
šestnáct	16	sedmdesát	70	sedmdesát šest	76
sedmnáct	17	osmdesát	80	osmdesát sedm	87
osmnáct	18	devadesát	90	devadesát osm	98
devatenáct	19				

sto	100	sto jedna	101	tisíc	1,000
dvě stě	200	sto dva	102	dva tisíce	2,000
tři sta	300	dvě stě tři	203	tři tisíce	3,000
čtyři sta	400	dvě stě sedm	207	pět tisíc	5,000
pět set	500	tři sta osm	308	šest tisíc	6,000
šest set	600	tři sta dvacet	320	sto tisíc	100,000
sedm set	700	čtyři sta devadesát šest	496		
osm set	800	pět set sedmdesát čtyři	574		
devět set	900	šest set třicet sedm	637		
milión pět set padesát osm tisíc tři sta sedm			1,558,307		

Use this table for reference. Note how the form for the digits 4, 5, 6 and 9 varies in the teens and tens. Notice too that the words for *hundred* and *thousand* behave like nouns and change their form according to the digit to the left (*tisíc* is masculine). And finally notice how the parts of compound numbers are just listed in sequence: there is no 'and'.

In real life you will sometimes hear two-digit numerals inverted, as in 'four-and-twenty blackbirds'. Expect this in reference to prices: *pěťadvacet korun* (25 crowns), and ages: *je mu pětadvacet* (he's 45).

## 9 How to use *prý*

*Prý* is a useful little particle; it enables the speaker to avoid responsibility for the truth of what he is saying. It can translate as *I've heard, it is said, apparently, allegedly*, or sometimes *he/she says/said*, where the source of the statement is actually known, as in the dialogue.

## 10 *Jsem na to zvědav – 'I wonder ...'*

*Zvědav* is a short adjective, rather like *rád*: it changes only according to gender and number. There are only a handful of surviving short adjectives of this kind in Czech.

The two main facts about them are:

a they only come after the verb *být*, and so only exist in the nominative case;

b they generally have a narrower meaning than their corresponding long forms (*rád* does not have a long form). The long forms behave like any other adjective. Thus, *zvědavý* means *curious, inquisitive* by nature, while *být zvědav* means *to be curious* about one single fact. It is particularly common with 'if'-clauses: *Jsem zvědav, jestli ...*, in which case it translates as *wonder (whether)*.

### Short adjectives

<b>spokojen</b> (s + inst.)	<i>satisfied</i> (with something)
<b>spokojený</b>	<i>contented</i> (by nature)
<b>schopen</b>	(+ gen.) <i>capable of</i>
<b>schopný</b>	<i>able</i>
<b>hodn</b>	(+ gen.) <i>worthy of</i>
<b>hodný</b>	<i>good, kind</i>
<b>laskav</b>	(momentarily) <i>kind</i>
<b>laskavý</b>	<i>kind</i> (by nature)
<b>nemocn</b>	(momentarily) <i>ill</i>
<b>nemocný</b>	<i>ill, sick</i> (long-term)
<b>zdráv</b>	<i>well</i> (having been ill)
<b>zdravý</b>	<i>fit, healthy</i>

<b>hotov</b>	ready (with something)
<b>hotový</b>	ready-made, finished
<b>živ</b>	alive (not dead)
<b>živý</b>	living, lively, vivid
<b>mrtev</b>	dead (suddenly)
<b>mrtvý</b>	dead, deceased

Some occur in special phrases:

**jsem si jist, že ...\*** I'm certain that ... but:

**úspěch je jistý** success is certain

**jistý pan Novotný** a certain Mr Novotný

**byl si vědom, že ...\*** he was aware that ... but:

**vědomá chyba** a conscious mistake

**Živ a zdrav** alive and well, safe and sound

**Bud' zdrav!, Bud'te zdrav(i)!** Goodbye!

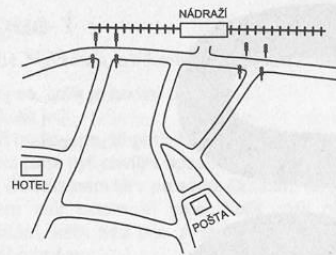
**Bud'te tak laskav a ...\*** Be so kind as to ...

\* Informally you may also hear in these cases the equivalent long forms **jistý**, **vědomý** and **laskavý**.

Others you might meet are **šťasten/šťastný** (*happy*) and **nápomocen/nápomocný** (+ dat.) (*helpful, of assistance to*). Only one, **bos/ý** (*barefoot*), occurs with a verb other than **být**, the obvious candidates being verbs denoting movement on foot: **dívká chodila bosá** (*the girl was walking barefoot*).

## Exercises

- 5 You wish to know how much the following items cost to buy, in the present tense and the past tense. Example: This book. **Kolik stojí/stála tato kniha?**
- |                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a That new suitcase. | f The concert.                    |
| b The watch.         | g The beautiful bunch of flowers. |
| c An hour's work.    | h That tin-opener.                |
| d Two beers.         | i A new roof.                     |
| e Five teas.         | j That English shaver.            |
- 6 Using the map opposite, explain to someone how to get from the hotel to the railway station, and then from the station to the post office. There are at least two possible routes. Then you might be prepared to advise if he decides to do things the other way round!



- 7 You, Mr Smith, are at the theatre box office.
- Ask if they have tickets (**lístek ticket** – note the -e-). You're told '**Ano, máme**'.
  - Ask how much they cost. The cashier says '**Čtyřicet korun**'.
  - Say that's a lot. The cashier replies '**Máme lístky taky za třicet**' – which is more acceptable.
  - Say: I need three please. The cashier says '**Devadesát korun**'.
  - Say: unfortunately I've only got a 500-crown note (**pětistovka**). She replies '**To nevadí**' (*It doesn't matter*).
  - Ask 'Tell me please, where are the toilets?' She says '**Zahněte tady vlevo, třetí dveře**'.
  - You thank her saying 'You're very kind. Thank you'.
  - Then you turn right. Why did the woman you met coming out of the third door giggle?

## i Money

The word for money is **peníze** (m.pl., genitive **peněz**), from a little-used singular word **peníz** (*coin*), related to German *pfennig* and English *penny*. The Czech currency is the **koruna** (*crown*). The smaller unit ( $1/100$  crown) is the **haléř** or **halíř** (m) (*heller*). Besides being known by their value, the various coins and notes are usually identified by single-word names: **padesátník** (*a 50-heller coin*; smaller coins previously in circulation had similar names, e.g. **desetník**, which you might meet in texts appropriate to the period before November 2003 when, with **dvacetník**, it was withdrawn); **dvoukoruna** (*a 2-crown coin*), similarly **pětikoruna** and **desetikoruna**, **stovka** (*a 100-crown note*), similarly **dvoustovka**, **pětistovka** and **tisícovka**. Curiously, for historical reasons going back to the 19th century, ten crowns is known colloquially as **pětka** (*a fiver*)!

# 09

## kolik je hodin? what's the time?

- In this unit you will learn
- how to ask the time
  - how to ask at what time something happens
  - how to say what time it is
  - how to talk about the future

### ► Dialogue 1

Once more the Navrátils are having a domestic discussion.

- Ona** Podívej se, kolik je hodin!  
**On** No, a kolik je?  
**Ona** Jsou tři hodiny, ne, tři pryč. Kde jsi byl tak dlouho?  
**On** Po práci jsme byli chvíli v hospodě. Ivan má narozeniny.  
**Ona** Chvilí! Čekala jsem tě v poledne. Doufám, že jste moc nepili.  
**On** Já jsem měl jenom tři piva. Kolik měli ostatní, nevím. Nepočítám, kolik kdo pije. A stejně platil Ivan, dostal dnes zvláštní odměnu.  
**Ona** Nevím, co tomu bude říkat Maruška. O té odměně věděla a chtěla za to kupovat nový gauč.  
**On** Ivan to dobře ví a peníze na gauč má stranou. Maruška nebude zklamaná. Navíc půjdou dnes večer v osm do vzorkovny nábytku. Ivan zná ředitele a ten sliboval, že ji bude provádět on sám.  
**Ona** Maruška se má! Kdy budeš ty tak spolupracovat v domácnosti?  
**On** Přece každý den myju nádobí!

<b>podívej se, kolik je hodin!</b>	<i>look at the time!</i>
<b>no</b>	<i>hmm, well</i>
<b>jsou tři hodiny</b>	<i>it's three o'clock</i>
<b>tři pryč</b>	<i>gone three</i>
<b>pryč</b>	<i>gone, past, away</i>
<b>po práci</b>	<i>after work</i>
<b>po</b>	<i>(preposition + locative) after</i>
<b>Ivan má narozeniny</b>	<i>it's Ivan's birthday</i>
<b>narozeniny (f pl)</b>	<i>birthday</i>
<b>čekat</b>	<i>to wait, expect</i>
<b>tě</b>	<i>accusative of ty</i>
<b>v poledne</b>	<i>at midday</i>
<b>poledne (n)</b>	<i>midday</i>
<b>doufat</b>	<i>to hope</i>
<b>ostatní</b>	<i>the rest of, the other(s)</i>
<b>nepočítám, kolik kdo pije</b>	<i>I don't count who drinks how much</i>
<b>počítat</b>	<i>to count</i>
<b>a stejně platil Ivan</b>	<i>and anyway, it was Ivan who paid</i>
<b>stejně</b>	<i>anyway</i>
<b>dostal dnes zvláštní odměna</b>	<i>he got a bonus today</i>
<b>zvláštní odměna</b>	<i>bonus</i>
<b>zvláštní</b>	<i>special</i>

	<b>odměna</b>	remuneration, reward
<b>bude říkat</b>	future of říkat	say
	<b>Maruška</b>	familiar affectionate form of Marie
	<b>stranou</b>	to one side
<b>nebude zklamaná</b>	she won't be disappointed	
	<b>zklamaný</b>	disappointed
	<b>navíc</b>	moreover, on top of that; extra
	<b>vzorkovna</b>	showroom (from <b>vzorek</b> sample)
	<b>nábytek</b>	furniture
<b>ředitel</b> (m. animate soft)	manager, director	
<b>ten sliboval, že</b>	he promised that	
	<b>slibovat</b>	to promise
	<b>provádět</b>	to show round
	<b>tak</b>	so, thus, like this/that
	<b>spolupracovat</b>	co-operate, collaborate
<b>přece myju nádobí</b>	but I wash the dishes	
<b>nádobí</b> (singular collective)	the dishes, the washing up	

**podívej se** (2nd person singular imperative) look!  
**chvíli** for a while (accusative, meaning duration, of **chvíle** (f) while, moment)  
**dostat** to get (something), compare **dostat se** get = reach (somewhere)  
**nevím, co tomu bude říkat Maruška** I don't know what Maruška will say about that  
**peníze na gauč má stranou** he's got the money for the couch set aside  
**půjdou** future tense of **jdou**, from **jit** go  
**Maruška se má** (idiom) Maruška doesn't know how lucky she is  
**kdy budeš ty tak spolupracovat** when are you going to co-operate like that

## Notes

### 1 Asking the time

The common formula for this is **Kolik je hodin?** (Lit. *how many is there of hours*). You may also hear: **Kolik máte hodin?** (Lit. *how many do you have of hours*), in practice equivalent to *What time do you make it?*, and exactly the same structure as, say,

**Kolik máte času?** (*How much time have you got?*) or **Kolik máte peněz?** (*How much money do you have?*).

### 2 Telling the time

The answer to the question in 1 above for whole hours consists of the relevant numeral plus the word **hodina** in the appropriate case, with the verb *to be* in the singular for 1, and for 5 upwards, and, in the plural for 2, 3 and 4.

Je jedna hodina.	It's one o'clock.	Je pět hodin.	It's five o'clock.
Jsou dvě hodiny.	It's two o'clock.	Je jedenáct hodin.	It's eleven o'clock.
Jsou tři hodiny.	It's three o'clock.	Je poledne.	It's midday.

With reference not only to timetables, but to the working day generally, Czechs often use the 24-hour clock, so you may hear **Je čtrnáct hodin** (*It's 2 p.m.*), as an alternative to **Jsou dvě hodiny**, which avoids having to specify **ráno** (*in the morning*) or **odpoledne** (*in the afternoon*) – **odpoledne** (n) (*afternoon*).

### 3 Saying/asking 'at what time?'

This is done by simple addition of the preposition **v** at the beginning of the 'o'clock' expressions: **v jednu hodinu** (*at one o'clock*), **ve čtrnáct hodin** (*at 3 p.m.*). **Poledne** (*midday*) also counts as an exact time by the clock, so you can say **v poledne** as well as **ve dvanáct hodin** for *at 12 o'clock*.

In both types of time expressions the word **hodina/hodiny/hodin** can be dropped, as the dialogue shows.

Ne, (jsou) tři pryč. *No, it's gone three.*  
 V osm. *At eight.*

Note how some of the numerals beginning with 'awkward' groups of consonants, e.g. **dvě**, **tři** and **čtyři**, and the teens that begin with them, cause **v** to become **ve**.

### 4 The future

The simplest future tense to form is that of **být** (*to be*). It has its own conjugation:

<b>budu</b>	I will be	<b>budeme</b>	we will be
<b>budeš</b>	you (familiar) will be	<b>budete</b>	you will be
<b>bude</b>	he/she/it will be	<b>budou</b>	they will be

As an example look at the expression in the dialogue:

Maruška **ne**bude zklamaná. *Maruška won't be disappointed.*

As you can see, **budu**, etc. are negated in the ordinary way.

Almost all the verbs you have met so far form their future tense by combining the future of **být** (**budu**, etc.) with the infinitive. Examples from the dialogue are:

Co ... bude říkat Maruška? *What will Maruška say?*  
 bude provádět *he will show round*  
 budeš spolupracovat *you will co-operate*

A small number of verbs you already know are different:

<b>představit (se)</b>	<i>introduce (oneself)</i>
<b>stát se</b>	<i>happen</i>
<b>přepsat</b>	<i>rewrite, overwrite</i>
<b>dostat (se)</b>	<i>get</i>
<b>vzít (si)</b>	<i>take</i>
<b>setkat se</b>	<i>meet</i>
<b>najít</b>	<i>find</i>
<b>řict</b>	<i>say, tell (of which you have only had the imperative řekněte)</i>
<b>podívat se</b>	<i>look (of which you have only seen the singular imperative podívej se)</i>
<b>zemřít</b>	<i>die</i>
<b>zeptat se</b>	<i>ask</i>

Do not worry about these for the time being, but do not try to use them in the future yet. For the rest there is no problem.

Budu psát domů. *I shall write home.*  
 Nebudeme sedět v hospodě dlouho. *We aren't going to sit around in the pub long.*  
 Zítra bude kupovat nové auto. *Tomorrow he'll be buying a new car.*

Forms like **budu** are then 'future auxiliary verbs' when combined with another verb. Unlike the past-tense auxiliaries they are not fixed in the sentence, that is, they are mobile like

the other main elements. For example they may shift to the end to carry emphasis.

Nádobí mýt budu. *I will wash the dishes!*

## 5 The special case of *jít* and *jet* in the future

*Jít* to go (on foot) and *jet* to go (by some means of transport, or said of a vehicle) are two of a small family of verbs called verbs of motion. In passing you have already met *běžet* to run, *nést* to carry and *vést* to lead. The other main ones are *vést* to convey, carry (by vehicle), *letět* to fly, *táhnout* to pull and *hnát* (žene) to chase. Their future forms are different from other verbs in that you merely add **pů-** or **po-** to the present tense.

<i>jdu</i>	<i>I am going</i>	<i>půjdu</i>	<i>I will go</i>
<i>jedu</i>	<i>I am going</i>	<i>pojedu</i>	<i>I will go</i>
<i>běžím</i>	<i>I am running</i>	<i>poběžím</i>	<i>I will run</i>
<i>nesu</i>	<i>I am carrying</i>	<i>ponesu</i>	<i>I will carry</i>
<i>vedu</i>	<i>I am leading</i>	<i>povedu</i>	<i>I will lead</i>
<i>vezu</i>	<i>I am carrying (e.g. by lorry)</i>	<i>povezu</i>	<i>I will carry</i>
<i>letím</i>	<i>I am flying</i>	<i>poletím</i>	<i>I will fly</i>
<i>táhnou</i>	<i>I am pulling</i>	<i>potáhnou</i>	<i>I will pull</i>
<i>ženu</i>	<i>I am chasing</i>	<i>poženu</i>	<i>I will chase</i>

What is special about this narrow group of verbs is that they refer to single events – *here and now* or *there and then* – and there will always be a goal of the action stated or implied; in *Šel na nádraží* (He was going to the station) the goal is given: but in *Šla po ulici* (She was going down the street) she was clearly, or presumably, going somewhere, though the observer need not know where. These verbs of motion are said to be determinate because there is a *terminus*, or end point.

They stand in contrast to a set of indeterminate verbs of motion, so called because there is *no one terminus* involved, or no *terminus* at all. In the first case you might be using the context: 'She goes to school', which implies repeated regular journeys to and fro, which means that school is a *repeated terminus*, but so is home. In the second case you could be talking about random motion, as in 'We spent all day walking in the woods' or 'She chased him everywhere'.



The determinate-indeterminate pairs look like this:

jit	chodit	nést	nosit	letět	létat
jet	jezdit	vést	vodit	táhnout	tahat
běžet	béhat	vézt	vozit	hnát	honit

You can now express the contrast:

Jde do školy. *She is going to school (this minute).*

with:

Chodí do školy. *She goes to school (is of school age).*

and the directionless:

Chodili jsme celý den po lese. *We walked in the woods all day.*

(Here *po* itself implies random direction.)

Similarly:

Tento nakladák veze nábytek do prodejny. *This lorry is taking furniture to the shop (now).*

Toto auto vozí nábytek. *This lorry carries furniture (irrespective of when or where to).*

Hnala ho domů z hospody. *She chased him home from the pub.*

Honila je všude. *She chased them everywhere.*

This pattern continues for the other persons of the verb. There is one example in the dialogue:

půjdou ... do vzorkovny *they will be going to the showroom*

The *pů-/po-* prefix never occurs with either the infinitive or the past tense.

Vedu syna do školy. *I am taking (leading) my son to school.*

Vedl jsem syna do školy. *I took (led) my son to school.*

Nechci vést syna do školy. *I don't want to take my son to school.*

but

Povedu syna do školy. *I will take my son to school.*

The other verbs in this family behave in the same way. There will be more on the verbs of motion later.

## 6 sám – 'self' and 'alone'

This little word has two basic meanings: *-self* (as a semi-emphatic expression), reinforcing the subject:

Bude ji provádět on sám. *He'll show her round himself.*

and *alone, on one's own*:

Sedí v hospodě sám. *He's sitting in the pub alone.*

Like *rád*, or the 1-form of the past tense, it changes form according to the subject of the sentence:

Maruška nemusí mýt nádobí sama. *Maruška doesn't have to wash the dishes herself.*

Česky se učíte sami. *You (readers) are learning Czech on your own.*

Dívky to četly samy. *The girls read it on their own.*

Dítě se obléká samo. *The child gets dressed by itself.*

**oblékat** to dress (someone)    **oblékat se** to get dressed

The forms of *sám* are:

	Singular		Plural
Masculine	sám	Masculine animate	sami
Feminine	sama	Masculine inanimate	samy
Neuter	samo	Feminine	samy
		Neuter	sama

## 7 Waiting and expecting

There are two main uses of *čekat*:

a with a direct object, when it means *expect*:

Čekal jsem syna. *I was expecting my son.*

b with *na* + the accusative, when it means *wait for*:

Čekal jsem na syna. *I was waiting for my son.*

In Unit 5, Dialogue 2, you met it used on its own, also meaning *wait*: *Čekám, čekám, a nic.*

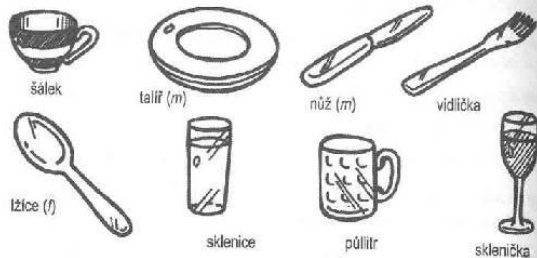
*Expect* may also be expressed by *očekávat*:

Zvláštní odměnu jsme neočekávali.

*We weren't expecting a bonus.*

## 8 Some extra words

At the end of the dialogue, Mr Navrátil claims to wash the dishes every day. Here are some of the items he handles:



## Exercises

- Supply the questions to which the following might be answers:
  - Budu tady v šest.
  - Teď je sedm pryč.
  - Bohužel nevím, nemám hodinky.
  - Koncert začíná v devatenáct hodin.
  - Poledne znamená dvanáct hodin.
  - Mám jenom deset korun.
  - Pojedeme tam večer.
  - Máme jenom dvacet minut.
- Answer the questions along the lines suggested:
  - Kolik je hodin? *It's gone five.*
  - V kolik jste mě čekali? *We were expecting you at eight.*
  - V kolik večeříte? *We don't dine until nine.*
  - Kolik máte v pracovně počítačů? *Only the new one, the old one doesn't work.*
  - V kolik půjdete ráno do práce? *I'm going (future) at seven.*
  - Kde a kdy budete čekat? *At the station at 3 p.m.*
- Reread the dialogue and answer the questions in Czech:
  - Proč se paní Navrátilová zlobí?
  - Proč byl pan Navrátil v hospodě?

- Kolik měl pan Navrátil piv?
  - Kdo platil? A proč?
  - Paní Navrátilová si myslí, že se Maruška bude zlobit. Proč?
  - Kam půjdou večer Ivan a Maruška?
  - Jak pan Navrátil spolupracuje v domácnosti?
  - Kdo myje nádobí u vás doma?
- Convert the following to the future and make sure the resulting sentences make sense (some might not work in the future) (adjust any adverbs as required):
    - Dnes má moje žena narozeniny.
    - Kolik peněz nesete do banky?
    - Ve tři hodiny dávají krásný film.
    - Otec dnes vede naši dceru do školy.
    - Zuzano, kde vidíš moje klíče?
    - Promiňte, paní, čtete tyto noviny? (*noviny* [f pl] *newspaper*)
    - Co si o tom myslí?
    - V Praze nikoho neznáme.
    - Vy se máte!

- Now go through the sentences in 4 above putting them into the past tense.

## Dialogue 2

Messrs Smith and Navrátil are trying to arrange a meeting to go and see Navrátil's workplace.

- Navrátil** Budu na vás čekat v hotelu ve tři. Hodí se vám to?  
**Smith** Nevím, jestli se mi to bude hodit. Manželka si kupuje šaty a neví, kdy bude zpátky. Musím tu na ni čekat.  
**Navrátil** Tak v půl čtvrté? Můžu si mezitím něco číst.  
**Smith** Dobře. V půl čtvrté. Do té doby bude určitě zpátky.  
**Navrátil** To znamená, že můžeme jet asi ve tři čtvrtě na čtyři, pojedeme půl hodiny a na pracovišti budeme ve čtvrt na pět.  
**Smith** Dobře. Budu se těšit.  
**Navrátil** Hodina a půl nám stačí, budete tedy zpátky v hotelu ve tři čtvrtě na šest. Pokud vím, v hotelu se podává večeře v šest, takže času máme dost.  
**Smith** Ano, takhle bude všechno v nejlepšímu pořádku a žena se nebude moct zlobit, že jdu pozdě na večeři.

- Navrátil** Tak na shledanou v půl čtvrtě. Mimochodem, kolik je hodin teď?  
**Smith** Přesně půl jedné. Půjdu si na chvíli odpočinout.

hodí se vám to?	does it suit you?
hodit se vám	to suit (a form of vy)
vás	(accusative of vy)
zpátky	back
čekat na ni	to wait for her
tak v půl čtvrtě	at 3.30 then
mezitím	meanwhile, while I wait (etc.)
do té doby	by then
čtvrt (f)	quarter
půl	half
na pracovišti	in/at (my) workplace
pracoviště (n)	workplace
večeře se podává v šest	dinner is served at six
takže	so (that), therefore
všechno	everything
přesně půl jedné	12.30 exactly

**můžu si mezitím něco číst** I can read something in the meantime  
**můžeme jet asi ve tři čtvrtě na čtyři** we can go about 3.45  
**pojede půl hodiny** it will take us half an hour (Lit. we will be going/travelling for half an hour)  
**hodina a půl nám stačí** an hour and a half is enough for us  
**pokud vím** as far as I know, to the best of my knowledge  
**podávat** to serve; also offer, pass; **podávat se** to be served  
**takhle bude všechno v nejlepším pořádku** that way everything will be perfectly all right  
**v nejlepším pořádku** a strong form of **v pořádku**, (Lit. in the best order)  
**žena se nebude moct zlobit** my wife won't be able to be cross  
**půjdu si na chvíli odpočinout** I'll go and have a rest for a moment

## Notes

### 9 More on telling the time

#### The quarters

While you can always imitate the 'timetable' style of giving the quarter hours such as **tři patnáct** (3.15), you will still need to recognize the ordinary Czech way of telling them.

Crucially, they use the next whole hour as a point of reference. For example, 'quarter past two' and 'quarter to three' are interpreted as 'quarter (on the way) to three', and 'three-quarters (on the way) to three' respectively. The word for quarter in this context is **čtvrt**, plural **čtvrtě** (or **čtvrti**) hence: **čtvrt na tři** (2.15) and **tři čtvrtě na tři** (2.45). Since this na implies, like so many, goal or direction, it is followed by the accusative, but you will only see this in **čtvrt na jednu** (12.15). The word for *hour* never appears in these constructions, but it does explain the feminine accusative form **jednu**, and also why we use **dvě**, not **dva**, in, say, **tři čtvrtě na dvě** (1.45). This type of telling the quarters uses only the 12-hour clock.

#### The half-hour

This too uses the next whole hour as the reference point, but the construction amounts to 'half of the x-th (hour)'. Thus 3.30 is expressed as 'half of the fourth', **půl čtvrtě**. So to say half-past something you need the word **půl** (half) and the ordinal numerals (see Note 11). The only exception is 12.30, which is expressed as 'half of one (not the first)', **půl jedné**. **Jedné** is the feminine genitive singular of **jeden**, i.e. **jeden** behaves like ten.

#### At quarter past, half-past, quarter to

Nothing could be simpler: use **v** as with the whole hours, hence: **ve čtvrt na tři**, **v půl třetí**, **ve tři čtvrtě na tři** (at 2.15, 2.30, 2.45). Note again the expansion of **v** to **ve** before the awkward groups of consonants.

#### Adding information about the time

You have met **pryč** (gone, past). In the second dialogue you have **asi** (about), and **přesně** (exactly). Other words to add are **skoro** and **téměř**, both meaning *almost*.

## 10 Ordinal numerals

The table below shows the ordinal numerals. Note that they are by their nature adjectives: three of them, *1st*, *3rd* and *1,000th*, are 'soft'.

první	1st	dvacátý	20th
druhý	2nd	dvacátý první or	
třetí	3rd	jednadvacátý	21st
čtvrtý	4th	třicátý	30th
pátý	5th	třicátý druhý or	
šestý	6th	dvaatřicátý	32nd
sedmý	7th	čtyřicátý	40th
osmý	8th	padesátý	50th
devátý	9th	padesátý třetí or	
desátý	10th	třiapadesátý	53rd
jedenáctý	11th	šedesátý	60th
dvanáctý	12th	sedmdesátý	70th
třináctý	13th	osmdesátý	80th
čtrnáctý	14th	devadesátý	90th
patnáctý	15th	stý	100th
šestnáctý	16th	dvoustý	200th
sedmnáctý	17th	třístý	300th
osmnáctý	18th	tisící	1,000th
devatenáctý	19th		

*1st* to *5th* are slightly irregular; the others all have the adjectival ending tacked on to the cardinal numerals, or their stem: šest → šestý, sto → stý. The only other change is that if a cardinal ends in -et, it has to change into -át: deset → desátý, třicet → třicátý.

Two-digit ordinals are often inverted, especially when referring to dates: osmašedesátý rok (1968) – remember what you learnt about the inversion of cardinal numerals in Unit 8, Note 8.

## 11 'Until'

*Until* in English is both a preposition and a conjunction (it can stand before nouns or clauses – sentences). In the first case it is translated by *do* + genitive, just as 'by' is. The context is what governs the different translations of say, *do té doby*:

Bude do té doby zpátky.

*She will be back by then*  
(‘by that time’).

Bude do té doby číst.

*She will read until then.*

The conjunction *until* in Czech is **dokud** with **ne-** attached to the verb. It expresses ‘for as long as something is not the case’.

Musím tady čekat, dokud  
nebude zpátky.

Lit. *I must wait here for as long  
as she will not be back.*

You can also expect to meet **dokud** with a positive verb.

Bude ho mít ráda,  
dokud bude žít.

*She will love him as long  
as she lives.*

Notice that **dokud** in either sense is followed by future tense forms in Czech, but the simple present in English.

## Exercises

6 Tell an acquaintance he or she can:

- wait for you at work at 12.15.
- read until you are back at 3.30.
- go to the bank, where you will be waiting, at 9.00.
- expect you at 4.45 exactly.
- co-operate and wash the car at midday.

Ask if he or she:

- can take your son and daughter to school this week at 8.15.
  - can go for you to the shop. It's late – gone 4.30 – and you have no time yourself (bear in mind your own gender).
  - can pass you (*mi to me*) the books from the table.
  - can find Unit 4 on p. 36 and read the first dialogue to you slowly (*pomalú*).
- Now ask if he or she:
- knows what time it is.

7 State the time shown on the following clock-faces:

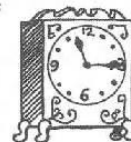
a



b



c





### **i** Pet names

Like the rest of the Slavs, the Czechs use a rich system of pet names within the family or among groups of close friends. Some definitely come from diminutives and are still widely used to address children, but otherwise they merely denote a close, affectionate or simply familiar relationship between speaker and addressee of any age. In the dialogue on p. 115, Ivan's wife is referred to as **Maruška**. Depending on age, the period, local or regional preference or even individual family use, she might also have been called **Mája**, **Madla**, **Máfa**, **Maruš**, **Márinka**.

The commonest male name is **Josef**, which yields **Jožka**, **Jóža**, **Jozíček**, **Pepa**, **Pepi**, **Pepík**, **Pepíček** (a twin set reminiscent of Spanish *José* and *Pepe*). **Jan** (*John*) gives **Jeník**, **Jeníček**, **Jenda**, **Honza**, **Honzík**, **Honzíček**.

Some pet names come from more than one name, so a **Mirek** could have either **Miroslav** or **Vladimír** on his birth certificate, and **Jarka** could be **Jaroslava** or **Jaroslav**, **Jaromíra** or **Jaromír** – it can be masculine or feminine. Some people go through life having adopted one of the (original) pet names as the form of their name by which they are generally known.

# 10

co mám koupit  
rodině?  
what should I buy the family?

#### In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about the person(s) to whom something is given/said
- how to use place expressions in the plural
- how to say *all*



## Dialogue 1

Mr Navrátil is helping Mr Smith, alone in Prague on this trip, to choose presents to take back home to his family.

- Navrátil** Zítra už jedete domů, že?  
**Smith** Bohužel ano. Ale mám velký problém.  
**Navrátil** Ano? Jaký? Mohu vám být nějak nápomocen?  
**Smith** Jestli máte čas, budu velmi rád.  
**Navrátil** Tak co? V čem je ten váš problém?  
**Smith** Nevím, co mám koupit rodině jako dárek z cesty.  
**Navrátil** To znamená – jestli se nemýlím – manželce, synovi a dceři. Nebo musíte něco shánět ještě někomu jinému?  
**Smith** Ano. Otcí a matce, sousedům a snad sekretářce.  
**Navrátil** Ach, tolika lidem! Musí to být?  
**Smith** To víte, většina z nich něco čeká, to už je zvyk. Sousedům a sekretářce chci koupit nějaké drobnosti jako pozornost za všechny jejich laskavosti při přípravě mé cesty.  
**Navrátil** Víím, že vám sekretářka musela třikrát přepsat referát, ale co dělalí souseďé?  
**Smith** Rodina je totiž taky pryč, na dovolené, a souseďé nám zalévají kytky a starají se o psa.

<b>čas</b>	<i>time</i>
<b>v čem je ten váš problém</b>	<i>what is this problem of yours</i>
<b>v čem</b>	<i>in what (v + locative of co)</i>
<b>co mám koupit rodině</b>	<i>what I should buy my family</i>
<b>dárek</b>	<i>present</i>
<b>jestli se nemýlím</b>	<i>if I'm not mistaken</i>
<b>mýlit se</b>	<i>to be mistaken</i>
<b>manželce, synovi, dceři</b>	<i>for your wife, son, daughter</i>
<b>nebo</b>	<i>or</i>
<b>shánět (-i, 3rd pl. -ějí)</b>	<i>to try to get (to chase up)</i>
<b>ještě</b>	<i>here, else, yet</i>
<b>někomu</b>	<i>dative case of někdo</i>
<b>otcí a matce</b>	<i>for my father and mother</i>
<b>sousedům</b>	<i>for the neighbours</i>
<b>sekretářce</b>	<i>for my secretary</i>
<b>tolika lidem!</b>	<i>(for) so many people!</i>
<b>to víte</b>	<i>you know (how it is)</i>
<b>to už je zvyk</b>	<i>it's customary, normal</i>
<b>zvyk</b>	<i>custom, habit</i>
<b>drobnost (gen. -i)</b>	<i>something small</i>

<b>za všechny jejich laskavosti</b>	<i>for all their kindness</i>
<b>laskavost</b>	<i>(gen. -i) kindness</i>
<b>při přípravě</b>	<i>during the preparation</i>
<b>příprava</b>	<i>preparation</i>
<b>třikrát</b>	<i>three times</i>
<b>rodina je totiž taky pryč</b>	<i>the family, you see, is also away</i>
<b>na dovolené</b>	<i>on holiday</i>
<b>zalévat</b>	<i>to water</i>
<b>kytky</b>	<i>flowers, house-plants</i>
<b>starají se o psa</b>	<i>they're looking after the dog</i>
<b>starat se + o (+ the accusative)</b>	<i>to look after</i>

<b>zítra už jedete domů, že</b>	<i>you're going home tomorrow, aren't you</i>
<b>musíte něco shánět ještě někomu?</b>	<i>do you have to find something for anybody else?</i>
<b>musí to být?</b>	<i>does it have to be?, do you have to?</i>
<b>většina z nich něco čeká</b>	<i>most of them expect something</i>
<b>z nich</b>	<i>preposition z + genitive plural of oni they</i>
<b>drobnosti</b>	<i>small things (from drobný small, tiny)</i>
<b>pozornost (gen. -i)</b>	<i>small gift, token (of gratitude, etc.) (from pozorný attentive)</i>
<b>totiž</b>	<i>(an explanatory word that often defies exact translation, but if implied explanation is also apologetic, actually at the start of the sentence will usually serve)</i>
<b>dovolená</b>	<i>holiday (has the form of a feminine adjective)</i>
<b>kytka</b>	<i>colloquial for květina flower and for kytice bouquet</i>

## Notes

### 1 The person to whom you give/say something

Czech dávat, like English *to give* will normally be followed by two expressions, one denoting the thing given (direct object), and one denoting the recipient (indirect object). The direct object is what you have met so far, after numerous verbs, and it has been expressed in Czech by the accusative case. The indirect object is expressed by the dative case. The phrases below are

given in the standard Czech manner using *někomu* (dative of *někdo*) to represent the recipient (or beneficiary) slot, and *něco*, to denote the direct object. (Other new words appearing in this section are in the word list on pp. 130–1.)

kupovat někomu něco	buy something for someone
nabízet někomu něco	offer somebody something
prodávat někomu něco	sell something to someone
doporučovat někomu něco	recommend something to someone
shánět někomu něco	try to get something for someone
přepsat někomu něco	rewrite something for someone
zalévat někomu kytky	water the flowers for someone

Notice how the 'beneficiary' in English may be introduced by *to*, *for* or indeed nothing at all. A beneficiary may be expressed even if the other chunk connected with the verb is not just a direct object in the accusative:

starat se někomu o něco	to look after something for someone
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

An indirect object also accompanies verbs meaning *tell* or *say*:

říkat někomu něco	to tell someone something
-------------------	---------------------------

which includes *doporučovat* (*to recommend*) above and such verbs of speaking as *navrhovat* (*to suggest*).

## 2 Forms of the dative case

Most nouns have dative case endings similar to the locative case endings already learnt (see Unit 3, Note 11 and Unit 7, Note 2), including any changes to final consonants, as in *sekretáře* (*for my secretary*). Compare:

<b>Locative</b>	
Mluví o Petrovi.	He's talking about Peter. (masculine animate)

<b>Dative</b>	
Dává knihu Petrovi.	He's giving the book to Peter.

With compound masculine animate expressions the rule about the two endings *-u* and *-ovi* in the locative (Unit 7, Note 2) also applies in the dative:

Dává knihu profesoru Novákovi.	He's giving the book to Prof. Novák.
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------

<b>Locative</b>	
Mluví o ženě.	He's talking about his wife. (feminine)

<b>Dative</b>	
Kupuje dárek ženě.	He's buying a present for his wife.

<b>Locative</b>	
Mluví o muži.	She's talking about her husband. (masculine 'soft')

<b>Dative</b>	
Posílá dopis muži.	She's sending a letter to her husband.

<b>Locative</b>	
Mluví o pomocnici.	He's talking about his assistant. (feminine 'soft')

<b>Dative</b>	
Dává pomocnici volno.	He's giving his assistant time off.

The dative of several classes of words denoting things or abstracts (masculine inanimates, neuters, *i*-declensions) are not given in this section – they cannot function as beneficiaries.

## 3 Prepositions: dative case

The dative case must be used with certain prepositions. Here are the most common.

*k* (or *ke* before another *k*- and some groups of consonants) *to* (with people), *towards*, *up to* (with people or things), and some idiomatic uses:

Šel ke stolu.	He went towards the table.
Běžel k řezníkovi.	He ran to the butcher's.
To není k jídlu.	That's not fit to eat.

*proti* *against*, *opposite*

Pavel hlasoval proti návrhu.	Paul voted against the motion.
Dům stojí proti kostelu.	The house stands opposite a church.

*kvůli* *for the sake of*, *because of*

Dělala to kvůli rodině.	She did it for the family's sake.
Zavírá okno kvůli větru.	She shuts the window because of the wind.

*díky* *thanks to*

Díky jeho péči pes žije.	Thanks to his care the dog is alive.
--------------------------	--------------------------------------

So now you can tell that the dative of 'hard' masculine inanimate nouns end in -u (e.g. návrhu, větru, kostelu), as does that of 'hard' neuters (jídlu).

Most 'soft' nouns of any gender end in -i in the dative (that is, like their locatives), e.g. the feminines pomocníci, péči; masculine muži; neuter srdci (heart). The same ending applies to i-declension nouns, e.g. kvůli drobnosti (because of a trifle) and, as an exception, to dcera (daughter) (dceři not 'dceře'). Neuters ending in -í, and the feminine paní, are unchanged in the dative, e.g. šel k nádraží (he walked towards the station). 'Soft' masculine animate nouns that are proper names take -ovi, e.g. Dává to Milošovi (He's giving it to Miloš).

#### 4 Individual verbs: dative case

A few verbs have to be followed by the dative case. They include: pomáhat (to help), věřit (to believe), rozumět (to understand), důvěřovat (to trust), radit (to advise), vyhýbat se (to avoid):

Pomáhá <b>mu</b> kupovat dárky.	<i>He helps him to buy presents.</i>
Nerozuměl <b>té</b> větě.	<i>He didn't understand that sentence.</i>
Petr <b>tomu</b> nebude věřit.	<i>Peter won't believe that.</i>
Nedůvěřujeme <b>svému</b> instinktu.	<i>We don't trust our instinct.</i>
Radí <b>našemu</b> sousedovi.	<i>He's advising our neighbour.</i>
Vyhýbáme se <b>velkým</b> městům.	<i>We avoid large cities.</i>

#### 5 Pronouns/adjectives: dative forms

You have already seen (ně)komu from (ně)kdo. Ten, ta, to have the forms tomu, té, tomu.

Similarly náš and váš have našemu (m), naší (f), našemu (n) while co, něco and nic have čemu, něčemu and ničemu. 'Hard' adjectives, and můj, tvůj, svůj, have -ěmu, -é, -ěmu, and 'soft' adjectives have -ímu, -í, -ímu.

kvůli <b>tomu</b> našemu velkému prvnímu problému/autu	<i>because of that first big problem/car of ours</i>
---	--

or

díky <b>té</b> vaší první velké laskavosti	<i>thanks to that first great kindness of yours</i>
---	---

(Notice the relative position in the sequence of 'that' and 'our' or 'your' in the whole phrase.)

#### 6 Dative plural

	Nominative singular	Dative singular	Dative plural
<b>Masculine</b>			
animate 'hard'	student	studentovi	studentům
animate 'soft'	muž	muži	mužům
ending in -a	kolega	kolegovi	kolegům
inanimate 'hard'	stůl	stolu	stolům
inanimate 'soft'	klíč	klíči	klíčům
<b>Neuter</b>			
'hard'	okno	oknu	oknům
'soft'	srdce	srdci	srdcím
Neuters in -í	nádraží	nádraží	nádražím
<b>Feminine</b>			
'hard'	žena	ženě	ženám
'soft'	kuchyně	kuchyni	kuchyním
i-declension	věc	věci	věcem
náš, váš	náš	našemu	} našim
	naše	naší	
	naše	našemu	
ten	ten	tomu	} těm
	ta	té	
	to	tomu	
'Hard' adjective	velký	velkému	} velkým
	velká	velké	
	velké	velkému	
'Soft' adjective	cizí	cizímu	} cizím
	cizí	cizí	
	cizí	cizímu	

The great thing about the dative plural is that it always ends in -m, though the vowel before it may vary. The table above summarizes what has gone before, but adds the plurals.

#### 7 Other datives

For the time being just note the plural dative pronoun forms vám and nám (to/for you and us). The forms mi (to/for me) and mu (to/for him), met occasionally in earlier units and in some of the examples above, are also dative. In the dialogue there is the

form *tolika*, from *tolik* (*so many*); the other expressions in the same family, e.g. *mnoho* (*many*), *několik* (*several*), *kolik* (*how many*) also attract -a in the dative, singular or plural. *Málo* (*little, few*) remains unchanged.

### 8 'If'-clauses

The word *jestli* (or *jestliže*) introduces ordinary *if*-clauses. Referring to the future you may also use *když* or *pokud*:

*Jestli/Když/Pokud budete mít čas, ...*      *If you (will) have time ...*

*Jestli* is also useful to express the *if* that introduces the indirect version of 'yes-no' questions:

**Direct question:** *Je na dovolené? Is he on holiday?*

**Indirect question:** *Nevím, jestli je na dovolené. I don't know if/whether he is on holiday.*

### 9 lidé - 'people'

*Lidé* (*people*) is the plural of *člověk* (*man, person, one*). It is the only masculine i-declension noun, hence its dative *lidem* in the dialogue. Its other peculiarity is to have -é as the nominative plural ending: *slušní lidé* (*decent people*).

### 10 Saying 'times'

Adding the little word *krát* to a numeral expresses *kolikrát?* (*how many times?*) something happens, e.g. *dvakrát* (*twice*), *tříkrát* (*three times*). Writing it separately, then following it with another numeral gives the multiplication sense: *dva krát sedm je čtrnáct* (*2 x 7 is 14*), *a krát b je c* (*a x b = c*).

<b>nabízet</b> (-í, 3rd pl. -ejí)	<i>to offer</i>
<b>prodávat</b>	<i>to sell</i>
<b>dárek (dárku)</b>	<i>present</i>
<b>posílat</b>	<i>to send</i>
<b>pomocnice</b> (f)	<i>assistant</i>
<b>volno</b>	<i>time off</i>
<b>řezník</b>	<i>butcher</i>
<b>jídlo</b>	<i>food, dish, meal</i>
<b>hlasovat</b>	<i>to vote</i>
<b>návrh</b>	<i>suggestion, proposal, motion</i>

<b>kostel</b> (gen. -a)	<i>church</i>
<b>zavírat</b>	<i>to close, to shut</i>
<b>vítr</b>	(gen. <i>větru</i> ) <i>wind</i>
<b>péče</b> (f)	<i>care</i>
<b>věřit</b> (+ dat.)	<i>to believe</i>
<b>důvěřovat</b> (+ dat.)	<i>to trust</i>
<b>radit</b> (+ dat.)	<i>to advise</i>
<b>vyhýbat se</b> (+ dat.)	<i>to avoid</i>
<b>když</b> (+ future)	<i>if</i>
<b>slušný</b>	<i>decent</i>

### Exercises

- Find all the dative forms in the dialogue and try to explain their function.
- Use the reference table (Note 6) and Notes 7 and 9 to supply appropriate forms for the words in brackets:
  - Petr a Jarmila nerozumějí (cizinci).
  - Půjdeme k (Věra) na večeři.
  - Kvůli (vy) jsme ještě nevečeřeli.
  - Starali jsme se (sousedé) o kytky.
  - Doporučujeme (sví studenti) měsíční pobyt v Praze.
  - Kupuje (sekretářka) suvenýr z cesty.
  - (Naši lidé) budou vydávat pasy zítra.
  - Proti (hotel) a proti (nádraží) jsou nové obchody.
  - Díky (krásné počasí) hrajeme dnes venku.
  - Dáváme (studentky) málo cvičení.
  - As a supplementary exercise, translate the resulting sentences to make doubly sure you understand them.
- All sorts of types of phrases involving the dative can come in handy. Put the following into Czech.
  - I have to go to the butcher's/the doctor's/my aunt's/to see the professor.
  - What have you got against the new proposal/English weather/Czech food/those people/his wife/us?
  - It's because of the train/the cars/the customs people/the weather/my watch.
  - It was thanks to our friends/the Slovaks/their neighbours/ your old dog.
  - We couldn't understand Petr/Marie/the old professor/ the first word/his long letter (*didn't understand* will normally suffice here).

- 4 You are in the post office and need to say the following.
- I am sending this letter to a friend in England. How much will it cost?
  - Must I go to another window? (přepážka in this sense)
  - Can you lend (půjčit) this lady a biro, please?
  - I'm trying to get some Czech stamps (známka stamp) for my daughter.
  - I don't understand these regulations (předpis regulation).
  - Do you close at five or at six?
  - Where are the telephones?

## Dialogue 2

The Navrátils are getting ready for some guests.

- On** V kolik hodin tu mají být?  
**Ona** Přece v půl osmé, kolikrát ti to musím říkat?  
**On** A máš pro ně všechno připravené, všechny dárky, všechno jídlo?  
**Ona** Ano, dárky jsou v těch krabiciích u dveří. Studená jídla jsou na talířích v ledničce. A teplá jsou v kastrolech, budu je dodělavat, až budou všichni tady.  
**On** A kdo vlastně přijde?  
**Ona** Smithovi a jejich pražští známí, Novákoví. Zvala jsem taky tvoji sestru, ale ta je někde na cestách.  
**On** To je celá ona!  
**Ona** A stále slibuju pozvání svým bratrům. Petrovi jsem to na dnešek vzkázala, ale nevím, jestli je vůbec v Praze. Ondřejovi jsem telefonovala několikrát, ale marně.  
**On** Škoda! Kdy jsme je všechny viděli naposled?  
**Ona** Loni o Vánocích, myslím.  
**On** Takže nás bude šest nebo sedm. Ještěže nemáme děti! Už takhle se sotva vejdem do tohohle malého bytu!

<b>přece v půl osmé</b>	(at) half past seven of course
<b>máš všechno připravené</b>	have you got everything ready
<b>připravený</b>	ready, prepared
<b>krabice (f)</b>	box
<b>u dveří</b>	by the door
<b>studený</b>	cold
<b>talíř (m)</b>	plate

<b>lednička</b>	fridge
<b>kastrol</b>	(sauce-)pan
<b>dodělavat</b>	finish doing/making
<b>až</b>	when (with future meaning)
<b>všichni</b>	all, everybody
<b>kdo vlastně přijde</b>	just who's coming
<b>přijde</b>	(future tense) will come
<b>jejich pražští známí</b>	their Prague friends
<b>zvát (zve)</b>	to invite
<b>To je celá ona!</b>	That's just like her! She would be!
<b>celý</b>	whole
<b>stále slibuju bratrům</b>	I keep promising my brothers
<b>stále</b>	all the time, constantly
<b>pozdání</b>	invitation
<b>na dnešek</b>	for today
<b>dnešek (gen. dneška)</b>	today (as a noun)
<b>nevím, jestli je vůbec v Praze</b>	I don't know if he's even in Prague
<b>vůbec</b>	at all
<b>několikrát</b>	several times
<b>marně</b>	in vain
<b>škoda!</b>	Pity!
<b>naposled</b>	(for the) last (time)
<b>loni o Vánocích</b>	last Christmas
<b>loni</b>	last year
<b>takže nás bude šest nebo sedm</b>	so there'll be six or seven of us
<b>už takhle</b>	as it is
<b>sotva</b>	hardly
<b>vejít se (vejde se)</b>	to fit

**v kolik hodin tu mají být** (at) what time are they due to be here  
**budu je dodělavat, až budou všichni tady** I'll finish making them when everybody's here  
**známý** friend, acquaintance (behaves like an adjective)  
**je někde na cestách na cestách** (she) is travelling somewhere Lit. on trips  
**vzkázala jsem to Petrovi** I sent a message to Peter about it  
**vzkázat (future vzkáže)** to send a message (about something to somebody)  
**kdy jsme je všechny viděli naposled?** when did we last see them all?  
**o Vánocích** at Christmas (Vánoce [pl] = Christmas)



## Notes

### 11 Plurals after *v* and *na*

The almost universal locative plural ending is *-ch*, but with different vowels before it:

- ách with 'hard' feminine nouns, e.g. *na cestách*
- ech with 'hard' masculine nouns, e.g. *v kastrolech*, also with 'hard' neuters, e.g. *na oknech* (*on the windows*)
- ích with most types of 'soft' nouns, e.g. *v krabicích* (f), *na talířích* (m), also *na polích* (n) (*in the fields*)

The *-ech* ending also occurs with *i*-declension nouns, e.g. *ve věcech* (*in matters*).

Any word ending in *-í*, including 'soft' adjectives, merely add *-ch*:

*na zdejších nádražích*                      *at the local stations*

'Hard' adjectives also just add *-ch* to the basic form:

*na studených talířích*                      *on cold plates*

Points to watch: masculine nouns that end in *-k*, *-h*, *-g* and *-ch* usually take the ending *-ích* and the final consonants change according to the following pattern:

k → c	stolek	na stolcích	on the little tables
h → z	břeh	na březích	on the (river) banks
g → z	dialog	v dialozích	in the dialogues
ch → š	ořech	v ořeších	in the nuts

Neuter nouns ending in *-ko*, e.g. *kolečko* (*little wheel*), usually have *-ách*:

(kufr) *na kolečkách*                      (*suitcase*) *on (little) wheels*

*Náš* and *váš* have *našich* and *vašich* for all genders; similarly *ten* has *těch*.

Remember that some other prepositions also require the locative case, hence *o bratřech* (*about the brothers*), *po hodinách* (*after the lessons*), *po zdech* (*all over the walls*), *při jeho kvalitách* (*given his qualities*). Note too some semi-idiomatic usages, such as *o* with plurals denoting holidays: *o Vánocích* (*at Christmas*), *o Velikonocích* (*at Easter*), *o prázdninách* (*during the holidays*),

or such expressions as *při smyslech* (*smysl = sense*); *alert, conscious, with one's wits about one*.

### 12 Other locative forms

Note the following pronoun forms, remembering that the locative case can never occur without a preposition (see Unit 3, Note 11).

já	o mně	about me	ty	o tobě	about you
					(familiar)
my	o nás	about us	vy	o vás	about you
					(polite or plural)
on	o něm	about him or it	(m)		
ona	o ní	about her or it	(f)	also:	
ono	o něm	about it	(n)	se	o sobě
					about -self

	Plural				
Masculine animate	oni	} o nich	about them		
Masculine inanimate	ony				
Feminine	ony				
Neuter	ona				
co?	o čem?	about what?	kdo?	o kom?	about whom?

### 13 Expressing 'all'

To say *all* with singular mass names, like *cukr* (*sugar*), *mouka* (*flour*), *voda* (*water*), *kakao* (*cocoa*), the words *všechen*, *všechna*, *všchno* can be used. They have endings like *ten*, *ta*, *to* in the nominative and accusative.

(Vypotřebovali) *všechnu mouku.* (*They used up*) *all the flour.*

Where *all the* means *the whole (quantity of)*, use *celý*:

(Vypotřebovali) *celou mouku.* (*They used up*) *all the (the whole bag of) flour.*

According to the context, the same sentence may also mean *They used up a whole bag of flour.*

The nominative and accusative plural forms of *všechen*, etc., always translate as *all* and combine with countables. These plural forms have similar endings to *ten*, etc.

Note, however, that the nominative masculine animate mark *-i* occurs in both halves of the word. The remaining case forms are based on a shorter stem:

	Sing. masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural masc. animate	Masc. inanimate & fem.	Neut.
Nom.	všechn	všechna	všechno	všichni	všechny	všechna
Acc.	všechn	všechnu	všechno	všechny	všechny	všechna
Gen.	všeho	vší	všeho	všech	všech	všechna
Dat.	všem	vší	všem	všem	všem	všechna
Loc. (o)	všem	vší	všem	všem	všem	všechna

The neuter plural forms (*všechna*) are limited to written or very high-style spoken Czech. You will regularly hear them replaced by *všechny*.

#### 14 'Everything' and 'everybody'

The most common use of the neuter singular form *všechno* is as the general pronoun *everything*, while the plural form *všichni* means *everybody*, or *we/they/you all*.

Všichni jíme všechno. *We all eat everything.*

#### 15 *známí* and *přátelé* – 'friends' and 'acquaintances'

Any person you know is a *známý* (feminine = *známá*, plural = *známí*), a word which takes the forms of an adjective. It is a much more common word than the English *acquaintance*, and so is sensibly translated as *friend*, but it does not convey intimate friendship the way *přítel*, *přítelkyně* do. English *friend* therefore stands somewhere between the two.

Máme v Praze přátele. *We have some good friends in Prague.*

Máme v Praze známé. *We know some people in Prague.*

#### 16 Saying 'today'

So far you have used *dnes*, the adverb for *today*. As soon as this word begins to function as a noun, which it does if it has to follow a preposition, you need to replace *dnes* with *dnešek*. Prepositions require individual cases and nouns can show cases, adverbs cannot. Thus *do* + genitive gives *do dneška* (*by/until today*), also *na* + accusative gives: *na dnešek* (*for today*). Note these other 'conversions':

včera (*yesterday*)  
zítra (*tomorrow*)

včerejšek (gen. *včerejška*)  
zítrěk (gen. *zítrka*)

#### 17 Useful words

a *stále* means *all the time*, but, in combination with the verb, it is equivalent to *keep -ing*.

Stále slibuju. *I keep promising.*  
Stále padá. *He/She/It keeps falling.*

b *vůbec* is easy to handle after a negative: it always means *at all*.

Nemám vůbec peníze. *I've no money at all.*

In positive questions it may also be *at all*.

Budou tam vůbec? *Are they going to be there at all?*

Or *ever actually*.

Byli jste vůbec v Praze? *Have you ever actually been to Prague (with the subtext: I somehow doubt it)?*

c *přece* is often *surely*.

To je přece Petr! *Surely/Why, that's Peter!*

The same sentence may, however, be a protestation at someone's ignorance, stupidity, forgetfulness, etc.: *It's Peter, silly!* Compare this with the rebuke contained in Mrs Navrátilová's first utterance in the dialogue.

d *takže* means *so* when someone is expressing a consequence of some foregoing facts.

Má rýmu a kašel, takže ven nčjde. *He's got a cold and a cough, so he's not going out.*

Look again at how it occurs in the dialogue.

e *celý* used with personal pronouns.

To je celá ona. *That's just like her!*  
*That's her all over.*

You may occasionally direct such gentle criticism towards yourself.

To jsem celý já! *That's me all over!!*  
*Silly me!*

This shows how the verb must change according to the person concerned.

stolek	small table
břeh	bank, shore
ořech	(wal)nut (nut itself and tree)
zeď (f gen. zdi)	wall
kvalita	quality
Velikonoce (pl)	Easter
prázdniny (pl)	holidays
smysl	sense
kakao	cocoa
mouka	flour
vypotřebovat	to use up
rýma	a cold
kašel (gen. kašle, i.e. 'soft')	cough
při (+ loc.)	at, by, with, during

## Exercises

5 Respond as suggested to the following enquiries:

- Kdy budete v Praze? (At Christmas.)
- Jak poncsete ty věci domů? (In these suitcases.)
- O kom mluvíte? (We're talking about our neighbours.)
- Proč jste rádi, že děti už nejsou doma? (Because there's little room in these small flats.)
- Kde je stávka? (*strike*) (At all the stations.)
- Kdy jste byl naposled v Londýně? (Last year during the holidays.)
- Kde je Praha? (In Bohemia.)
- O čem mluvili o přestávce (*during the break*)? (About Prague pubs.)
- Kdy máte narozeniny? (After Easter.)
- O kom jste mluvili včera? (About the Czechs and Slovaks and their problems.)

▶ 6 Replace the words in round brackets by forms appropriate to the context:

Včera o (Petr) mluvili na (konference) velmi pěkně. Všichni říkali, že když byl v (Praha) naposled, česky neuměl, ale teď mluví skoro bez (chyby). Trochu přehánějí, ale pro (většina)

(příležitosti) to stačí. Umí v (hospody) objednávat (pivo), v (banka) vyměňovat (peníze) a na (ulice) se ptát na (cesta). Když něco nezná, používá (anglická) nebo (německá slova). Kdekoli je na (cesty), všude se nakonec domluví, je dost talentovaný a od (zítrěk) se bude učit dokonce slovensky.

přehánět	to exaggerate	používat	to use
(-í, 3rd pl. -ějí)		kdekoli	wherever
většina	the majority	nakonec	in the end
příležitost	occasion	talentovaný	talented
objednávat	to order	dokonce	even
vyměňovat	to exchange		

▶ 7 Now check your answers to 6, not by looking at the back of the book, but by listening to the recording (if you have it). This should help you to verify that you are hearing the differences between long and short vowels.

## i Did you know ...

England and Bohemia have twice been linked dynastically. In 1382, Richard II married Anne of Bohemia, granddaughter of the blind King of Bohemia, John of Luxembourg (died 1346 at the Battle of Crecy fighting against Edward II and the Black Prince), daughter of King Charles IV (founder of Prague University) and sister of Wenceslas (Václav) IV. She introduced riding side-saddle for ladies and various other new fashions to England, and she was a patron of Geoffrey Chaucer.

Much later, in 1614, James I's daughter Elizabeth married Frederick of the Palatinate, who, in 1619, briefly became King of Bohemia, until driven out by the Habsburgs in 1620 after the Battle of the White Mountain (**Bílá hora** in Prague), early in the Thirty-Years' War. This event is sometimes compared for its significance in Czech history to the Battle of Hastings. English pubs formerly called *The Queen of Bohemia* referred to this Elizabeth, also known as the Winter Queen. Her husband Frederick gave rise to several pubs called *The King of Bohemia*, of which one survives on Hampstead High Street in London.

Did you also know ... that the ancestry of the presidents Bush has been traced back to the earliest Bohemian prince or duke, Bořivoj I (see <http://www.genea.cz/ruzne.htm>)?

# 11

**ve čtvrtek k nám  
přijde návštěva**  
we've got visitors coming on  
Thursday

#### In this unit you will learn

- how to say more about future events
- how to compensate for Czech's simple tense system
- how to say the days of the week
- how to say the months of the year
- how to form dates

## Dialogue 1

Mr Navrátil is helping Mr Smith, back in Prague, to plan the week ahead.

**Navrátil** Tak zítra je pondělí. Co budete dělat celý den?  
**Smith** Nejdřív půjdu do banky a vyměním si peníze.

**Navrátil** A potom?

**Smith** Myslím, že se podívám do nové galerie, o které jsem slyšel. To mi bude stačit na celý den. Někde se tam taky najím.

**Navrátil** Chtěl jsem vás jeden den vzít na výlet, ale v úterý musím dát auto do opravy, půjde to tedy až v pátek, až ho dostanu zpátky. Ale co v úterý místo toho?

**Smith** Na úterý i na středu mám program. Známi mi totiž nabídli, že mě vezmou někam do hor.

**Navrátil** A ve čtvrtek k nám přijde návštěva, které se musím věnovat.

**Smith** To přece nevádí. Já se o sebe postarám. Vymyslím si vlastní program a v pátek vám řeknu, jaký byl.

**Navrátil** Dobře. Tak v pátek vycestujeme někam spolu. Ale kam?  
**Smith** Můžeme na Slapy? Slyšel jsem, že je tam hezky.

**Navrátil** Samozřejmě, když chcete. Naši známí tam mají novou restauraci. Zkusíme ji tedy. Můžeme u nich zůstat přes sobotu a neděli. Co vy na to?

**Smith** Jsem pro! Takhle si důkladně před návratem odpočinu.

<b>pondělí</b>	<i>Monday</i>
<b>galerie (f)</b>	<i>(art) gallery</i>
<b>najím se (from najíst se)</b>	<i>I'll eat, have a meal</i>
<b>výlet</b>	<i>trip, day out</i>
<b>(v) úterý</b>	<i>(on) Tuesday</i>
<b>dát auto do opravy</b>	<i>to take the car to the garage</i>
<b>dát (dá)</b>	<i>to give, to put</i>
<b>opravna</b>	<i>repair shop</i>
<b>půjde to</b>	<i>it will go, work (and similar)</i>
<b>pátek</b>	<i>Friday</i>
<b>až ho dostanu zpátky</b>	<i>when I get it back</i>
<b>místo toho</b>	<i>instead (of that)</i>
<b>místo (+ genitive)</b>	<i>instead of</i>
<b>středa</b>	<i>Wednesday</i>
<b>vezmou mě do hor</b>	<i>they'll take me to the mountains</i>
<b>vzít (vezme)</b>	<i>to take</i>
<b>hora</b>	<i>mountain</i>

(ve) čtvrtek	(on) Thursday
věnovat (se)	to devote (oneself)
to přeče nevadí	but that doesn't matter
vadit (+ dative)	to matter; to be a nuisance to
já se o sebe postarám	I'll look after myself
vymyslet	to think up
řeknu vám, jaký byl	I'll tell you what it was (like)
řict (řekne)	to say, tell
vycestujeme (from vycestovat)	we'll go off, travel out
spolu	together
je tam hezky	it's nice there
samozřejmě	of course
když chcete	if you wish, if you like
zkusíme (from zkusit)	we shall/can try
zůstat (zůstane)	to stay
přes (+ acc.)	over, across
sobota	Saturday
neděle	Sunday; week
co vy na to?	what do you say to that?
jsem pro	I'm in favour
důkladně	thoroughly
před návratem	before (my) return
návrat	return

vyměním si (from vyměnit si)	peníze	I'll change some money
to mi bude stačit na celý den		that will give me enough to do
for the whole day		
půjde to tedy až v pátek		so it will have to wait until (on)
Friday		
na úterý a na středu mám program		I've got things to do for
Tuesday and Wednesday		
nabídlí past tense of nabídnout (nabídne)		to offer
sebe form of se (used after prepositions)		
vymyslím si program		I'll think of a programme (for myself)
Můžeme na Slapy?		Can we go to Slapy? (a weekend and
holiday area by a dam south of Prague)		
můžeme zůstat přes sobotu a neděli		we can stay over the
weekend		
odpočinu si (from odpočinout si)		I'll (have a) rest

## Notes

### 1 More about expressing future events

In previous units you were advised against trying to use certain verbs in the future because they were not combinable with *буду*, etc., the future auxiliaries. In Dialogue 1 in this unit you have a number of verb forms which are clearly indicated as having future meaning, without any auxiliary: *vyměním si*, *podívám se*, *najím se*, *dám*, *dostanu*, *vezmou*, *přijde*, *postarám se*, *udělám*, *řeknu*, *vycestujeme*, *zkusíme*, *odpočinu si*. These are all verbs in the perfective aspect. The difference between this and the imperfective which you have used up to now is explained below.

### 2 What is 'aspect'?

As, say, a house, has different aspects according to how you view it, verbal aspect means the way in which you view the particular act or action. You may view it as ongoing, proceeding before your eyes, or as having been in progress at some time in the past, or due to proceed in the future. This is one use of the imperfective aspect ('imperfective' for short).

Zpívá.	<i>He is singing.</i>
Zpíval.	<i>He was singing.</i>
Bude zpívat.	<i>He will (be) sing(ing).</i>

The *-ing* form in English is a certain guarantee that the Czech equivalent will be imperfective. However, an action can be seen as ongoing, having duration, even if simple English tense forms are used, for example:

Zpíval při práci.	<i>He sang as he worked.</i>
-------------------	------------------------------

The imperfective is also used if an action is expressed as being habitual, or regularly repeated.

Zpívá ve vaně.	<i>He sings in the bath.</i>
Zpíval ve vaně.	<i>He used to sing in the bath.</i>

And it is used if you are speaking merely about the action *per se*, or someone's ability to perform it.

Zpíváte?	<i>Do (or Can) you sing?</i>
Zpívala krásně.	<i>She sang beautifully.</i>

So one form has various functions, and it is the context alone that determines the equivalents in English: *zpíval* is merely the



past tense of *zpívat*, but in context may be *he sang, he was singing, he could sing, he used to sing*, and some other possibilities.

Using *zpívat*, you have already seen how a verb denotes an activity more than an act. However, acts may also be ongoing, uncompleted, or indeed repeated processes.

Dělá krabici.	<i>He is making a box.</i>
Dělá chyby.	<i>He makes mistakes.</i>
Dělal krabici.	<i>He was making a box.</i>
Dělal chyby.	<i>He made/kept making/used to make mistakes.</i>

It is with acts, as opposed to activities, that the difference from the perfective is clear. With the perfective an act is seen as complete – often as a single or sudden event, and having had to be completed before other acts could follow.

Udělá krabici zítra.	<i>He'll make the box tomorrow.</i>
Udělal krabici a pak do ní dal knihy.	<i>He made the box then put the books in it.</i>

Very commonly an activity or ongoing process (imperfective) is interrupted by a different (perfective) event.

Večřeli (impf.), když zazvonil (přv.) telefon.	<i>They were having dinner when the phone rang.</i>
--	---

According to context, the events could be reversed.

Když zazvonil (přv.) telefon, spali (impfv.).	<i>When the phone rang they were asleep.</i>
---	--

It follows from all this that things going on simultaneously are expressed in the imperfective (various adverbs and conjunctions will often serve as indicators).

Když zalévala kytky, zpívala.	<i>As (when) she watered the plants she sang.</i>
-------------------------------	---

Sequences of consecutive events, however, are likely to be in the perfective.

Ráno vstal, umyl se, vyčistil si zuby, oblékl se a nasnídal se.	<i>In the morning, he got up, washed, cleaned his teeth, got dressed and had his breakfast.</i>
---	---

If, however, the whole sequence is habitual, the imperfective is used:

Vstával v osm, myl se, čistil si zuby ...	<i>He would get up at eight, wash, clean his teeth ...</i>
---	--

It also follows, from the above, that you would not normally use the perfective in the present tense. If an act is viewed as completed, either it has to have been completed (prior to the present), or be predicted to be going to be completed (later than the present).

The two most common Czech verbs, *být* and *mít*, are, and only can be, imperfective. You may need to read this section again to grasp the principles of how the aspects are used.

### 3 How are aspects formed?

Let's start with one of the basic verbs with which you are already familiar – *dělat* = *to make*. This is a typical example of a primary imperfective. It forms its perfective by adding the prefix *u-*.

	Imperfective	Perfective
Infinitive	dělat	udělat
Present	dělá	—
Past	dělal	udělal
Future	bude dělat	udělá

The conjugated form of a perfective verb is the perfective future. You cannot combine *bude*, etc. with a perfective infinitive.

There is no single way of forming perfectives, and each new verb should be learnt with its counterpart. The convention is to learn the imperfective first, followed by the perfective, usually in the form '*dělat/udělat* (*to make*)'; this is called an aspectual pair. You may also see '*dělat/u-*'. The imperfective is the more general in meaning so dictionaries tend to list it first and to include the perfective somewhere else in the entry, or separately.

Examples using other verbs you have met:

čist/přečist	pít/vypít	mýlit se/zmýlit se
mýt/umýt	psát/napsat	dívat se/podívat se

None of these require a change of conjugation. If you can say 'I am reading the book' (čtu) you can predict 'I shall (have) read the book' (přečtu).

A perfectivizing prefix, e.g. pře-, vy-, z-, that goes with a particular verb may not be the only one to combine with that verb. So while psát uses na- as its perfective prefix, and dělat uses u-, there are also verbs upsat to subscribe (shares) and nadělat to make a lot of something. The verbs psát and dělat have many compounds. Here are some of them.

vypsat	to write out	vydělat	to earn
přepsat	to rewrite	předělat	to redo
připsat	to add (writing)	přidělat	to make more (e.g. cakes)
popsat	to describe	podělat	to foul (something up) (vulg.)

These verbs are all perfective – they represent combinations of an imperfective verb and a prefix (even if this is not the 'merely perfectivizing' prefix). These other prefixes have added considerably to the meaning. This leaves the problem of conveying that changed meaning for the purpose of imperfective contexts – secondary imperfective verbs. Here the common method is to add an ending (suffixation), and it is here that a change of conjugation may take place (with compounds of psát it does, though not with compounds of dělat). The secondary imperfectives of the verbs in the last list are:

vypisovat	vydělávat
přepisovat	předělávat
připisovat	přidělávat
popisovat	podělávat (vulg.)

For learning purposes you would meet these as, say:

vypisovat/vypsat (to write out)    předělávat/předčlat (to redo)

Verbs in the i-conjugation show typically two ways of forming their secondary imperfectives. One can be illustrated from myslet:

myslet/pomyslet (to think)  
vymýšlet/vymyslet (to think up/out, invent)

This type usually shows:

- a the same number of syllables in both aspects;
- b different length or quality in the middle syllable (here ý and y);
- c and usually a different consonant or consonants at the end of the stem (here šl and sl).

Imperfectives of this kind always have -ejí/-ějí in the they form, as opposed to -í, the normal 3rd person plural ending:

Něco vymyslí.	He'll think of something.
Něco vymyslí.	They'll think of something.
Něco vymýšlí.	He's trying to think something up.
Něco vymýšlejí.	They're trying to think something up.

The other main pattern with i-class verbs may be illustrated by měnit/změnit (to change) and its compound vyměňovat/vyměnit to exchange (money). Here too there is a change of conjugation: just remember that infinitives ending in -ovat conjugate -uje.

Kde můžu vyměnit tyto libry?	Where can I change these pounds?
Vyměňuje peníze jenom v bance.	He changes money only in the bank.

The aspectual pairings of some verbs are not fully predictable. However, if you make it a principle to learn both members together, along with any peculiarities of either member, they should not cause much bother. Here are some of the verbs, most of which you have already met, where you must learn the aspectual pairs:

pomáhat/pomocť	to help
říkat/řít (řekne, past řekl)	to say, tell
chápat/pochopit	to grasp, understand
kupovat/koupit	to buy
dávat/dát	to give; to put
nabízet/nabídnout	to offer
navštěvovat/navštívit	to visit, attend
brát (bere)/vzít (vezme, past vzal)	to take
krást (krade, past kradl)/ukrást (ukradne, past ukradl)	to steal
klást (klade, past kladl)/položít	to put down, to lay
překládat/přeložit	to translate
odpočívát/odpočinout si	to have a rest

Any verbs that you meet from now on will have their aspectual pairings indicated – where relevant. Many will have no second member, since if they denote states or positions or activities, as opposed to acts, they cannot be perfectivized: you can merely

stop performing an activity, or cease being in such and such a state – you cannot complete it in the way an act or action can be completed.

Now go back over these paragraphs again, just to make sure you understand the principles behind the formation of aspect pairs.

#### 4 Days

<b>pondělí</b>	Monday	<b>pátek</b>	Friday
<b>úterý</b>	Tuesday	<b>sobota</b>	Saturday
<b>středa</b>	Wednesday	<b>neděle</b>	Sunday
<b>čtvrtek</b>	Thursday		

Note a peculiarity of **pondělí** (*Monday*) and **úterý** (*Tuesday*): sometimes the names of the days follow prepositions, e.g. **do středy** (*by/until Wednesday*), but **pondělí** and **úterý** are replaced by the words **pondělek** and **úterek**.

do pondělka *by/until Monday*  
od úterka *from/since Tuesday*

You saw something similar with the noun forms of **zítra** and **dnes** in a previous unit. Note, too, that all the 'day' words ending in **-ek** have the genitive in **-ka** (except **pátek** which has the normal inanimate genitive ending **-u** – **do pátku** = *by Friday*).

To say *on* such and such a day, use **v** with the accusative:

v pondělí/sobotu *on Monday/Saturday*

To say *for* such a day (or other period of time) in the sense of intending to spend it, use **na** and the accusative:

Jedeme tam na sobotu/  
na týden/na dva dny. *We're going there for Saturday/  
a week/two days.*

#### 5 Eating and drinking: verbs

a Learn how to conjugate **jíst**. It is partially irregular (though very like **vědět** – see Unit 5, p. 55).

<b>Jím</b>	<i>I eat</i>	<b>Jíme</b>	<i>we eat</i>
<b>jíš</b>	<i>you eat</i> (i.e. singular, familiar)	<b>jíte</b>	<i>you eat</i> (i.e. plural or non-familiar)
<b>jí</b>	<i>he/she/it eats</i>	<b>jíjí</b>	<i>they eat</i>
Past tense: <b>jedl</b>			

b You need to discriminate between just eating or drinking and eating or drinking something, since each view of the action is perfectivized in different ways. Compare:

Pije mléko.	<i>He is drinking milk.</i>
Vypil mléko.	<i>He drank the milk.</i>
Pil.	<i>He was drinking.</i>
Napil se.	<i>He had a drink.</i>
Napil se mléka (gen.!).	<i>He had a drink of milk.</i>

Similarly

Jedl brambory.	<i>He was eating potatoes.</i>
Snědl brambory.	<i>He ate the potatoes.</i>
Jedl.	<i>He was eating.</i>
Najedl se.	<i>He had something to eat.</i>
Najedl se brambor (gen.!).	<i>He ate his fill of potatoes.</i>

c The verbs denoting meals also perfectivize by **na-** (+ se).

<b>snídat/nasnídat se</b>	<i>to have breakfast</i>
<b>obědvat/naobědvat se</b>	<i>to have lunch</i>
<b>večeřet/navečeřet se</b>	<i>to dine/eat evening meal</i>
<b>svačtit/nasvačtit se</b>	<i>to have a snack</i>

d Human eating is expressed by **jíst**, etc. For animals use **žrát/scžrat** (*něco*) or **žrát/nažrat se**. Like many animal words, the latter can be applied to humans, but are necessarily insulting or jocular!

#### 6 Až and když: two words for 'when'

You have already met **až** as a word giving intensity to prepositions. Combined with **v** it means *as late as* or *not until*. Another **až** stands at the beginning of clauses and is followed by the future tense and means *when*, or sometimes *until*:

Až zavolá, pozveme ho na večeři.	<i>When he rings we'll invite him to dinner.</i>
Počkám tady, až zavolá.	<i>I'll wait here until he phones.</i>

Both types of **až** occur in the Dialogue.

Do not confuse **až** with **když**. **Když** also means *when*, but only in the past tense and present; with the future tense **když** means *if*.

Když jedli, zazvonil telefon.	<i>When/While they were eating, the phone rang.</i>
Když je ve vaně, zpívá.	<i>When he's in the bath he sings.</i>
Když přijde, dám mu váš vzkaz.	<i>If he comes I'll give him your message.</i>

## Exercises

- Find all the verbs in this unit and Unit 10 and begin to make up aspect pairs using the Vocabulary at the back of the book. (It is a good idea to do this for all the verbs you now know.)
- The following are a set of predictions. Reformulate them as events that have already happened. For example: **Budeme sedět v hospodě** becomes **Seděli jsme v hospodě**. Do not try to change the aspect of the verbs. And think hard about word order!
  - Nabídnou nám výlet do hor.
  - Kde vyměníte peníze?
  - Bude vám to vadit?
  - Nejdřív se podíváme do galerie, potom se najíme.
  - Celý den nebudu dělat nic.
  - Bude pršet.
  - Marie udělá strašnou chybu, když si ho vezme. (vzít si někoho = to marry someone) (Appreciate the change of meaning in this one.)
  - Budou celý den kupovat suvenýry.
  - V neděli pojedeme domů.
  - Nekoupíte dceři něco k narozeninám?
- Fill the gaps with appropriate verbs according to the sense; you may need to refer to the Glossary:
  - Normálně vydělávám 600 dolarů, ale minulý měsíc \_\_\_\_\_ 675. (as an extra, write out the numerals in full!)
  - Celý den kupovali nový gauč, ale nakonec ho ne\_\_\_\_\_.
  - Mluví česky velmi dobře, ale včera \_\_\_\_\_ strašnou chybu.
  - Budeme poslouchat rozhlas. Snad \_\_\_\_\_ nějakou hezkou hudbu.
  - Všem rád pomáhal, ale Petrovi \_\_\_\_\_ nechtěl.
  - Až \_\_\_\_\_, umyju po vás nádobí.
  - Jsem strašně unavený, po večeři \_\_\_\_\_ půjdu od\_\_\_\_\_t.
  - Pane Nováku, ř\_\_\_\_\_te mi, kolik je hodin?
  - Dlouho jsem nechápal, co chce, až jsem konečně \_\_\_\_\_.
  - N\_\_\_\_\_ v sedm, protože divadlo začíná v osm.
- You are looking ahead. Tell someone what you plan to do this week (using the guidelines):
 

(Monday) you'll go to the bank where you'll change some pounds, post office where you'll buy stamps, railway station

to collect (just say **pro for**) your luggage, and you'll spend the afternoon resting.

(Tuesday) you'll visit friends in Benešov; they'll bring you back at 7.30.

(Wednesday) you'll change your hotel, you'll try the one at the end (na konci) of the street; you don't like your room, and at the other hotel you'll have a nice view of the castle. You must not forget (zapomínat/zapomenout) to return (vracet/vrátit) the key. In the afternoon you will be buying books, but you don't know whether you'll get what you want. You won't have anything to do in the evening.

(Thursday) in the morning you'll be at the post office again, you'll wait there until your wife phones – she's in Cyprus on holiday, so you cannot call. In the afternoon you want to try at least three good Prague pubs, and in the evening you'll have to rest again.

(Friday) if you haven't got a hangover (kocovina) you will accept (přijímat/přijmout [přijme]) Mr Novák's invitation for the weekend and try life in the Bohemian countryside (na českém venkově). He has a country cottage. You won't be resting though – you and he will be clearing up (use čistit) the garden after the winter.

(Sunday night) you'll come back (vracet se/vrátit se) to Prague; you want to get a good night's sleep, because on Monday morning you're flying home.

## Dialogue 2

Mr Smith has more or less got to grips with the days of the week. He's been having trouble with the months and asks his friend, Mr Navrátil, for help.

**Smith** Příteli, vysvětlíte mi, jak si mám zapamatovat názvy měsíců?

**Navrátil** Samozřejmě. Tak v lednu je tu ještě led. V únoru led taje a příroda se vynořuje zpod sněhu. Potom vidíme určitý logický postup, pokud znáte přírodopis: v březnu pučí bříza, v dubnu duby a v květnu už kvete leccos. Červen a červenec vám moc vysvětlit nedovedu, zato v srpnu český člověk asi vytahoval srp a kosil obilí. V říjnu probíhá říje jelenů, která začíná vlastně o měsíc dřív, v září. 'Listopad' se snad vysvětlí sám – nadá listí a

Smith

v prosinci jsou Vánoce – slovo prosinec sice umím vysvětlit, ale je to moc složité a málo užitečné!  
Tak děkuju. Mohl jsem si ušetřit čas: leden a listopad jsou jasné, kvůli ostatním se musím jenom naučit ještě další zbytečná slova.

vysvětlovat/vysvětlit	to explain
pamatovat si/za-	to remember, memorize
leden (gen. ledna)	January
led	ice
únor (gen. února)	February
tát/roztát (taje)	to melt
příroda	nature
vynořovat se/vynořit se	emerge
zpod preposition + gen.	from under
sníh (gen. sněhu)	snow
určitý	a certain
logický postup	logical progression
postup	progression, procedure
přirodopis	natural history, biology
březen (gen. března)	March
pučet (-i)	to burst, come into bud
bříza	birch
duben (gen. dubna)	April
dub	oak
květen (gen. května)	May
kvést/vykvést (kvete, past kvěl)	to bloom
leccos	all manner of things
červen (gen. června)	June
červenec	July
nedovedu vám vysvětlit	I can't explain to you
srpen (gen. srpna)	August
así	I expect, probably, perhaps
vytahovat/vytáhnout	to pull out, get out
srp	sickle
kosit	to scythe
obilí	corn
říjen (gen. října)	October
říje (ř)	the rutting season (!)
jelen	stag
o měsíc dřív	a month earlier
dřív	sooner, earlier
září	September

listopad	November
snad	perhaps, probably
padat/spadnout	to fall
listí	leaves, foliage
prosinec	December
složité	complicated
užitečný	useful
šetřit/u-	to save, spare
jasný	bright, plain, obvious
učit se/na-	to learn
další (sg.)	another, (pl) other, more
zbytečný	useless, superfluous

dovést (only perfective, irrespective of tense) *be able, capable*  
o preposition + accusative *by (so much – the measure of difference in comparative expressions)*  
'listopad' se snad vysvětlí sám *'listopad' is perhaps self-explanatory*

Like Mr Smith you may be selective about the words you take the trouble to learn.

## Notes

### 7 The months

LEDEN	ÚNOR	BREZEN	ČERVENEC	SRPEN	ZÁŘÍ
P 2 9 18 23 30	8 13 20 27	6 13 20 27	P 3 10 17 24 31	7 14 21 28	4 11 18 25
Ú 3 10 17 24 31	7 14 21 28	7 14 21 28	Ú 4 11 18 25	1 8 15 22 29	5 12 19 26
S 4 11 18 25	1 8 15 22	1 8 15 22 29	S 5 12 19 26	2 9 16 23 30	6 13 20 27
Č 5 12 19 26	2 9 16 23	2 9 16 23 30	Č 6 13 20 27	3 10 17 24 31	7 14 21 28
P 6 13 20 27	3 10 17 24	3 10 17 24 31	P 7 14 21 28	4 11 18 25	1 8 15 22 29
S 7 14 21 28	4 11 18 25	4 11 18 25	S 1 8 15 22 29	5 12 19 26	2 9 16 23 30
N 1 8 15 22 29	5 12 19 26	5 12 19 26	N 2 9 16 23 30	6 13 20 27	3 10 17 24

DUBEN	KVĚTEN	ČERVEN	ŘÍJEN	LISTOPAD	PROSINEC
P 3 10 17 24	1 8 15 22 29	5 12 19 26	P 2 9 16 23 30	6 13 20 27	4 11 18 25
Ú 4 11 18 25	2 9 16 23 30	6 13 20 27	Ú 3 10 17 24 31	7 14 21 28	5 12 19 26
S 5 12 19 26	3 10 17 24 31	7 14 21 28	S 4 11 18 25	1 8 15 22 29	6 13 20 27
Č 6 13 20 27	4 11 18 25	1 8 15 22 29	Č 5 12 19 26	2 9 16 23 30	7 14 21 28
P 7 14 21 28	5 12 19 26	2 9 16 23 30	P 6 13 20 27	3 10 17 24	1 8 15 22 29
S 1 8 15 22 29	6 13 20 27	3 10 17 24	S 7 14 21 28	4 11 18 25	2 9 16 23 30
N 2 9 16 23 30	7 14 21 28	4 11 18 25	N 1 8 15 22 29	5 12 19 26	3 10 17 24 31



leden	January	červenec	July
únor	February	srpen	August
březen	March	září	September
duben	April	říjen	October
květen	May	listopad	November
červen	June	prosinec	December

There are just two rules:

- a *In* a month is expressed by *v* with the locative (contrast *on* a day with *v* and the accusative). With the 'hard' masculine words this always ends in *-u*, the 'soft' ones in *-i*, while *září* in effect does not change.
- b although inanimate, all the 'hard' names have the genitive in *-a*, except *listopad*.

**8 Telling and asking the date**

To ask what the date is you need to combine the genitive singular of *kolikátý* (the how many-eth?) with *být* in the (neuter) singular:

Kolikátého je dnes?	<i>What's the date today?</i>
Kolikátého bylo ve čtvrtek?	<i>What was the date on Thursday?</i>

To reply, use the appropriate ordinal number with the name of the month, all in the genitive (dates above the 20th usually use the inverted form of ordinal):

Dnes je dvanáctého/	<i>Today is the 12th/22nd of April.</i>
dvaadvacátého (or: dvacátého	
druhého) dubna.	

To say something happened on such and such a date, use the same form:

Narodil jsem se třetího března.	<i>I was born on the 3rd of March.</i>
---------------------------------	--

Dates expressed in figures use the numeral and a full stop:

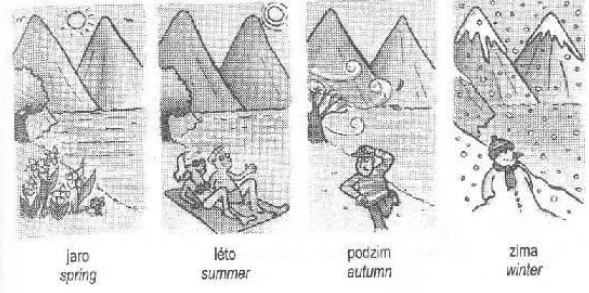
26. srpna	<i>26th August</i>
-----------	--------------------

And to add the year, use either *roku* (abbreviated *r.*) or *v roce* and the appropriate four-digit number, or, for events in the same century, *v roce* with the ordinal numeral between:

<i>v roce (roku) tisíc devět set</i>	<i>in 1938</i>
<i>trícet osm</i>	

and more commonly  
*v roce (roku) devatenáct set třicet osm*  
or  
*v osmatřicátém roce*      *in '38*

**9 The seasons**



<i>na jaře</i>	<i>in spring</i>	<i>na podzim</i>	<i>in the autumn</i>
<i>v létě</i>	<i>in summer</i>	<i>v zimě</i>	<i>in winter</i>

Learn these with care, if only because of their inconsistency!

Compound time expressions, such as *this spring*, *last summer*, are expressed by combinations of the above with *loni* (*last year*) and *letos* (*this year*); *letos na jaře*, *loni v létě*. *Next year* is usually *napřesrok*, but, for example, *next summer* is more commonly expressed by *za rok v létě* or by using the adjective *příští* (*next*): *příští zimu* = *next winter* (accusative as in the time expressions learned earlier). Note that the plural *léta* is commonly used in the sense 'years' (as well as 'summers'):

<i>Byli jsme tam léta</i>	<i>We were there for years</i>
<i>pět let (or roků)</i>	<i>five years</i>

**10 More about tense**

Aspect is not the only replacement for the English tense system. Another is what happens to tense in clauses following verbs of speaking and verbs of perception. You saw one following a verb of speaking in Dialogue 1:

Nabídli, že mě vezmou do hor. *They offered to take me to the mountains. / They offered that they would take me to the mountains.*

There you have *vezmou* (*they will take*). At the time, '*they*' had actually said '*we will take*', that is they used the future perfective. In the reported version of the same offer, all that changes is *we* to *they*: the future tense remains unaltered. Similarly,

Myslela, že manžel má rýmu. *She thought that her husband had a cold.*

What she thought at the time (*My husband has a cold*) was expressed in the present tense, so this tense stays even in the reported version. Conversely; *Myslela, že manžel měl rýmu* must mean (since her thought now is: '*Manžel měl rýmu*') *She thought her husband had had a cold*. As an example of a 'verb of perception' causing the same thing compare:

Petr si čistil zuby. *Peter was cleaning his teeth.*

Viděla, jak si Petr čistí zuby. *She saw (how) Peter (was = is) cleaning his teeth.*

Thus you can see that Czech has no need of all the complexities of 'future in the past', 'pluperfect' and other refinements of the English verb system. The Czech learner of English has a much harder time!



The daily newspaper MFDnes

## Exercises

5 Answer the questions using the guidelines.

- a Kdy tam budete? (On Wednesday, on Sunday evening, in June, at five o'clock, next Summer, on Friday, at exactly half past seven, in February, on Tuesday, this evening, in November, on the twelfth)

- b Jak dlouho jste byli v Praze? (all week, a whole week, five days, three months, the whole of June, all winter, a fortnight (say fourteen days), only twelve hours)
- 6 Select acceptable answers to the questions from among those suggested (more than one may work).
- a Co jste dělali v sedm hodin? (Seděli jsme v hospodě. / Umyli jsme nádobí. / Četli jsme noviny. / Přečetli jsme noviny. / Šli jsme do divadla.)
- b Umíte rusky? (Neumím, ale učím se. / Neumím, ale naučím se. / Neumím, ale budu se učit. / Umím, rusky jsem se naučil ve škole.)
- c Kdy přijдете domů? (Celou noc. / V půl dvanácté. / Hned po představení. / Až zavoláš. / Dokud ji nekoupí. / Z nádraží. / Pátého ledna. / Zítra večer, jestli se nemýlím. / Na dvě hodiny.)
- d Kde jsou klíče? (V září. / Nevím. / Na televizoru. / Byly v téhle kapse. / Zůstaly v kanceláři. / Klíče si vzal Petr. / Které? / Leží u dveří. / Zapomenu.)
- e Jak dlouho budete v Praze? (Čtyři dny. / Dokud budou stačit peníze. / Ve dvě hodiny. / Dvě hodiny. / V červnu. / Celý příští měsíc. / Dokud nám nenapišeš, že se máme vrátit. / Zítra večer. / Do čtvrtka. / Do března.)

Go back over these questions and satisfy yourself that you have really understood each alternative in each question. It is a good idea to re-read the section on aspects and the various types of time expression (some came earlier than this unit), have a break of at least half an hour, and then re-do all this unit's exercises as revision.

## i Some educational history

- The first university in Central Europe was founded at Prague, in 1348.
- The first grammar school in the Habsburg monarchy was founded in Prague, in 1556.
- The first civilian technical college in the world was founded in Prague, in 1707.
- The world's first college of mining was founded in Jáchymov (N. Bohemia) in 1716.
- The great Czech educational reformer, Jan Ámos Komenský, known in English as (John Amos) Comenius, having arrived in England in 1641 at the invitation of Parliament in order to help reform the English education system, was also invited to become President of the then recently founded Harvard University, the first in the USA. (Nothing came of it, however.)

## ▶ Dialogue 1

Mr Navrátil is asking about the Smiths' routine at home.

**Navrátil** Řekněte mi, jak u vás vypadá normální týden.  
**Smith** My oba pracujeme a děti jsou ve škole. Ráno je vodi do školy manželka, protože já odjízdim dřív. Zato večer pro ně jezdím já.

**Navrátil** Nemůžou děti chodit do školy samy?

**Smith** Ještě ne, jsou moc malé.

**Navrátil** A jinak?

**Smith** No, a večer vždycky debatujeme o tom, kdo bude muset zajít druhý den pro chleba a přinést ho nebo zajet třeba za babičkou a dědečkem. Tchyně je totiž v důchodu, nemůže chodit a někdo jí musí vynést smetí nebo ji odvézt k doktorovi a podobně. Tchán je také starý a slabý. Však to znáte.

**Navrátil** Ano, u nás to vypadá podobně. Jenže my si tyto věci nepřipravujeme předem jako vy. Když přecházím naši ulici, nikdy nevím, co bude třeba: například rozvážet děti po kamarádech, zavézt ženu ke kadeřníkovi, dojit pro rohlíky nebo maso, nebo jestli si budu moct v klidu číst noviny.

**Smith** Tak je to v podstatě všude stejné.

<b>týden</b> (gen. týdne)	<i>week</i>
<b>odjízdet</b> (3rd pl. -ějí)/odjet	<i>to leave</i> (by vehicle)
<b>je</b>	<i>them</i> (ně after a preposition)
<b>a jinak</b>	<i>and apart from that</i>
<b>jinak</b>	<i>otherwise</i>
<b>debatovat o něčem</b>	<i>discuss, debate something</i>
<b>zacházet</b> (3rd pl. -ejí)/zajít	<i>to pop</i> (on foot)
<b>druhý den</b>	<i>next day</i>
<b>přinášet</b> (3rd pl. -ejí)/přinést	<i>to bring</i>
<b>zajíždět</b> (3rd pl. -ějí)/zajet	<i>to pop</i> (by car)
<b>třeba</b>	<i>say, for instance</i>
<b>za babičkou</b>	<i>to see Grandma</i>
<b>babička</b>	<i>grandmother</i>
<b>dědeček</b>	<i>grandfather</i>
<b>tchyně je v důchodu</b>	<i>mother-in-law is retired</i>
<b>tchyně</b>	<i>mother-in-law</i>
<b>důchod</b>	<i>pension</i>
<b>jí dative of ona</b>	<i>for her</i>

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about the most crucial types of movement: coming and going, carrying and chasing, flying and running, to and from, in and out
- how to say what things look like
- how to express the means of doing something

# 12

## děti do školy vodi manželka

it's my wife who takes the children  
to school

vynášet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vynést smetí jí (acc.) her	to bring/take/carry out rubbish her
odvážet (3rd pl. -ejí)/odvézt tchán však to znáte! jenže	to drive, take (away) (by vehicle) father-in-law You know how it is! (idiom) except that
připravovat/připravit (si) předem jako vy	to prepare in advance like you
přecházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/přejít třeba například kamarád kadeřník	to cross (on foot) necessary for example friend (ladies') hairdresser
docházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/dojít rohlík maso	to go (so far) to get bread roll meat
v klidu si číst klid v podstatě podstata	to read in peace peace (and quiet) basically essence
je to všude stejné	it's the same everywhere

jak u vás vypadá normální týden? what's a normal week like in your house?

vypadat (+ adverb) to look, appear, be like

pro ně jezdím I fetch them (by car) (= 'I go for them')

chleba (colloquial for chléb) (gen. chleba) bread

za (preposition + instrumental) behind, beyond (also used with verbs denoting to go/come to see someone)

rozvážet (3rd pl. -ejí) + po (+ loc.) to take to various places (by vehicle)

zavést to take/drop (someone/something somewhere) (impfv. rare; use vézt)

## Notes

### 1 Verbs of motion

These include fetching and carrying, coming and going, popping and dropping.

a In Unit 9 you were introduced to the 'verbs of motion'. Their main feature was their ability to distinguish between single and repeated, or targeted or random motion. They also discriminated between movement on foot or by vehicle: *jit+chodit* (to go/walk), but *jet+jezdit* (to go/ride/travel/drive), *nést+nosit* (to carry - on foot), but *vézt+vozit* (to carry/take/convey - by vehicle).

The single-event (determinate) members of these pairs have one set of present-tense forms, e.g. *jdu* I am going, one set of future-tense forms, e.g. *půjdu* (I will go), and one set of past tense forms, e.g. *šel jsem* (I went or I was going). Nothing has changed now that you have learnt about aspect: the primary verbs of motion stand outside the aspect system.

The indeterminate members of the pairs, e.g. *chodit* to go (regularly) are by their very meaning imperfective, though rare perfectives may be formed from them for certain highly specialized meanings.

b *Jít, nést* and other determinate, durative verbs of motion attract a very wide range of prefixes. This process produces new perfective verbs in the sense in which you met them in Unit 11. The corresponding new secondary imperfectives are based on, but are not the same as, the basic indeterminate verbs of motion. Thus from *jit+chodit* there are:

procházet/projít	to go through
přecházet/přejít	to go across, to cross
vycházet/vyjít	to go out, to come out
odcházet/odejít	to go away, to leave
přicházet/přijít	to come, to arrive
vcházet/vejít	to come or go in, to enter
zacházet/zajít	to pop in; to go too far
předcházet/předejít	to go before, to precede
docházet/dojít	to go so far; to run out
scházet/sejít	to go down, to be in decline
scházet se/sejít se	to meet
rozcházet se/rozejít se	to split up, to part
ucházet/ujít	to get away, to escape, to leak
nacházet/najít	to come upon, to find
procházet se/projít se	to go for a walk
obcházet/obejít	to go round, circumvent

And some other rarer items. There are others of one aspect only:

pocházet	to come/hail from
ucházet se (+ o + acc.)	to be a candidate – for something
scházet	to be lacking
zacházet (s + instrumental)	to treat, to handle
pojít (přv.)	to die – of animals
obejít se (+ bez + gen.) (přv.)	to do without
vejít se (přv.)	to fit

These lists, which you are not expected to learn immediately, illustrates compounds of *jit* and introduces you to almost all Czech prefixes. The meanings of the prefixes in the first part of the list are practically constant, that is, you may recognize their contribution to the meaning of other prefixed verbs you may meet in future.

c Now that you can recognize the relationship between *chodit* and secondary imperfectives ending in *-cházet*, study these mutations of the other verbs of motion. The second column shows the form of their secondary imperfectives attached to the relevant prefixes.

from	jet+jezdít	-jíždět	go by vehicle
	nést+nosit	-nášet	carry in the hand
	vést+vodit	-vádět	lead by the hand
	vézt+vozit	-vážet	carry, convey by vehicle
	hnát+honit	-hánět	chase, drive
	táhnout+tahat	-tahovat	pull

The verbs *běžet*+*běhat* (*run*) and *letět*+*létat* (*fly*) are slightly more special. *Běžet* never takes prefixes itself; prefixed perfectives are based on *-běhnout* with secondary imperfectives ending in *-bíhat*, while *letět* can take some prefixes, though with others it is replaced by *-létnout*, with secondary imperfectives ending in *-létat*, *-létávat* or *-lítat*.

	vybíhat/vyběhnout	to run out
	vylét(áv)at/vyletět	to fly out
but	vzlétnout (přv.)	to fly up, to take off

Exercises 1 and 2 below will help you to learn these. (A limited selection of (mostly perfective) compounds appears in Dialogue 1.)

## 2 'That looks good'

Clearly in this sentence, *look* has nothing to do with *see*, but is closer to *appear*. In Czech, the verb *vypadat* (*to appear*) must usually be followed by an adverb:

To vypadá dobře/ošklivě/modře. *It looks good/ugly/blue.*

These adverbs are from the adjectives *dobrá* (*good*), *ošklivý* (*ugly, awful*), *modrý* (*blue*). *Vypadat* can be used very generally, as in:

Vypadá to špatně. *Things are looking bad.*

and you can use it of people:

Miloš vypadá mladě. *Miloš looks young.*

Accordingly, to ask what something is like or looks like, or how it appears, use the adverb *jak* (*how*):

Jak to vypadalo? *What did it look like?/  
How was it?*

To say '*x looks like y*', again use *vypadat*, but with *jako* (*like, as*), but only for actual resemblance.

Petr vypadá jako fotbalista. *Peter looks like a footballer.*

For the impersonal 'it looks like' in the sense 'it looks as if it was *x* (who did it)', or 'it looks as if *y* will happen', use *vypadat* with *to* as dummy subject (+ *na* + accusative).

Vypadá to na déšť. *It looks like rain (rain seems probable).*

Vypadá to na Petra. *It looks like Peter (Peter seems to be the likely culprit or victim).*

Vypadalo to na porážku. *It was looking like defeat.*

Finally, to say 'it looks as if ...', use *vypadat* followed by a clause with *že*:

Vypadá (to), že nepřijde. *It looks as if he isn't coming.*  
Vypadalo (to), že nejsou doma. *It looked as if they weren't in.*

With this type the dummy subject *to* is often omitted.

## 3 The odd thing about 'bread'

The word for *bread* is *chléb*, but you will hardly ever hear it. Its genitive case is *chleba*, and this form is widely used in the



accusative and even in the nominative. This does not mean any change of gender:

Tento chleba nevypadá moc čerstvě. *This bread doesn't look very fresh.*

In other respects it is an ordinary 'hard' inanimate masculine noun.

## Exercises

- Guess the meaning of the following verbs. State their aspect and provide the other aspect form:
 

a přinášet	e protahovat	h přejet
b proletět	f přiběhnout	i vyvádět
c přenést	g odvážet	j odehnat
d vyjždět		
- Using appropriate primary or secondary verbs of motion, offer the following excuses or explanations:
  - We flew too far so we arrived at the airport late.
  - Somebody took my suitcase away.
  - Jana isn't at home because she is delivering newspapers.
  - They dragged the box into the other room.
  - They were just (právě) leaving when the phone rang.
  - A van (dodávka) has just delivered the bread.
  - We shall drive round the town. We don't like driving in foreign cities.
  - She usually (obvykle) comes at six, but today she didn't arrive until seven.
  - He ran across the street.
  - Mr Navrátil came out of the house, looked at the sky (nebe, n), thought it looked like rain, and went back inside (dovnitř) to fetch his coat.
- Translate the following into Czech:
  - He is looking well.
  - She looks well.
  - He looks like Napoleon.
  - Cotton wool (vata) looks like snow.
  - It (e.g. referring to cotton wool) looks like snow.
  - It (the weather prospect) looks like snow.
  - He is looking out of the window.

- h She didn't look like coming. (Careful!)  
i She looks English.  
j You looked awful.

## Dialogue 2

Paní Navrátilová is at the hairdresser's, complaining about the ways of the world, in particular zločinnost (the crime rate).

- Navrátilová** Před týdnem jsem řekla naší Janě, že nemá nechávat kolo před domem. Někdo ho může ukrást. Náš Petr měl kolo vzadu za kůlnou, a stejně mu ho někdo vzal.
- Irena** A naše sousedka nedávno nechala kočárek s nákupem pod stříškou před řeznictvím a přišla o dva chleby a brambory – já nákup nosím vždycky s sebou.
- Navrátilová** Já taky. Mezi námi, vaše sousedka se nesmí divit. Mezi dnešní mládeží je taková zločinnost, že musíte všechno pořád hlídat. Mládež nemůže za všechno – mezi dospělými je určitě víc drobných zločinců, i horších. Vaše sousedka může být ráda, že jí nevzali mimino. Někdo asi nad ním držel ochrannou ruku.
- Irena** Můj manžel byl jednou svědkem takového pokusu o únos. Odehnal únosce holí a jedna paní se do něho pustila kabelkou. A dítě spalo v kočárku dál.
- Olga**



Dítě spalo v kočárku dál.

<b>před týdnem</b>	<i>a week ago</i>
<b>před</b>	<i>before, in front of, ago</i>
<b>nechávat/nechat</b>	<i>to leave; to let</i>
<b>kolo</b>	<i>wheel; bicycle</i>
<b>vzadu</b>	<i>at the back</i>

za kůlnou	behind the shed
za kůlna	behind, beyond, on the far side of shed
stejně	anyway, as it is/was
mu dativě of on	here, from him
kočárek s nákupem	(her) pram with the shopping
s	with
nákup	shopping
pod stříškou	under the awning
pod	under, beneath, below
před řeznictvím	outside the butcher's
řeznictví	butcher's shop
s sebou	here, with me
sebou	instrumental of se
mezi	between, among
divit se (+ dat.)	to be surprised (at something)
dnešní mládež	the youth of today
dnešní	adjective from dnes
mládež (f singular)	youth, young people
taková zločinnost	so much crime
hlídat	to guard, to watch over
pořád	all the time
dospělý	adult (noun and adjective)
víc drobných zločinců	more petty criminals
drobný	small, tiny, petty
horší	worse
mimino	baby
nad ním	over it
nad	over, above
držet	to hold
být svědkem (+ gen.)	be witness (to)
svědek	witness
takový pokus o únos	an attempted kidnapping like that
takový	such, like that, of that kind
pokus (+ o + acc.)	attempt (at); experiment
únos	kidnapping
únosce (m)	kidnapper
odhánět/odehnat	drive away
holí (from hůl f)	with his stick
kabelkou (from kabelka)	with her handbag
dítě spalo dál	the child (just) kept on sleeping
nemá nechávat kolo před domem	she shouldn't leave her bike outside the house

stejně mu ho někdo vzal someone took it (from him) anyway  
 stříška awning, shelter, diminutive of střecha roof  
 přicházet/přijít + o + acc. to lose (through no fault of one's own)  
 mezi námi between you and me, between/among us  
 mládež nemůže za všechno young people can't answer for everything  
 někdo asi nad ním držel ochrannou ruku someone must have been holding a protective hand over it  
 ochranný protective (from ochrana protection)  
 pouštět se/pustit se (+ do + gen.) to set about

## Notes

## 4 'by (means of)': the instrumental case

In Dialogue 2, Olga's husband used his stick and another woman her handbag to lay about the kidnapper. The two items were the instruments used in the protection of the baby. Similarly you write *in, with* or *by means of* a biro, pen or pencil. And if a plate (*talíř*) breaks by falling (*pád = a fall*) on the floor, the fall is what is instrumental in the breakage. These ideas are conveyed in Czech by the last case for you to learn, the instrumental case.

Píšu perem.

*I write with a pen.*

Talíř se rozbil pádem na zem.

*The plate broke by falling on the floor.*

The forms of the instrumental case are almost all represented in the Dialogue, and the following table summarizes them:

	Singular	Plural
'Hard' masculine and neuters	-em domem, kolem	-y domy, koly
'Soft' masculine and neuters	-em klíčem, mořem	-i klíči, moři
Masculine nouns in -a	-ou fotbalistou	-y fotbalisty
Feminine nouns in -a	-ou kabelkou	-ami kabelkami
Neuter nouns in -í	-im zelím	-imi zelími
paní	-í paní	-imi paními
'Soft' feminines	-í lekcí	-emi lekceři
i-declension nouns	-í věcí	-mi věcmi; lidmi

Adjectives and pronouns	Singular masc. and neut.	Singular fem.	Plural
'Hard' adjective	malým	malou	malými
'Soft' adjective	cizím	cizí	cizími
ten	tím	tu	těmi
3rd person pronouns	jím	jí	jimi
náš/váš	naším	naší	našími
všechen	vším	vší	všemi

Other pronouns	
kdo	kým
co	čím
já/my	mnou/námi
ty/vy	tebou/vámi
se	sebou

Study the tables and note the different endings.

### 5 Non-instrumental uses

The instrumental case and its forms exist for all nouns and related classes of words because the case has several non-instrumental uses.

a It is used after five prepositions denoting place:

**před** *in front of, outside, in someone's presence; ago*



Stojí před Petrem.

*He is standing in front of Peter.*

Mléko je přede dveřmi.  
Před dětmi jsme opatrní.

*The milk's outside the door.  
We're careful in the presence of the children.  
He died a year ago.*

Zemřel před rokem.

Note the addition of -e before an awkward group of consonants.

za *behind, beyond, on the far side of*



Stojí za Petrem.  
Francie je za mořem.  
Hotel je za řekou.

*He's standing behind Peter.  
France is beyond the sea.  
The hotel is on the far side of the river.*

pod *under, beneath, below*



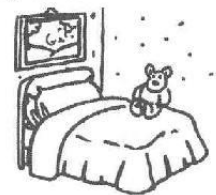
Stáli pod stromem.

*They stood under/beneath a tree.*

Metro je pod zemí.

*The underground is under the ground.*

nad *over, above*



Nad postelí je obraz.  
Výsledek je nad průměrem.

*There's a picture over the bed.  
The result is above average.*

mezi *between, among*



*He was alone among  
the women.  
Between heaven and earth.*

Byl sám mezi ženami.

Mezi nebem a zemí.

### Place versus motion

Remember how in Unit 4, Note 10, you met some oppositions between expressions of place or position and motion towards the same place. Here, note that all five of the above prepositions combine also with the accusative case after verbs expressing motion in the direction of the positions they denote:

Postavil pivo před Petra.

*He put the beer down in  
front of Peter.*

Slunce zašlo za mrak.

*The sun went behind  
a cloud.*

Kopl bačkory pod postel.

*He kicked his slippers  
under the bed.*

Dal obraz nad postel.

*He put the picture over  
the bed.*

Knihy spadla mezi radiátor  
a zeď.

*The book fell between the  
radiator and the wall.*

Another preposition, *s* (*with*), also takes the instrumental case. It is used to mean *accompanying, together with*, not to be confused with the true instrumental *with*.

Praštila zloděje kabelkou.

*She bashed the thief with  
her handbag.*

Seděla tam s kabelkou.

*She was sitting there with  
her handbag.*

Seděl tam s manželkou.

*He was sitting there  
with his wife.*

In this case, motion is usually expressed by *k* + dative.

Dala klíče ke kabelce.

*She put her keys with  
her handbag.*

Sedl si k manželce.

*He sat down with (next to)  
his wife.*

**b** The instrumental case is used after a number of verbs, especially those denoting abrupt or conspicuous movement.

Když zvedal židli, hnul stolem. *As he lifted the chair he  
moved the table.*  
Pes mává ocasem. *A dog wags his tail.*  
Kývla hlavou. *She nodded (her head).*  
Rána zatřásla celým domem. *The bang shook the  
whole house.*

but also:

Pohrdla nabídkou. *She scorned the offer.*  
Opovrhuje jimi. *He despises them.*

It regularly expresses means or modes of travelling.

Jeli tam vlakem/tramvají/  
autobusem. *The went by train/tram/bus.*

Poletíme vrtulníkem. *We shall fly by helicopter.*  
Dostaneme se tam jenom lodí. *We can only get there by boat.*  
jet krokem *to move at a walking pace*  
jet hledmýždím tempem *to move at a snail's pace*  
jezdít (auto)stopem *to hitchhike*

And it may convey the route or direction along which an action (viewed very broadly) takes place:

Prošli jsme branou. *We went through the gate.*  
Dívá se oknem. *She is looking through the  
window.*

Šli jsme lesem. *We went through the  
forest.*

Temže teče Londýnem. *The Thames flows through  
London.*

This type of instrumental answers questions beginning *kudy* (*which way?*): *Kudy jste šli? Lesem.*

**c** A special use of the instrumental is after the verb *stávat se/stát se* (*to become*). What you become goes into the instrumental:

Stává se docela dobrým  
bánskem. *He's becoming quite a  
good poet.*

Stal se prezidentem. *He became president.*

A subtler matter is the related use after *být*. If you describe someone as, say, a teacher, or another calling, good style puts it in the instrumental.

Je učitelkou.  
Byl instalatérem.

*She is a teacher.  
He was a plumber.*

However, in spoken Czech, you can keep to the nominative. The normal way of asking after a person's profession is to use the instrumental of *co*: *Čím je?* (*What is he?*).

Nobody is born a teacher or plumber. These phrases describe an acquired, non-permanent or relative state and as such require the instrumental case. This is why it is often used in adjective + noun phrases: Petr may be a Czech, if that is what he was born, but there is no certainty that he is a *good* Czech. The permanent quality of being a Czech will always use the nominative whereas the relative quality of being a *good* Czech will use the instrumental.

Petr je Čech. Petr je dobrým Čechem.

In some instances the instrumental use, even in speech, has become almost a formula, as in *byl svědkem* in the Dialogue, or in the idiomatic *Být vámi/jím ...* (*if I were you/he ...*) (which I could never be in reality).

d Many instrumental forms of what are or have been ordinary nouns have become adverbs or prepositions. The table gives some of the more common ones:

#### Adverbs

<b>kolem</b>	<i>by, past</i>
<b>honem</b>	<i>in a hurry, at once</i>
<b>předem</b>	<i>in advance; by the front way</i>
<b>zadem</b>	<i>by the back way</i>
<b>cestou</b>	<i>on the way</i>
<b>stranou</b>	<i>aside, to one side</i>
<b>většinou</b>	<i>mostly</i>
<b>právem</b>	<i>rightly</i>
<b>neprávem</b>	<i>wrongly</i>
<b>omylem</b>	<i>by mistake</i>
<b>dnem a nocí</b>	<i>by day and night</i>
<b>zuby nehty</b>	<i>by tooth and nail</i>

#### Prepositions (all taking the genitive)

<b>kolem</b>	<i>past, round</i>
<b>během</b>	<i>during</i>
<b>následkem</b>	<i>in consequence of</i>
<b>vinou</b>	<i>owing to</i>
<b>pomocí</b>	<i>by means of</i>

<b>prostřednictvím</b>	<i>through (someone)</i>
<b>vlivem</b>	<i>due to</i>
<b>jménem</b>	<i>in the name of</i>

Yet others enter into whole idioms, such as *zemřít hladu* (*to die of hunger*), *pukat smíchy* (*to split one's sides laughing*), *krčit rameny* (*to shrug one's shoulders*).

<b>pád</b>	<i>fall; (grammatical) case</i>
<b>fotbalista</b>	<i>footballer</i>
<b>instalatér</b>	<i>plumber</i>
<b>básník</b>	<i>poet</i>
<b>zloděj</b>	<i>thief</i>
<b>pero</b>	<i>pen</i>
<b>vtulník</b>	<i>helicopter</i>
<b>nehet</b> (gen. <i>nehtu</i> )	<i>(finger, toe) nail</i>
<b>hlemýžď</b> (m)	<i>snail</i>
<b>metro</b>	<i>underground railway</i>
<b>mrak</b>	<i>(dark) cloud</i>
<b>les</b> (gen. <i>lesa</i> )	<i>forest, wood</i>
<b>brána</b>	<i>gate(way)</i>
<b>řeka</b>	<i>river</i>
<b>země</b> (f)	<i>ground, earth, soil</i>
<b>na zem</b>	<i>to the ground</i>
<b>postel</b> (f 'sof')	<i>bed</i>
<b>krok</b>	<i>(foot)step, pace, stride</i>
<b>autostop</b>	<i>hitchhiking</i>
<b>hon</b>	<i>hunt(ing), chase</i>
<b>běh</b>	<i>run(ning)</i>
<b>hlad</b>	<i>hunger</i>
<b>smích</b>	<i>laughter</i>
<b>rameno</b>	<i>shoulder</i>
<b>strana</b>	<i>side, page; party</i>
<b>výsledek</b>	<i>result, outcome</i>
<b>následek</b>	<i>consequence</i>
<b>vliv</b>	<i>influence, effect</i>
<b>průměr</b>	<i>average</i>
<b>omyl</b>	<i>error</i>
<b>právo</b>	<i>right</i>
<b>prostřednictví</b>	<i>mediation</i>
<b>vina</b>	<i>guilt, blame</i>
<b>ocas</b>	<i>tail</i>
<b>opatrný</b>	<i>careful, cautious</i>



pohrdat/pohrdnout	to scorn, disdain
opovrhovat	to despise
praštit (přv. only)	to bash, thump, hit
krčít/po- třást/za- mávat/za-	to shrug to shake to wave, wag
zvedat/zvednout	to lift
hýbat (hýbe)/hnout (past hnul)	to move
kopat (kope)/kopnout	to kick
kývat/kývnout	to nod; to swing from side to side
pukat/puknout	to burst

Notice the last group of verbs, which are fairly representative of a type of aspect pairing not met in the last unit. The perfectives ending in **-nout** tend to denote a single, near-instantaneous action. Sometimes they stand in opposition to other perfectives denoting a composite action:

zamávat	to wave – giving several part-waves
mávnout	to wave/wag once

From **fukat** (to tap – at a door, on a keyboard)

zafukat	to knock at the door, involving several raps
fuknout	to tap once, perhaps on a single key

Many verbs in this class describe noises:

bouchat/bouchnout	to bang, slam; to explode
pípat/za- or pípnout	to tweet

## Exercises

4 Explain how you have arrived somewhere (answer using complete sentences):

- |   |                     |   |   |
|---|---------------------|---|---|
| a | by train;           | g | through the town;                               |
| b | by plane;           | h | using Čedok (the Czech national travel agency); |
| c | by car;             | i | by hitchhiking;                                 |
| d | by bus;             | j | by cab.   |
| e | on the underground; |   |   |
| f | through the woods;  |   |   |

5 Fill in the gaps using the words suggested in the right form:

- Poznámky píšu (pero), ale dopisy píšu na (stroj).
- Nerad jezdí na dovolenou s (rodiče).
- Debatuje s (partner) o (nový podnik).
- Před (my) je krásný výhled na (hrad).
- Máme před (se) velmi dobré perspektivy.
- Řeka pod (most) je velmi špinavá.
- Nemůžu přijet (auto), protože je v (opravna).
- Kdo stojí za (ty)?
- Rozdíl (difference) mezi (pes) a (vlk) není velký.
- Před (válka) bydleli ve městě, dnes mají (dům) na (venkov).

6 Using the verb **dávat/dát** (to put) make up sentences along the lines: (Mary) (present) (keys) in (handbag) = **Marie dává klíče do kabelky.**

- (Footballer) (past pfv.) (shirt) on (bed)
- (I) (future pfv.) (money) with (passport)
- (She) (past pfv.) (shopping) in (pram)
- (Teacher) (past pfv.) (dictionary) among (the others)
- (We) (past impfv.) (dustbins) outside (the house)
- (Plumber) (present) (new pipe) behind (bath)
- (He) (past pfv.) (books) from (table) onto (chair)
- (They) must (infinitive) (china) into (boxes) (carefully)
- Why (you) (past pfv.) (those letters) on (the floor)?

popelnice	dustbin
porcelán	china
trubka	pipe

## Did you know ...

That the ancient mining town of Jáchymov in North Bohemia gave us the word **dollar**? The town, Joachimsthal in German, produced a famous silver coin, the **Joachimsthaler groš** (or **Groschen**). The name became shortened to **Joachimsthaler**, then to **Thaler**, which gave rise to the Czech form **tolar**; which then passed into various languages in various forms including **dollar**. Other words which we owe to the Czech language or environment include *camellia*, *pistol*, *polka*, *robot* and *Semtex*; also numerous terms in the sciences, most of all mineralogy.

# 13

prší!  
it's raining!

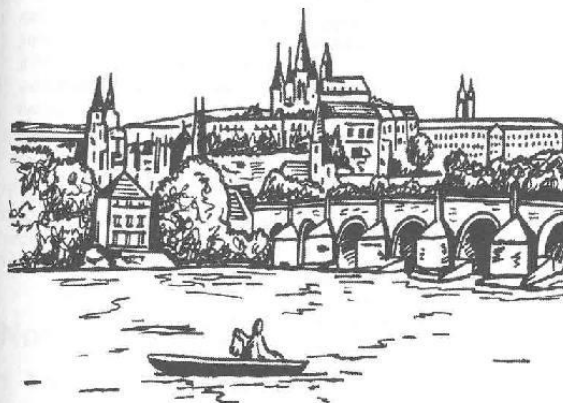
#### In this unit you will learn

- how to read consecutive prose
- how to talk about the weather
- how to use personal pronouns
- how to say *before* and *after*
- how to form more expressions for telling the time
- how to express alternatives

#### ► Text

Podzimní deště táhly přes Prahu. Věž svatého Víta páraly nízká oblaka, vítr se jich chápal, rozháněl a obnažoval tu a tam hlubokou modř oblohy, vždycky jen cíp. Čeřil hladinu Vltavy mezi mosty a loďky trpělivých rybářů se houpały na kalné vodě.

Jan Trázník se vracel po Palackého mostě z kanceláře, která hlučela od rána nervózním přebíháním úředníků. Někudy do ní vběhla zpráva o ministerské radě, jež se usnesla na nové restrikci úřednictva instituce, jejíž zbytek se měl přičlenit k ministerstvu, běžela od ucha k uchu, lidé odkládali pera, pletli si písmena na psacích strojích a nechávali vystydnout párky, které jim přinášel sluha.



Otcové rodin těšili svobodné kolegy a radovali se skrytě z myšlenky, že rodina, základ státu, nesmí být restrikcí otřesena. Prohlašoval to už před léty při velké restrikci v interviewu ministr. Šéfové oddělení krčili rameny a nevycházeli raději ze svých pokojů.

Mlhavý déšť kropil ulice ...

(from J. Hora: *Dech na skle*, Prague, 1939, p. 54.)

	<b>podzimní</b>	<i>autumn(al)</i>
	<b>děšť</b> (m gen. <b>deště</b> )	<i>rain</i>
	<b>táhnout</b>	<i>here draw, march</i>
	<b>věž</b> (f)	<i>tower, spire</i>
	<b>párat</b>	<i>here, rip open</i>
	<b>nizký</b>	<i>low</i>
	<b>oblak</b> (m) (pl. <b>oblaka</b> n!)	<i>cloud</i>
	<b>rozhánět/rozehnat</b>	<i>to disperse, drive everywhere</i>
	<b>vítr</b> (gen. <b>větru</b> )	<i>wind</i>
	<b>chápat se/uchopit se</b> (+ gen.)	<i>to seize hold of</i>
	<b>jich</b> gen. of <b>oni/ony/ona</b>	<i>them</i>
	<b>obnažovat/obnažit</b>	<i>to reveal, lay bare</i>
	<b>tu a tam</b>	<i>here and there</i>
	<b>hluboký</b>	<i>deep</i>
	<b>modř</b> (f)	<i>blue (as noun)</i>
	<b>obloha</b>	<i>sky</i>
	<b>cíp</b>	<i>a tiny corner</i>
	<b>čepit/roz-</b>	<i>to ruffle, to cause to ripple</i>
	<b>hladina</b>	<i>surface</i>
	<b>lodka</b>	<i>(rowing) boat</i>
	<b>trpělivý</b>	<i>patient</i>
	<b>rybář</b> (m)	<i>fisherman</i>
	<b>kalný</b>	<i>murky</i>
	<b>Palackého most</b>	<i>Palacký Bridge</i>
	<b>hlučet</b>	<i>to be noisy</i>
	<b>nervózní</b>	<i>nervous</i>
	<b>přebíhání</b>	<i>running hither and thither</i>
	<b>ministerská rada</b>	<i>council of ministers</i>
	<b>Jež = která</b>	<i>which</i>
	<b>usnášet se/usnést se</b> + na (+ loc.)	<i>to resolve</i>
	<b>restrikce</b>	<i>cutback</i>
	<b>úřednictvo</b>	<i>office staff</i>
	<b>zbytek</b>	<i>remnant</i>
	<b>ministerstvo</b>	<i>ministry</i>
	<b>odkládat/odložit</b>	<i>to put down, set aside</i>
	<b>psací stroj</b> (m)	<i>typewriter</i>
	<b>plést si/s-</b> (plete)	<i>to confuse, get wrong</i>
	<b>nechávat/nechat</b>	<i>to let</i>
	<b>stydnout/vy-</b>	<i>to get cold</i>
	<b>párek</b>	<i>(pair of) frankfurter(s)</i>
	<b>sluha</b> (m)	<i>servant, (here) office messenger</i>
	<b>radovat se/za-</b> + z (+ gen.)	<i>to rejoice (at)</i>
	<b>skrytě</b>	<i>secretly</i>

<b>myšlenka</b>	<i>thought, idea</i>
<b>základ</b>	<i>basis, foundation</i>
<b>stát</b>	<i>the state</i>
<b>nesmí být otřesena</b>	<i>must not be disturbed, shaken</i>
<b>prohlašovat/prohlásit</b>	<i>to pronounce, declare</i>
<b>šéf</b>	<i>head, boss</i>
<b>raději</b>	<i>rather, preferably</i>
<b>mihavý</b>	<i>misty, foggy</i>
<b>kropit/po-</b>	<i>to sprinkle, to water</i>

**svatý Vít** *St Vitus* (to whom Prague's cathedral is dedicated)  
**houpat se/roz-** (**houpe**), or **houpnout se** *to swing, bob*  
**někudy** *some way (denoting route; remember kudy? which way?)*

**rada** *council, counsel; (m) councillor, counsellor*  
**jejíž** *whose (where possessor is feminine)*  
**přičleňovat/přičlenit** *to incorporate (here reflexive passive)*  
**oddělení** *section, department, compartment*  
**nevycházej raději ze svých pokojů** *thought it wiser to stay in their rooms*

You should be able to work out other words on the basis of what you have learnt in previous units. If you have the recording, listen to this passage. It will give you some sense for Czech as read, as opposed to spoken dialogue.

## Notes

### 1 The weather

Contrary to their own assertions, the Czechs don't talk about the weather much less than the English! At the very least you need the following words and expressions in addition to those in the text:

<b>snh</b> (sněhu)	<i>snow</i>
<b>sněhová bouře</b>	<i>snowstorm</i>
<b>kroupy</b> (f pl)	<i>hail</i>
<b>vánice</b>	<i>blizzard</i>
<b>padá sníh</b>	<i>it is snowing</i>
<b>břečka</b>	<i>slush</i>

mlha	fog, mist
padá mlha	mist/fog is coming down
prší (pršet)	it's raining
leje (lít)	it's pouring
přeháňka	shower
mrholení (mrholit)	drizzle
přeháňky	scattered showers
fouká (foukat to blow) vítr	it's windy
bouřka, bouře	storm
vichřice	gale
od severu/jihu/západu/	from the north/south/west/
východu	east
sever	north
jih	south
západ	west
východ	east
hřmí (hřmit/za-, past hřmělo)	it's thundering
hrom	thunder
blyská se	it's lightning
blesk	flash
slunce svítí (svítit)	the sun's shining
je horko/teplo/chladno/zima	it's hot/warm(mild)/cool/cold
je zataženo/zamračeno	it's overcast/cloudy
polojasno/jasno	fairly sunny/bright
tlak	pressure
tlaková výše	ridge of high pressure
výše (f)	height
tlaková níže	trough of low pressure
níže (f)	low point
teplota stoupá/klesá	the temperature is rising/falling
teploměr	thermometer
stupeň (m, gen. stupně)	degree
Jaká je předpověď?	What's the forecast?
Jaké je dnes počasí?	What's the weather like today?
Kolik je stupňů?	What's the temperature?
pět stupňů (Celsia)	5°C
zapadat	to set
vycházet	to rise

jako z konve (konev (f) watering-can) cats and dogs  
místa (instrumental plural of místo place) in places

## 2 Stating a preference

There are two ways of doing this:

a with **raději** or **radši** linked to the verb in the same way as **rád**.

Rádi vycházejí ven. *They like going out.*

but Raději nevycházejí ven. *They prefer not to go out.*

or Má rád město. *He likes the town.*

while Ona má raději venkov. *She prefers the country.*

In direct comparison use **než** (*than*).

Mám raději salát než zelí. *I prefer lettuce to cabbage.*

(i.e. 'I have lettuce more gladly than cabbage')

b with the phrase **dávat/dát přednost něčemu před něčím** (to give precedence/preference/priority to something over something):

Dávám přednost češtině před němčinou. *I prefer Czech to German.*

## 3 The -ní ending: podzimní – 'autumnal'

Adjectives based on nouns denoting times and locations (but not place names) often have the ending **-ní**, hence also **letní**, **zimní** and **jarní**, but also **místní** (*local*) (**místo**), **východní**, **západní**, **severní** and **jižní** and many others.

## 4 A popular food: párky

Párek nowadays often means a *frankfurter*, but originally they were sold in attached pairs, hence párek (*pár = pair*) used to mean *two frankfurters*. However, you definitely only get one when you buy párek v rohlíku (*hot dog*) at a stánek (*a street-side stall*).

## 5 Personal pronouns

You have met many personal pronouns. Here they are systematized:

Nominative	já (I)	ty (you)	-self	my (we)	vy (you)
Accusative/Genitive	mě	tebe-tě	sebe-se	nás	vás
Dative	mně-mi	tobě-ti	sobě-si	nám	vám
Instrumental	mnou	tebou	sebou	námi	vámi
Locative	o mně	o tobě	o sobě	o nás	o vás

Nominative	on (m) ono/to (n)	ona (f)	oni/ony/ona (they)
Accusative	jeho/jej/něho/něj-ho	ji/ni	je/ně
Genitive	jeho/jej/něho/něj-ho	ji/ní	jich/nich
Dative	jemu/němu-mu	ji/ni	jim/nim
Instrumental	jím/ním	ji/ní	jimi/nimi
Locative	o něm	o ní	o nich

At first sight there seem to be a lot of variants, but they are all subject to a few simple rules:

a the third-person forms (he/she/it/they) beginning with **n-** are only used after prepositions, and must be used after them: *pro něho* (for him), *bez nich* (without them), *před ní* (before her). This explains why there are only forms beginning with **n-** in the locative, which can never occur without a preposition.

b the forms to the right of the dash are unstressed and are those you have been meeting tucked away in the second slot in the sentence.

Viděl jsem ho včera.

*I saw him/it (some masculine object) yesterday. They'll give me frankfurters tomorrow.*

Zítra mi dají párky.

Where there is no choice of 'short' or 'long' forms, the sole form listed may also be unstressed.

Viděl jsem je včera.

*I saw them yesterday. They'll give us frankfurters tomorrow.*

Zítra nám dají párky.

c The forms to the left of the dashes, and the forms where there is no choice, must be used where emphasis is needed; they will *not* then be in the second slot.

Viděl jsem včera jeho/je, ne Marii.

*I saw him/them yesterday, not Mary.*

Nám dají párky, tobě dají palačinky.

*It's us they'll give the frankfurters to, you'll get pancakes.*

The same forms must be used after prepositions.

Šli proti mně/nám.

*They were walking towards me/us.*

d **jeho/jej** and **něho/něj** are largely interchangeable, but in the accusative **jeho** and **něho** are best reserved for animates.

e **je**, neuter accusative singular *it* (not given in the table), is frequently replaced by **ho**, especially in spoken Czech.

f **They**: **ony** (f pl) and **ona** (n pl) are invariably replaced by **oni** in the spoken language.

g With inanimates of any gender, the demonstrative pronoun **ten/ta/to** is used under emphasis:

Znáš sídliště Ládví? – Ne, to neznám, jenom Prosek.

*Do you know the Ládví estate? –*

*No, that one I don't, only Prosek.*

Koupíš si tu novou detektivku? – Tu od Borové? Tu ne.

*Will you buy the new detective novel? – The one by Borová?*

*Not that one.*

h You will frequently hear third-person pronouns used redundantly to emphasize the subject.

Ona paní Ježková je zase v jiném stavu.

*Mrs Ježek is pregnant again.*

v jiném stavu

*'in another state' = the everyday euphemism for pregnant.*

Ono to bylo loni v červnu.

*It was in last June.*

i In older textbooks you will find **mne-mě** as the accusative/genitive forms of **já I**. The only form given here – **mě** – has generally taken on all functions appropriate to both 'long'

and 'short' pronouns, leaving its 'long' counterpart *mne* likely to be found only in older, or highly conservative, texts.

### 6 Je mi zima – 'I'm cold'

The dative of pronouns is commonly combined with those expressions from the 'weather' list that refer to temperature.

Je mi/mu/nám teplo/horko/zima.	<i>I am/he is/we are (feeling) warm/hot/cold (Lit. it is warm, etc. to me, etc.).</i>
-----------------------------------	---

The type ending in *-o* are originally short neuter adjectives, now functioning as a special type of adverb. Many other expressions to do with how one feels operate in the same way.

Je jí smutno. Je mu úzko.	<i>She feels sad. He feels anxious.</i>
------------------------------	---

Just occasionally a 'true' adverb works like this too.

Je nám dobře/zle.	<i>We're feeling good/lawful.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------

*Zima* is a very special case, having progressed from 'winter' as a noun to 'cold' as an adverbial: *Je zima* (*It's cold*), to the 'sensation of cold' type of adverb: *Je mi zima* (*I am cold*).

The noun *tma* (*dark*) has also become an adverbial: *Je tam tma* (*It's dark in there*). The test is that in the past tense all of these sentences use the neuter form of the verb: *Bylo jí smutno*, *Bylo nám dobře*, *Bylo (nám) zima*, *Bylo (or Byla) tam tma*.

Several other forms in *-o* produce adverbs of place:

<b>vysoko</b> <i>high</i>	<b>hluboko</b> <i>deep</i>
<b>blízko</b> <i>near</i>	<b>nízko</b> <i>low</i>
<b>daleko</b> <i>far away</i>	<b>široko</b> <i>wide</i>

and time, or 'prevailing conditions'.

<b>dlouho</b> <i>(for a) long time</i>	<b>veselo</b> <i>merry, lively</i>
<b>draho</b> <i>marked by high prices</i>	

*Chalupa stojí vysoko na stráni.* *The cottage stands high up on the hillside.*

*Mluvil dlouho.* *He spoke for a long time.*  
*Bylo tam draho.* *Things there were expensive.*

### Formation of 'regular' adverbs

To express the meanings *highly* (praised), *deeply* (touched), *at great length*, *merrily*, *dearly* (bought), i.e. meanings conveyed (usually) by regularly formed English adverbs, use regularly formed Czech adverbs.

To form an adverb from an adjective, remove the adjective ending *-ý* or *-í* and add *-e* or *-ě*, depending on the final consonant. Final *-k-*, *-h-*, *-ch-* and *-r-* change to *-c-*, *-z-*, *-š-* and *-ř-*.

vysoký	vysoce	drahý	draze
hluboký	hluboce	měkký (soft)	měkce (softly)
dlouhý	dlouze (at great length)	strohý (strict, severe)	stroze (strictly)
veselý	vesele	plachý (timid)	plaše (timidly)
		dobrý	dobře

Adjectives ending in *-ský* and *-cký* have adverbs in *-sky* and *-cky*. You have met *český-česky* and others denoting 'how' (in what language) someone speaks, but it applied equally to, say, *logický-logicky* (*logically*). *Hezký* (*nice, good-looking*) similarly has *hezky* (*nicely*).

### 7 Word order: stressless words

There are so many items to be located in the second slot that they have to be ordered. The order is fixed:

If present, past-tense auxiliaries take absolute precedence, followed by *se* or *si*.

Umyl 'jsem 'se ve studené vodě.	<i>I washed in cold water.</i>
Koupili 'jsme 'si deštník.	<i>We bought (ourselves) an umbrella.</i>

After the reflexive, if present, comes any dative pronoun.

Dívala 'se 'mu přes rameno.	<i>She was looking over his shoulder.</i>
-----------------------------	---

*Mu*, and other datives occurring with the names of body parts or intimate belongings, denotes possession. If there is no reflexive the dative follows the auxiliary.

Koupili 'jsme 'jim auto.	<i>We bought them a car.</i>
--------------------------	------------------------------

Then come any other unstressed pronouns, usually accusative, rarely genitive, and, only in the case of *to*, the nominative.

Nechtěli 'jsme 'vám 'ho dát.	<i>We didn't want to give you it.</i>
------------------------------	---



Strašně <sup>2</sup>se <sup>4</sup>nás báli.

*They were terribly afraid of us.*

bát se (*to be afraid*) is followed by the genitive.

Moc <sup>2</sup>se <sup>3</sup>jim <sup>4</sup>nelíbilo.

*They didn't like it much.*

Líbit se (+ dat.) (*to be pleasing to*) is used to express intellectual or esthetic pleasure, as opposed to emotional, which uses mít rád. Here to is the subject, therefore it is in the nominative.

After all the unstressed pronouns you might hear one or other adverbs such as *prý*, *teda/tedy* (*so*), or *ale/však* (*though*). Finally one example to show the whole lot at work:

Bál jsem <sup>2</sup>se <sup>3</sup>ji <sup>4</sup>ho <sup>5</sup>ale dát.

*I was afraid to give her it though.*

Notice that it does not matter that the *jsem se go* with *bál* to form the past tense of *to be afraid*, while the *ji ho* are the indirect and direct objects of *dát*.

## Exercises

1 Jaké je počasí?



a



b



c



d



e



f

2 As an aid to conversation try to convert the following clichés and other weather comments into Czech:

- It looks like rain.
- I hope it doesn't rain tomorrow.
- My daughter's afraid of thunder.
- I don't like driving in fog.
- It was snowing all day yesterday.
- First it was raining cats and dogs, then the sun shone.
- The forecast says it will be cold and overcast.
- When the pressure rises I get a headache.
- What's the temperature outside? Four degrees.
- No it isn't, it's five degrees.
- The wind is blowing from the south, it's going to be warm.

3 Assume that each of these sentences follows on from something said before. First translate them into Czech, then change all the nouns (or whole noun phrases) into pronouns. (Remember to be sure of the gender of the noun to be replaced and watch out for word-order affected by the insertion of pronouns.)

- But Marie told Peter that she had already washed the car.
- I didn't like the concert.
- We shall visit the Smiths tomorrow.
- I cannot do without the dictionary.
- Tell us about your journey.
- First we'll try to put the books in the box.
- The Smiths confused the pubs.
- He won't buy tickets for Anna, but he will for Štěpán.
- It wasn't the neighbours my daughter gave the umbrella to.
- When did you see the exhibition (*výstava*)?

## Dialogue

The Navrátils are discussing a death in the neighbourhood.

- On** Kdy zemřel starý pan Ježek? Před víkendem nebo po něm?  
**Ona** Přece v pátek. Cestou na nákup jsme viděli stát před jeho domem sanitku.  
**On** A pohřeb měl už před dvěma dny, v pondělí?  
**Ona** Ne, to byl někdo jiný. Pan Ježek má pohřeb až za tři dny.  
**On** A půjdeš tam?  
**Ona** Ano, a ty?  
**On** Já nemůžu, před týdnem mi v práci řekli, že od čtvrtka za týden, čili zítra, mám jet do Bratislavy.  
*He looks at the clock.*  
**On** Už je tolik? Za deset minut přijde pan Smith. Mám ho zavést do práce. Bude mě tam zastupovat za mé nepřítomnosti.  
**Ona** A nemám ho snad taky vzít na ten pohřeb?!

sanítka = ambulance	ambulance
někdo jiný	someone else
má pohřeb až za tři dny	his funeral is in three days' time
pohřeb (pohřbu)	funeral
od čtvrtka za týden	on Thursday week
za týden	in a week's time
čili	or, that is



za deset minut	in ten minutes
zastupovat	replace, stand in for, represent
za mé nepřítomnosti	in my absence
za (+ gen.)	during
Nemám ho snad taky vzít	Am I supposed to take him
na ten pohřeb?!	to the funeral as well?!
pohřební ústav	funeral directors
ústav	institution, institute

viděli jsme stát před jeho domem sanitku we saw the ambulance outside his house

Už je tolik? (hodin is understood) Is it that late already?  
nepřítomnost (f, -i) absence (přítomnost = presence)

## Notes

### 8 'Before' and 'after'

It is important not to confuse two uses of *před* + instrumental. In one type it means *before*, as the opposite of *po* + locative *after*: *před válkou* (*before the war*), *po válce* (*after the war*), and, more crucially: *před druhou hodinou* (*before two o'clock*), *po druhé hodině* (*after two o'clock*).

In the other use, *před* will also translate as *before*, but only in past tense contexts, matching *ago* in present tense contexts. This means that *zemřel před rokem* may mean *he had died a year before* or *he died a year ago*. In this use the opposite is *za* + accusative.

Pohřeb měl/má za dva dny. *His funeral was two days later/is in two days' time.*

Similarly, and in contrast to the first type: *před dvěma hodinami* (*two hours ago*), *za dvě hodiny* (*in two hours' time*).

### 9 Za and telling the time

This *za* is what you need for telling the time between the quarters. The Czech for *ten past two* is *za pět minut čtvrt na tři* – Lit. 'in five minutes' time quarter on the way to three'. However, *půl třetí a pět minut* is just as likely as *za deset minut tři čtvrtě na tři* *twenty-five to three*.

Look at the clock now and work out the time in two different ways (do the same each time you revise this section).

### 10 Alternatives

You have previously met *nebo* (*or*). You use *nebo* when you are talking about distinct alternatives:

Čaj nebo kávu?	Tea or coffee?
Pojedete na pohřeb, nebo do Bratislavy?	Will you go to the funeral or to Bratislava?

However, when *or* just means saying the same or a similar thing but in different words, use *čili* (it often translates best as *in other words* or *that is*).

Nás šéf, čili Petr, jak mu říkám ...	Our boss, or Peter, as I call him ...
Prší, čili nemůžeme si hrát venku.	It's raining, that's to say we can't play outside.

To express strict alternatives use *buď ... nebo* (*either ... or*).

Dám si buď čaj nebo bezkofeinovou kávu, ale nic jiného.	I'll have either tea or decaffeinated coffee, but nothing else.
---	---

To deny or reject two or more alternatives use *ani ... ani* (*neither ... nor*).

Nechutná mi ani čaj, ani káva.	I don't like either tea or coffee.
Nepřišel ani Petr, ani Jan.	Neither Peter nor John came.

Note the repetition of the negative in the verb, and the use of the comma.

### 11 Alternatives with 'else'

Czech uses the part-word *jin-* to express *else*. The only full form of the word goes with *kdo* and *co* and their compounds: *někdo jiný* (someone else), *co jiného?* (what else?).

Notice that after *co* in the nominative or accusative *jiné* goes in the genitive. Other cases, and all cases of *jiný* with *kdo*, agree.

s něčím jiným                                 *with something else*  
u někoho jiného                               *at someone else's place*

Other *else* expressions are based on the matching question words:

<i>kde</i>	<i>where</i>	<i>jinak</i>	<i>in another way, otherwise</i>
(někde) <i>jinde</i>	<i>elsewhere</i>	<i>jinudy</i>	<i>another way, by another route</i>
<i>jindy</i>	<i>at another time</i>	<i>odjinud</i>	<i>from somewhere else</i>
<i>jinam</i>	<i>to another place</i>		

### 12 ?!

This combined punctuation mark denotes sarcasm or irony in the question. The tone is reinforced by the inclusion of *snad* (*perhaps, maybe*) and by the fact that the question is made in the negative.

### 13 dva/dvě – 'two'

Nominative/Accusative	dva (m) dvě (f, n)
Genitive/Locative	dvou
Dative/Instrumental	dvěma

The same forms are shared by *oba/obě* (*both, the two*).

Dal to dvěma cizincům.                     *He gave it to two foreigners.*  
Mezi oběma dcerami je velký             *There's a big age difference*  
věkový rozdíl.                               *between the two daughters.*  
Má chybu ve dvou větách.                 *He has a mistake in two*  
  *sentences.*  
Má chybu v obou větách.                    *He has a mistake in both*  
  *sentences.*

### 14 tři and čtyři – 'three' and 'four'

These two numerals present little new to learn, since they change like the plural of the *i*-declension nouns, with one exception each:

Nominative/Accusative	tři	čtyři
Genitive	tří	čtyř
Dative	třem	čtyřem
Instrumental	třemi	čtyřmi
Locative	o třech	o čtyřech

### 15 Before singular and plural ...

... there used to be special forms every time just two things were referred to. All that is left is a few irregular plural forms, which survive in words denoting parts of the body. The main ones are arms/hands, legs/feet, eyes and ears.

	Irregular plurals			
	<i>ruka</i> <i>(hand/arm)</i>	<i>noha</i> <i>(leg/foot)</i>	<i>oko</i> <i>(eye)</i>	<i>ucho</i> <i>(ear)</i>
Nominative/Accusative	ruce	nohy	oči	uši
Genitive	rukou	nohou	očí	uší
Dative	rukám	nohám	očím	uším
Instrumental	rukama	nohama	očima	ušima
Locative	rukou	nohou	očích	uších

Notice where these forms are like those of *dva*. When any of these four words is accompanied by an adjective in the instrumental plural, the adjective also ends in *-ma*, not *-mi*.

holýma rukama                                 *with bare hands (holý = bare)*  
mezi jejíma krásnýma očima                *between her beautiful eyes*

This even applies with 'four' in the expression

mezi čtyřma očima                             *in private, tête-à-tête*  
  (Lit. 'between four eyes')

Colloquially, and especially in contexts where arms and legs are not meant as body parts, the genitive *nohou* and locatives *rukou* and *nohou* may be replaced by the regular forms *noh*, *rukách* and *nohách*, respectively.

Rameno (*shoulder*) and koleno (*knee*) have regular plural forms, but also ramenu and kolenu in the genitive and locative.

Nesl ji na ramenu.

*He carried her on his shoulders.*

### Exercises

- 4 Answer the following questions according to the dialogue:
- Jak poznali Navrátilovi, že pan Ježek zemřel?
  - Kdo měl pohřeb v pondělí?
  - Kdo určitě bude na pohřbu pana Ježka?
  - Kde bude v tu dobu pan Navrátil?
  - Co bude dělat pan Smith za nepřítomnosti pana Navrátila?
  - Půjde pan Smith na pohřeb?
- 5 Look at the newspaper weather forecast below and then answer the questions that follow:

Dnes je neděle 13. dubna 2003  
 • Slunce vychází v 6.09 hodin a zapadá v 19.52 hodin, Měsíc vychází v 02.51 a zapadá v 12.19 letního času. • Bude oblačno až zataženo, občas déšť, na severu území déšť jen místy. Nejnižší teploty 4 st. C až nula, nejvyšší denní teploty 9 až 13 st. C. Teplota v 1000 m 5 st. C, východní až jihovýchodní vítr kolem 5m/s. • Rekordní teploty dne 13. dubna (od r. 1775 v pražském Klementinu): nejvyšší teplota 23,6 st. C v roce 1952, nejnižší teplota minus 3,2 st. C v roce 1986. Dlouhodobý teplotní normál je 8,7 st. Celsia. • Vyhledka na zítřek: V pondělí bude převládat oblačné až zatažené počasí, místy s občasným deštěm, na jihu a jihovýchodě i trvalejší srážky.

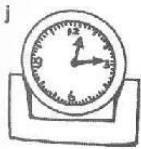
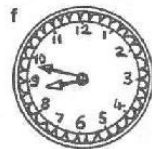
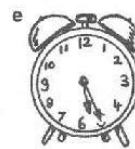
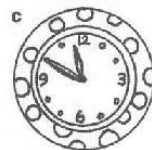
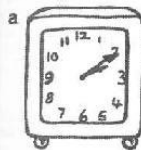
- What is the date?
- What happens at 12.19?
- What is the forecast as regards rain?
- Deduce what až means in this context.
- What is the significance of: 1775, 1952, 1986?

f Where would you prefer not to be on Monday (unless you love rain)?

g What is the forecast wind speed?

- 6 Delete from the items in brackets the ones which will not fit the sentence (the correct version is in the Key to the exercises):
- Dáte si kafe, nebo něco (jiné/jiného)?
  - Kdo (jiný/jiná) tu je kromě úředníků?
  - Rád jezdím do Prahy, ale jednou chci jet (někde jinde/někam jinam).
  - Tamtudy (*that way*) zloděj nešel, musel utéct (jinde/jinam/jinudy).
  - Koho (jiného/jinému) se můžu na to zeptat?
  - Teď nemám čas, budou muset přijít (jinde/jindy).
  - Libo, s nikým (jiným/jinými) tam nejdu!
  - Nikde (jinde/jiné) jsem neslyšel tak krásnou hudbu.
  - Dáte mi ten kufr, (jinak/jinam) vás prašším!

- 7 Tell the time in two different ways:



8 Draw in the hands on these watch faces to show:



a deset hodin a pět minut



b tři čtvrtě na sedm



c za sedm minut půl jedné



d za deset minut pět



e půl třetí



f čtvrt na dvě

9 Now try to work out the meaning of these idioms:

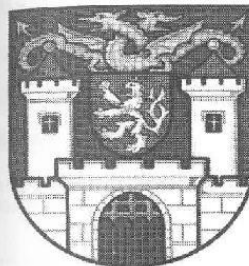
- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a Stát na vlastních nohou.    | e Nevěřit svým uším.          |
| b Plést se někomu pod nohama. | f Být až po uši zamilovaný.   |
| c Mít obě ruce levé.          | g Nechoď mi na oči!           |
| d Podat si ruce.              | h Sejde z očí, sejde z mysli. |

<b>plést se</b> to get in the way	<b>zamilovaný</b> in love
<b>levý</b> left	<b>scházet/sejít</b> to go down

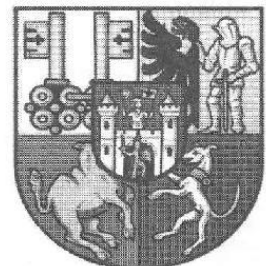
### i Czechs and their animals

The country's main heraldic symbol is the Bohemian lion with two tails (**dvouocasý lev**). Moravia has a red-and-white chequered eagle (**orel**) and Silesia a black eagle. Lions and eagles, but also bears (**medvěd**) and dragons (**drak**), abound on town and city coats of arms (Beroun, Jeseník, Trutnov, Kolín), but perhaps the oddest heraldic animals are the hedgehogs (**ježek**) on the arms of Jihlava (the town is called 'Iglau' in German and *Igel* is German for 'hedgehog'), and the greyhound (**chrt**) and camel (**velbloud**) on the complex arms of the city of Pilsen. The camel recalls when the Catholic citizens of Pilsen captured a camel from the besieging Hussites (revolutionary protestants) in the 1430s. Litovel has a simple design consisting of a

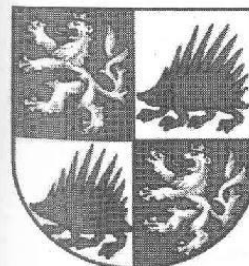
carp (**kapr**) and a pike (**štika**) recalling the wealth of fish in Czech rivers, while Budyně nad Ohří has hares (**zajíc**) and wild boar (**kanec**) – nothing to do with hunting, but borrowed from different old family crests. Since the 14th century, the city of Pardubice has had the front half of a charging horse, recalling the Lord of Pardubice's loss of his charger during the siege of Milan in the 12th century, but coincidentally it is a reminder that this is where the Czech Grand National (**Velká pardubická**) is held. (The English Grand National is known analogously as **Velká liverpoolská**.) The city of Brno, the capital of Moravia, is famous for (among other things) its 'dragon', which is to be seen in the form of a stuffed alligator hanging at the entrance to the Old City Hall. Several legends account for this curio, which has become famous enough to give its name – **Brněnský drak** – to one of the express trains running between Brno and Prague and to a grand prix motor race.



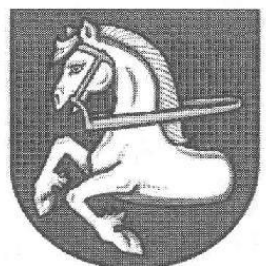
Arms of Kolín



Arms of Pilsen



Arms of Jihlava



Arms of Pardubice

# 14

## nehádejte se!

stop arguing!

- In this unit you will learn
- how to give orders
  - how to use some politeness formulae
  - how to express wishes

### Dialogue 1

Mrs Navrátilová is organizing her family – her son Jan, her daughter Líba and her husband Zdeněk – between breakfast and going out for the day.

- Navrátilová** Honzo, uklid ze stolu a ty, Líbo, umyj nádobí.  
**Líba** Ale mami, já jsem ho myla včera, ať to udělá Honzík.  
**Jan** Nebuď protivná, vidíš, že uklízím stůl. Jen to umyj, ať můžeme jet.  
**Navrátil** Nehádejte se. Já ti, Líbo, pomůžu, ty myj a já budu utírat.  
**Jan** To není fér, kdo bude pomáhat mně?  
**Navrátil** Uklidni se, Honzo! Vždyť všichni pomáháme mamince. Nezapomeň, že většinou to všechno dělá sama.  
**Navrátilová** Ještěže to někdo ví! Dělejme, nebo to neskončíme nikdy.  
**Líba** Kam vlastně jedeme? Já mám schůzku s Pepíkem – ve tři před radnicí. Budeme zpátky včas?  
**Jan** Nemůže Pepík jet s námi? Já ho mám rád, minule mi koupil zmrzlinu.  
**Navrátil** Ovšemže může, když se mu bude chtít. Zastavíme se pro něj cestou. Dobře, Líbo?  
**Líba** Dobře, budu docela ráda. Doufám, že bude chtít.  
**Navrátilová** Tak vidíte, už je všechno hotové, vezměte si kabáty a boty a pojedeme.

<b>uklid ze stolu</b>	<i>clear the table</i>
<b>uklízet/uklidit</b>	<i>to tidy up</i>
<b>umyj nádobí</b>	<i>wash the dishes</i>
<b>ať to udělá Honzík</b>	<i>let Johnny do it</i>
<b>nebuď protivná</b>	<i>don't be horrible</i>
<b>ať můžeme jet</b>	<i>let's get going</i>
<b>nehádejte se</b>	<i>stop arguing</i>
<b>hádat se</b>	<i>to argue, quarrel</i>
<b>ty myj a já budu utírat</b>	<i>you wash and I'll wipe</i>
<b>fér</b>	<i>(colloquial) fair</i>
<b>uklidni se</b>	<i>calm down</i>
<b>uklidňovat se/uklidnit se</b>	<i>to calm down, become calm</i>
<b>uklidňovat/uklidnit</b>	<i>to (make) calm</i>
<b>vždyť</b>	<i>after all</i>
<b>nezapomeň</b>	<i>don't forget</i>
<b>dělejme</b>	<i>let's get on</i>



to neskončíme nikdy	we'll never be finished
končit/s-	to finish
schůzka	date, appointment
radnice (f)	town hall
včas	in time, on time
minule	last time
zmrzlina	ice cream
zastavovat se/zastavit se	to stop
vezměte si kabáty	get your coats
kabát	coat

mami (domestic way children address their mother)  
 protivný *contrary, detestable, mean, peevish*  
 zapomínat/zapomenout (past zapomněl) *to forget*  
 maminka (used in the family context; opposite tatínek = Dad) Mum

## Notes

### 1 Giving orders

In the main, commands are expressed by forms called imperative. There are three main forms: corresponding to *ty*, any sense of *vy*, and *my*, depending on who the command is addressed to. The *my* forms are equivalent to English forms beginning *let's* ...

#### How to form the imperative

Start with the third person plural. Using the verbs appearing as commands in Dialogue 1 take:

uklidí, (u)myjí, budou, hádají se,  
 uklidní, zapomnou, dělají, vezmou

Two main patterns emerge, depending on whether there is one consonant or two before the final vowel. You can see two consonants in *uklidn-í* and *vezm-ou*. This type produces imperatives of the form:

ty	uklidni	vezmi
vy	uklidněte	vezměte
my	uklidněme	vezměme

Notice the change of vowel from *i* to *ě* between the singular and plural forms. And remember that *ě* will only appear in this form

if the stem ends in *d, t* or *n*, or *b, p, m* or *v*. Otherwise there will be no 'hook', as in the case of

myslet *mysl-í* *mysli/myslete/mysleme*

Where there is only one consonant before the final vowel, the imperatives take the form:

ty	umyj	dělej	uklid'	zastav
vy	umyjte	dělejte	uklid'te	zastavte
my	umyjme	dělejme	uklid'me	zastavme

The singular form has no ending at all, while the *you* and *we* forms end typically, as in the first type and in all the conjugations, in *-te* and *-me*.

Note: Three subsidiary rules:

a if the third person plural stem ends in *-aj-*, the *a* changes to *e*.

dělají *dělaj-* *dělej/dělejte/dělejme* (*do, make*)

b if the third person plural stem ends in *-n-*, *-d-*, or *-t-*, these consonants must be 'softened'.

zapomenou	zapomcn-	zapomeň/zapomeňte/ zapomeňme ( <i>forget</i> )
budou	bud-	bud'/bud'te/bud'me ( <i>be</i> )
letí	let-	let'/let'te/let'me ( <i>fly</i> )

c if the syllable before the final consonant is long, the vowel shortens in the imperative. (This type is not represented in the Dialogue.) As is often the case, shortening may change the vowel altogether.

vrátí	vrát-	vrať/vraťte/vraťme ( <i>return</i> )
rozpůlí	rozpůl-	rozpul/rozpulte/rozpulme ( <i>halve</i> )
koupí	koup-	kup/kupte/kupme ( <i>buy</i> )

#### What about aspect in commands?

Positive commands are based on perfective verbs – they seek to get something done. In the Dialogue this is represented by *uklid', umyj* and *uklidni se*.

However, if a positive command seeks to get someone to continue with an act begun, or about to be begun, then the imperfective is used, as in *myj* and *dělejme*.

Then, though it is not shown in the dialogue, if a positive command relates to an act that is to be performed regularly or in principle, the imperfective verb is used.

Učme se česky aspoň dvě hodiny denně.

*Let's study Czech at least two hours daily.*

In other words, much of what you learnt about the uses of the aspects applies in the imperative too.

### Negative commands

If you give a negative command you may be seeking to prevent something happening that is not yet happening; or to stop something happening that is already going on; or to issue a warning against an untoward event. So, if you wish to advise someone against buying something, you would say: **Nekupuj(te) to!** And if, like Mr Navrátil, you wish to stop an ongoing argument, you will again use the imperfective imperative and say: **Nehádejte se!** But if your command is more of a warning, e.g. *don't forget ...*, you would, like Mr Navrátil, say **Nezapomeň ...!**, based on the perfective. This type is necessary for the urgent type of warning contained in the *Mind you don't ...* formula:

Nespal si prsty.  
(*pálit/spálit to burn*)  
Nespadni pod autobus!

*Mind you don't burn your fingers.*  
*Mind you don't fall under a bus!*

### Commands based on 'be' and 'have'

As you already know, *být* and *mít* can only ever be imperfective. *Být* forms its imperatives from its future tense: *budou*; *bud-*: *buď/buďte/budme*.

Buďte tak hodný a kupte mi jeden lístek.

*Be so kind as to (Lit. and) buy me one ticket.*

*Mít*, however, is slightly irregular, having the forms *měj/mějte/mějme* (but remember the past tense *měl* to see a similarity). In fact, you will really only need *měj*, etc. in the farewell formula *Měj(te) se dobře (Cheerio!)*, and in various set phrases:

Měj(te) rozum.  
Mějte trpělivost.

*Be reasonable/sensible.*  
*Be patient.*

Obviously their literal meaning is 'have reason' and 'have patience'.

English uses far more imperatives based on *have*, as in *Have a sandwich*, or *Have the schnitzel*. If it is you making the offer, use *Vezmi si/vezměte si*, as in *Vezměte si sendvič*, but if it is a suggestion, for example as to what someone might buy or order,

it would be more usual to use *Dej(te) si*, as in *Dejte si řízek* – the imperative form of sentences met earlier (remember *dám si kávu* = *I'll have coffee*).

When you need an imperative, do not worry if it sounds too peremptory. You can always soften a command with *prosím* (or *prosím vás*) (*please*), but this is rarely necessary. Indeed to many Czechs the English seem over-deferential, with p's and q's all over the place. Requests that could be expressed as commands ('Pass me the salt') can always be toned down if you put them as questions, in both languages, so instead of saying *Podějte mi sůl* you could use *Podáte mi sůl?*

### 2 Ovšemže – 'Of course ...'

This expression is combined from *ovšem* (*of course*) and the conjunction *že*, amounting to 'of course it is the case that'. Compare the two versions of *of course*:

Ovšem nevím, jak to udělal.	<i>Of course, I don't know how he did it.</i>
Ovšemže nevím, jak to udělal.	<i>Of course I don't know how he did it.</i>

The first one is more apologetic, the second insistent.

### 3 Idioms with *chtít se*

*Chtít se* is an impersonal verb denoting a wish that is (semi-) involuntary: if *chtít* most often translates as *to wish/want*, *chtít se* is closer to *to feel like*. The person upon whom the feeling acts is expressed in the dative. Compare:

Pepík chce jet s námi.	<i>Pepík wants to go with us.</i>
Pepíkovi se chce jet s námi.	<i>Pepík feels like going with us.</i>

As an impersonal verb, *chtít se* is always in the singular, neuter in the past tense (*Pepíkovi se chtělo ...* as opposed to *Pepík chtěl*), and is usually followed by an infinitive.

### 4 Beginning/ending, starting/stopping

You saw earlier that the negative imperative may mean *stop doing something* (*nehádejte se*). However, there is a verb which itself means to stop (and is of course not limited to the

imperative). This is *přestávat/přestat* (*přestane*). Mr Navrátil could have said: *Přestaňte se hádat*. Note:

*Přestává pršet.* *The rain's stopping.*  
(Lit. it's stopping raining)  
*Loni přestal kouřit.* *He gave up smoking last year.*

The verb is always followed by an imperfective infinitive. The same thing applies to *začínat/začít* (*začne*, past *začal*) *to begin*, as in:

*Začalo pršet.* *It began to rain.*  
*Začal kouřit v patnácti letech.* *He began to smoke at 15.*

Where, however, *begin* and *end* are followed by nouns, the verbs are *začínat/začít* and *končit/s-* respectively. You can see the opposition in:

*Začal/přestal pracovat.* *He started/stopped working.*  
*Začal/skončil práci.* *He started/finished the/ his work.*

To express *continue* with verbs, use the adverb *dál* (*further*). The verb *pokračovat* (*to continue*) may be used either absolutely, as a verb of speaking ('and then there's the cost,' he continued), or using *v* + locative:

*Pracoval dál.* *He continued working.*  
*Pokračoval v práci.* *He continued (with) his work.*

## Exercises

1 Practise giving orders with the following imperative sentences:

- Do your shopping at the shop round the corner.
- Buy me an ice cream, please.
- Let's take our books back to the library.
- Always help old people across the street.
- Don't wash the best china in the dishwasher.
- Look! It's raining again.
- Tell me, please, where are the toilets?
- Be patient. Peter will be here soon.
- Read me that article, please.
- Don't sleep during the film!
- Do understand, I can't get there by Thursday.
- Think about us when we're gone.

<b>nakupovat</b>	<i>to shop</i>
<b>knihovna</b>	<i>library</i>
<b>myčka</b>	<i>dishwasher</i>
<b>nejlepší</b>	<i>the best</i>
<b>myslet na (+ acc.)</b>	<i>think of/about</i>
<b>porcelán</b>	<i>china, porcelain</i>

2 Interpret the following imperative forms, which you will hear or see frequently (you may use the Glossary or a dictionary; make sure to note both aspects of any new verbs):

a	<i>podejte mi ...</i>	f	<i>sedněte si</i>
b	<i>obraťte se na ...</i>	g	<i>neparkujte před výjezdem</i>
c	<i>uschovejte v suchu</i>	h	<i>přestaňte</i>
d	<i>neváhejte</i>	i	<i>nemluvme už o tom</i>
e	<i>přejděte na druhý chodník</i>	j	<i>vyplněný formulář vraťte do ...</i>

## Dialogue 2

Mr Smith is phoning the Navrátils about his weekend visit.

- Navrátil** (*picking up the phone*) Haló, Navrátil.  
**Smith** Dobrý den, tady Smith.  
**Navrátil** Její, dobrý den. Tak kdy přijedete?  
**Smith** Dojedu na vaši stanici asi v půl sedmé.  
**Navrátil** Dobře, přijdu vám naproti.  
**Smith** To není třeba. Nechodte, já trefím. Vždyť jsem u vás už jednou byl.  
**Navrátil** Ale ano, stejně si potřebuju koupit Večerník a cigarety – právě mi došly.  
**Smith** Ale já vám je můžu koupit cestou. To přece nic není.  
**Navrátil** To ne, neobtěžujte se, já se rád dostanu na chvíli ven. Jen přijďte. Žena se na vás těší.  
**Smith** Dobře. Tak na shledanou.



*On their arrival back at the flat.*

- Smith** Dobrý den, paní Navrátilová. (*hands her some flowers*) To je pro vás.  
**Navrátilová** Ty jsou krásné! Děkuju! Jak se máte? (*To her husband.*) Pomoz panu Smithovi s kabátem.

Smith Nemusíte, děkuju. Už to je.  
Navrátilová Tak už poďte dál. Večeře bude asi za hodinu.

přijdu vám naproti	I'll come to meet you
to není třeba	that isn't necessary
třeba	(see below)
já trefím	I know the way
trefit	to find the way, to hit a target
Večerník	the Prague evening paper
právě mi došly	I've just run out
to ne	oh no (don't even think of it)
obtěžovat	to bother, annoy (someone)
jen přijďte	just come
už to je	it's done, I've managed (etc.)
tak už poďte dál	do come along in

jej interjection denoting pleasant surprise

stanice (f) (bus) stop, (underground) station

vždyť jsem u vás už jednou byl after all I've been at your place before

ale ano here, of course I will (come out to meet you)

to přece nic není it's nothing, I can do that easily (etc.)

obtěžovat se to go to the trouble, trouble, bother oneself

pomoz singular imperative of pomoci help

## Notes

### 5 Semi-empty 'politeness'

If you read Dialogue 2 closely, you will pick up a variety of phrases which are easier to acquire by example than by any reference to dictionaries and so on. These are, in particular, such polite rejections as *To není třeba*, *To ne* and *Neobtěžujte se*; the assurances *To přece nic není* and *Už to je*; and the phrase *ale ano* to contradict a negative. Notice too the occurrences of *jen* and *už*, which are not exactly the same as *jenom* (*only*) and *už* (*already*).

## 6 More imperatives

a The imperative forms of *jít* do not fully fit the rules given in Note 1. The first one you will meet is *pojď/pojďte* (*come*) and *pojďme* (*come on, let's go*). This, and *přijď/přijďte* (*come*), have the short type of ending despite the two consonants. Other compounds of *jít* behave 'normally': *zajdi/zajděme* (*pop (round) to*), *přejdi/ přejděte* (*cross*).

b *Come* versus *go*:

*Come!* to or *with* the speaker, here and now, is expressed by *pojď/pojďte*. *Come!* at a later time is expressed by *Přijď/přijďte* (notice how they appear in Dialogue 2). *Go!* (i.e. away from the speaker) is based on the present tense form of *jít*: *jdou – jd-*, giving *jdí/jděte*, as in *Jděte k doktorovi* (*Go to the doctor*).

Both *don't come* and *don't go* are expressed by the negative imperative of *chodit* (also seen in the Dialogue). Generally use the indeterminate verbs of motion (*nosit*, *vozit*, *běhat*, etc.) to form negative commands.

*Pojďte dál!* (see *dál* above) is the normal way of saying *Come in*, but is often shortened, when the person at the door is not visible, to *Dál!*

Note the expression of mild disbelief *Ale jdi!*, *Ale jděte!* (*Get away!*, *You don't say!*). It can also be used in reproof as *Don't be silly!*

c Some other verbs have irregular imperatives.

stát (stoji) to stand	stůj/stůjte! Stop!
povědět (conjugates like vědět) to tell	pověz/povězte (similarly for odpovědět reply)
pomoci to help	pomoz/pomozte (should you ever need to shout for help, however, use the noun pomoci!)
vidět to see	technically has viz/vizte, but this is only used in such (written) contexts as viz strana 634 (see page 634).
Normal English commands using see will probably in fact mean look, and so be based on dívat se/po-	

povídat/povědět	to say, tell
povídat si s někým	to chat to someone
odpovídat/odpovědět	to reply

## 7 Imperatives/wishes: third person

This type of sentence is illustrated in Dialogue 1.

Ať to udělá Honzík. *Let Honzík do it.*

This construction with **ať** can actually be used in all persons, chiefly to express wishes:

Ať vás tady už nikdy neuvidím. *May I never see you here again. (i.e. Don't let me ever see you here again.)*

It also occurs in various formulae: **ať žije X** (*long live X*). Notice that **ať** combines with ordinary present or future tense forms.

## 8 Other uses of ať

Systematically **ať** occurs with words ending in **-koli**, equivalents to English words beginning **any-** or ending in **-ever**:

Ať vám to řekl kdokoli, je to nesmysl.	<i>Whoever told you that, it's nonsense.</i>
Ať přijde kdykoli, bude už pozdě.	<i>Whenever he comes, it will be (too) late.</i>
Ať budeš mluvit s kýmkoli, stejně ti to nikdo neřekne.	<i>Whoever you talk to, nobody will tell you anyway.</i>

Similar words in the series are:

cokoli	<i>anything/whatever</i>
kdekoli	<i>anywhere/wherever</i>
kamkoli	<i>(to) anywhere/wherever</i>
kudykoli	<i>any way/whichever way</i>
odkudkoli	<i>from anywhere/wherever from</i>
jakýkoli	<i>any/whatever</i>
kterýkoli	<i>any/whichever</i>
jakkoli	<i>anyhow/however</i>

A related set of formulae dispense with **ať**, placing the **-koli** at the beginning.

Kudykoli půjdete, najdete poštu. *Whichever way you go you'll find a post office.*

Note also the following formulae with **ať**:

Ať si myslí co si myslí, ...	<i>Whatever he thinks, ...</i>
Ať se stane co se stane, ...	<i>Whatever happens, ... (i.e. come what may)</i>

Finally, get used to seeing the **-koli** series as equivalents to **any-**:

Kdokoli vám to řekne.	<i>Anyone will tell you.</i>
Kup to kdekoli.	<i>Buy it anywhere.</i>

Of course, you must not confuse these with the **any-** words that come in English negative sentences: (*I haven't eaten anything today*) **Dnes jsem nic nejedl**, which, in Czech, will always begin with **ni-**:

Neříkej to nikomu. *Don't tell anybody.*

And the **any-** words in English questions are likely to begin **ně-** in Czech:

Máte něco na bolení hlavy? *Have you anything for a headache?*

Compare:

Víno koupíte <b>kdekoli</b> .	<i>You can buy wine anywhere.</i>
Víno nekoupíte <b>nikde</b> .	<i>You won't buy wine anywhere.</i>
Koupím tady <b>někde</b> víno?	<i>Can I buy wine anywhere here?</i>

Notice how the future perfective may imply possibility, as well as just future time.

## 9 The vocative case

On pp. 35 and 64 you met references to the vocative, the case of direct address. Dialogue 1 in this lesson contains a number of instances of the vocative in use. The time has come to systematize these forms.

Hard masculine nouns take the ending **-e**, as in **pane, doktore, profesore, inženýre, Alane**.

Hard feminine nouns and masculine nouns that end in **-a** take the ending **-o**, as in **starosto, Líbo, Honzo**.

All these have occurred previously. Two other types need to be learnt:

- the ending -u goes with hard masculine nouns ending in k, h, g, and ch, and the noun *syn*:

<b>chirurg</b> :	<b>chirurgu</b>	surgeon
<b>Pepík</b> :	<b>Pepíku</b>	Joe
<b>vrah</b> :	<b>vrahu</b>	murderer
<b>hoch</b> :	<b>hochu</b>	boy
<b>syn</b> :	<b>synu</b>	(my) son

- the ending -i goes with all soft masculine nouns except those ending in -cc and -ce, which follow their own patterns:

<b>král</b> :	<b>králi</b>	(oh) king
<b>muž</b> :	<b>muži</b>	man, husband
<b>otec</b> :	<b>otče</b>	father
<b>správce</b> :	<b>správce</b>	caretaker

There are three exceptions to the above:

- in hard masculines that end in -r preceded by a consonant the ending is -e, but r becomes ř: Petr: Petře (contrast this with doktor etc. above);
- Bůh (*God*) has Bože! and is common in such exclamations as Bože můj! (*Goodness me!*);
- člověk (*man, person*) has člověče, which is used chiefly as an 'empty' vocative, similar to 'mate' or Caribbean English 'man' and similar.

No other classes of words have a distinctive vocative form, that is, no soft feminine, no neuter, no plural, no adjectival and no pronoun declension. In all these instances the vocative shares the same form as the nominative, as in paní Navrátilová in Dialogue 2.

## Exercises

- 3 Find suitable ways of requiring someone to ...
- buy you a stamp at the post office,
  - bring the book back in time,

- come in; he needn't take his shoes off,
- translate this letter for you,
- stop talking aloud (*nahlas*),
- put the light on for you, please (*rozsvěcovat* or *rozsvěcet/rozsvítit*),
- be so kind as to and help you fill in (*vyplňovat/vyplnit*) the form,
- go away,
- not to leave the keys on the table,
- not to come towards you when he's got a cold like that.

- 4 Now be dogmatic and assertive. Translate the following into Czech.

- Whatever the weather, we're going out.
- Whoever told you that is a fool.
- Wherever you go, send me a postcard (*pohlednice*).
- Wherever you got that from, they cheated you (*šidit/o-*).
- I'll study from (use *podle*) any book in any language.
- Don't speak about this to anyone.
- Who asked if I needed anything?
- Whenever the sun shines we will play (*hrát si*, see p. 67) outside.
- Have you any postcards with pictures of the river?
- Don't come to me with your problems!

## 1 Proverbs based on imperatives

- Kuj železo, dokud je žhavé.** (*kovat to forge; železo iron; žhavý red-hot*) – not only *Strike while the iron's hot*, but also *Make hay while the sun shines*.
- Něfkej hop, dokud nepřeskočíš** (*hop interjection accompanying a hop, here implying an expression of satisfaction; přeskakovat/přeskočit to jump across*). (Equivalent to *There's many a slip twixt cup and lip* or *Don't count your chickens ...*)
- Nechval dne před večerem** (*chválit/po- to praise; dne genitive of den day, in an old construction which used the genitive case after a negative*). (Equivalent to *If you sing before breakfast, you'll cry before night*, or equally good for not counting chickens.)
- Napřed měř, potom řež** (*měřit/z- to measure; řezat [řeže] to saw, cut*). (Roughly equivalent to *Look before you leap*.)
- Nebud' zvědavý, budeš brzy starý** (*brzy soon, early*) (Equivalent in force to *Curiosity killed the cat*.)



# 15

Kdybych věděla,  
že přijдете ...  
if I knew you were coming ...

- In this unit you will learn
- how to express vain wishes using the conditional
  - how to state actual and theoretical preferences
  - how to form indirect commands
  - how to express 'purpose'

## Dialogue 1

Mr and Mrs Smith have arrived at the Navrátils' flat unannounced. Mr Navrátil has just opened the door.

- Navrátil  
Mr Smith** Jej, dobrý den. To jsou k nám hosté! Nezlobte se, že jsme přišli jen tak bez ohlášení. Rozhodli jsme se tady zastavit teprve před hodinou. Z toho si nic nedělejte, jen pojdte dál!
- Navrátil  
Mrs Smith** Ano, kdybychom se rozhodli dřív, určitě bychom vám dali vědět.
- Navrátilová** (*coming to the door*) Ach, dobrý den. To je milé překvapení. Pojdte dál.
- Mrs Smith  
Navrátilová** Děkuju. Škoda, že jsem nevěděla, že vás dnes uvidíme. Kdybych věděla, že přijдете, upekla bych dort.
- Mr Smith** My jsme s tou možností dokonce počítali: dort jsme koupili cestou – pro každý případ. Neradi bychom vás přivedli do rozpaků!
- Navrátil** Ale to jste nemuseli! Já bych skočil tady do cukrárny a bylo by to.
- Mrs Smith** Nevadí, už jsme tady, dort taky. Hlavně jestli na nás máte čas. Jindy bychom už nemohli přijít, aspoň ne spolu.
- Navrátilová  
Mr Smith** Jak to? Stalo se něco? Žna čeká delší dobu na operaci a najednou jsme dostali zprávu, že musí ve čtvrtek do nemocnice ...
- Mrs Smith** a kdybych nešla teď, kdo ví, dokdy bych musela ještě čekat. Nejde o nic vážného, ale to čekání je protivné.
- Navrátil** Měli bychom váš odjezd oslavit – aspoň trochu. Můžete pít alkohol?

<b>zlobit se/roz-</b>	<i>to be/get angry</i>
<b>jen tak</b>	<i>just like that</i>
<b>bez ohlášení</b>	<i>unannounced</i>
<b>zastavovat se/zastavit se</b>	<i>to stop; to call in</i>
<b>teprve</b>	<i>(in time expressions) only</i>
<b>dělat si něco z (+ gen.)</b>	<i>to make an issue of</i>
<b>kdybychom se rozhodli</b>	<i>if we had decided</i>
<b>dali bychom vám vědět</b>	<i>we would have let you know</i>
<b>dát někomu vědět</b>	<i>to let someone know</i>
<b>překvapení</b>	<i>surprise</i>
<b>kdybych věděla</b>	<i>if I knew</i>
<b>upekla bych</b>	<i>I would (have) bake(d)</i>

počítali jsme s tou možností	dort	cake (strictly <i>gâteau</i> , <i>torte</i> )
počítat s		<i>we allowed for that possibility</i>
možnost (-i)		<i>to reckon with, allow for possibility</i>
pro každý případ		<i>just in case, for any eventuality</i>
případ		<i>case, event(uality)</i>
ale to jste nemuseli		<i>but you needn't have</i>
já bych skočil		<i>I would pop</i>
skákat (skáče)/skočit		<i>to jump (I)</i>
cukrárna		<i>confectioner's, cake shop</i>
a bylo by to		<i>and that would be that</i>
a je to		<i>and/so that's that</i>
nevadí		<i>never mind, it doesn't matter</i>
vadí		<i>to matter</i>
už		<i>here, at this stage</i>
jak to?		<i>how come?</i>
delší dobu		<i>for some time</i>
delší comparative of dlouhý		<i>long (i.e. longer, longish)</i>
operace (f)		<i>operation</i>
nemocnice (f)		<i>hospital</i>
kdybych nešla		<i>if I didn't go</i>
dokdy bych musela čekat		<i>until when I would have to wait</i>
dokdy		<i>until/by when</i>
nejde o nic vážného		<i>it isn't anything serious</i>
jit o (+ acc.)		<i>to be a matter/question of</i>
vážný		<i>grave, serious</i>
čekání		<i>waiting</i>
mít (in conditional)		<i>ought, should</i>
odjezd		<i>departure (by transport)</i>

to jsou k nám hosté! a greeting formula registering pleasant surprise at the arrival of visitors

nezlobte se, že jsme přišli jen tak do forgive us for turning up just like that

rozhodovat se/rozhodnout se to make up one's mind, to decide

z toho si nic nedělejte don't worry about it, think nothing of it

rozpaky (pl) embarrassment, awkwardness, uncertainty

neradí bychom vás přivedli do rozpaků we wouldn't like to embarrass you

přivádět/přivést někoho do rozpaků to cause someone embarrassment

hlavně jestli máte na nás čas	<i>the main thing is if you've got time for us</i>
jindy bychom už nemohli přijít	<i>we couldn't come at any other time</i>
měli bychom váš odjezd oslavit	<i>we ought to celebrate your going</i>
slavit/oslavit	<i>to celebrate (imperfective also oslavovat)</i>

## Notes

### 1 Unreal states of affairs/the conditional

The conditional is equivalent to English forms containing *would* as in 'I would pop to the cake shop'. (The *would* in the 'future in the past' – *he said he would come* – or expressing regular repetition in the past – *they would do the washing on Mondays* – are different.)

In Czech, it is formed from the past tense (those forms ending in -l, etc.), accompanied by the conditional auxiliary, in the place of the past-tense auxiliary – like, say, *would have* (spoken) in place of *had* (spoken). The conditional auxiliary conjugates according to person and follows the same word-order rules as the past-tense auxiliary. The forms, here illustrated with *dělat*, are:

dělal/-a bych	<i>I would make</i>	dělal/-a byste	<i>you would make (singular)</i>
dělal/-a bys	<i>you would make (familiar)</i>	dělali/-y byste	<i>you would make (plural)</i>
dělal/-a/-o by	<i>he/she/it would make</i>	dělali/-y/-a by	<i>they would make</i>
dělali/-y bychom	<i>we would make</i>		

Thus you have seen, in Dialogue 1:

Já bych skočil (or Skočil bych) do cukrárny.	<i>I would pop into the cake shop.</i>
My bychom nemohli (or Nemohli bychom) přijít.	<i>We couldn't come.</i>
Bylo by to.	<i>That would be that.</i>

One common formula using the conditional is:

To by bylo dobré. *That would be good.*  
To by bylo lepší. *That would be better.*

Individual verbs may call for individual translation, such as *měli bychom* (váš odjezd oslavit) *we should/ought to (celebrate your leaving)*. This is the conditional of *mít* as a modal verb. Note also:

Neradi bychom vás přivedli do rozpaků. *We wouldn't like/want to embarrass you.*

## 2 Theoretical preferences: 'I would rather ...'

To state an actual preference, combine *raději* (*rather*) with the verb in the same way that you have used *rád* previously:

Píšu raději na psacím stroji. *I prefer writing on the typewriter.*

If the preference is only theoretical use *raději* and the conditional:

Raději bych psal na psacím stroji. *I would rather write on the typewriter.*  
Petr by to raději zaplatil sám. *Peter would rather pay for it himself.*

When both options are mentioned use *raději* with the conditional and the conjunction *než* (*than*). *Mít raději* is another way of saying *to prefer*. Compare the following:

(Non-conditional) Mám raději kočky než psy. *I prefer cats to dogs.*

(Conditional) Měl bych raději kočku než psa. *I would prefer a cat to a dog.*

Just as with *mít rád* (*to like*) this construction can extend to other verbs:

Šel bych raději do divadla než do kina. *I'd rather go to the theatre than the cinema.*

## 3 'If'-clauses/conditional

This is the kind of sentence that begins in English 'If I were ... would ...', 'If I had ..., ... would ...' or other *ifs* apparently in combination with the past tense: 'If I knew you were coming ... would ...'.

In Czech, the *if*-clause begins with the word *kdyby*, which is actually the third-person form and has to be changed, like the conditional auxiliary, according to person. The endings of this conjugating conjunction (an odd phenomenon!) are the same as for the auxiliary. Again, in the Dialogue, you have seen:

Kdybychom se rozhodli dřív, dali bychom vám vědět. *If we had decided earlier, we would have let you know.*  
Kdybych věděla, že přijдете, upekla bych dort. *If I knew you were coming I would have baked a cake.*  
Kdybych nešla teď, kdo ví, dokdy bych musela čekat. *If I didn't go now, who knows how long I'd have to wait.*

To these we could add:

Koupil by si nové auto, kdyby měl na to peníze. *He would buy a new car if he had the money.*  
Kdybyste tak nekouřil, nekašlal byste tolik. *If you didn't smoke like that, you wouldn't cough so much.*

## 4 *teprve* - 'as late as'

This is a time adverb which can often be replaced by *až*. It is used where the sense is 'as late as':

Ameriku objevili Evropané *teprve* (až) v šestnáctém století. *The Europeans only discovered America in the 16th century.*

It also denotes a critical first occurrence in other linear sequences:

Ptali se všech; *teprve* Petr znal správnou odpověď. *They were asking everybody; Peter was the first to know the right answer.*

It does not mean *Peter alone and no others*.

## 5 *Jít + o* and the accusative: 'to be about ...'

This very common idiomatic construction is best translated by *to be*, although sometimes other expressions are needed to convey it.

Nejde o nic vážného. *It's nothing serious* (Dialogue).  
Jde o jeho zdraví. *It's (a question of) his health.*  
Šlo o lidské životy. *Human lives were at stake.*

O mě nejde.

*It's not me I'm worried about.*

O to nešlo.

*That wasn't the point.*

Jde o to, jestli...

*The question is whether ...*

In many such instances you may meet **běží** (běželo) replacing jde (šlo).

Notice that when the party affected by the concern needs to be expressed, the dative case has to be used:

Jde mi o jeho zdraví.

*It's his health I'm concerned about.*

Vládě jde o to, jak ...

*The government is concerned about how ...*

kouřit	to smoke
kašlat	to cough
Evropan	European
objevovat/objevit	to discover
století	century
správný	right, correct
odpověď	reply, response
lidský	human
život (gen. -a)	life
vláda	government

## Exercises

- Make up questions and answers stating your preferences in the way suggested: Co máte raději, brambory nebo knedlíky? or: Máte raději brambory nebo knedlíky? Mám raději knedlíky než brambory.
  - Kam chodíte raději, do kina nebo do divadla?
  - Komu kupujete dárky raději, dětem nebo rodičům?
  - Kde byste seděli raději, vpředu (*at the front*) nebo vzadu (*at the back*)?
  - Máš raději Petra nebo Janu?
  - Šel byste raději do parku nebo k řece?
  - Budete platit raději v korunách nebo v dolarech?
  - Jak byste platil raději, v librách nebo v korunách?
  - Kde byste parkoval raději, na ulici nebo na parkovišti (*car park*)?

- Šla bys tam raději sama nebo s Milošem?  
Měli by to koupit raději za týden nebo teď?

- Read the information about each person and their jobs. Make up sentences to explain what they would rather be. The first one is done for you.

Kdo?	Jaký je?	Čím je?	Čím by byl raději?
a Jan	velmi seriózní	taxikář	knihovnik
b Marie	ochotný každému pomáhat	v domácnosti	učitelka
c Štěpán	vtipný	televizní hlasatel	komik
d Radek	energický	programátor	horolezec
e Josef	hudebně nadaný	fotbalista	dirigent
f Sofie	krásný	pišařka	modelka
g 'já'	líný	šofér	ředitel

- Jan je velmi seriózní. Zatím (*for the time being*) je taxikářem, ale raději by byl knihovníkem.

seriózní	serious, earnest
taxikář	cab driver
knihovnik	librarian
vtipný	witty
hlasatel	announcer
komik	comedian
energický	energetic
programátor	(computer) programmer
horolezec	climber
hudebně nadaný	musical
nadaný	talented
dirigent	conductor
pišařka	typist
modelka	model
líný	lazy
šofér	driver
ředitel	manager

3 Supply answers to the questions using the suggestions in brackets.

- a O co jde? (počasí, přednáška, Marie, my, všechno)  
 b O co jim jde? (peníze, dovolená, příští schůze, nový pas)  
 c O co vám jde? (kariéra, ta zpráva v novinách, zdraví, naše návštěva)  
 d O co jde panu Smithovi? (jeho zavazadla, večere, dárek pro sousedku, práce v laboratoři)  
 e Komu jde o nový návrh? (Mr Smith, Miss Šetck, the director, the whole company [use podnik], us)

## ▶ Dialogue 2

Continuation of the previous dialogue.

- Mrs Smith** Snad ano. Doktor mi nikdy neřekl, abych nepila. Ale já stejně moc nepiju, jen bych nechtěla, abyste se všichni kvůli mně omezovali.
- Navrátil** Nebojte se. My se nedáme. A ani o to nejde.
- Navrátilová** Ale Zdeňku, radila bych ti, abys mnoho nepil, zvláště kdybys je měl odvézt zpátky do hotelu.
- Mr Smith** To v žádném případě nemusí. V nejhorším případě bychom jeli taxíkem, ale myslím, že stačí metro.
- Navrátil** Tak vy vlastně letíte zítra, abyste mohla být v nemocnici ve čtvrtek.
- Mrs Smith** Ano, nemám na vybranou. Doporučili mi, abych přišla.
- Navrátilová** Tak Zdeňku, ty bys ji mohl odvézt ráno na letiště, ne?  
**Navrátil** To bych mohl, a pana Smithe taky, aby ji mohl vyprovodit.
- Mr Smith** To opravdu není třeba, já ji tam dovezu letištním autobusem, aby určitě přijela na letiště včas.
- Navrátil** Ne, ne, já vás tam hodím, stejně jsem měl být zítra doma. Jen buďte klidní, znám šikovnou cestu od vašeho hotelu na letiště. Pojeďte raději se mnou.
- Mrs Smith** Tak děkujeme mnohokrát, jste velmi laskaví.
- Navrátilová** Abys to tedy, Zdeňku, s dnešním pitím nepřeháněl. Budeš muset zítra vstávat s jasnou hlavou!
- Mrs Smith** Vidíte, přece vás omezujeme. To mě mrzí.
- Navrátil** Nemějte strach, paní Smithová. Nic nebudeme přehánět. Hlavně abyste si nemysleli, že já jsem alkoholik! Mně stačí teď nějaký aperitiv, sklenička vína při večeři a třeba kapka koňaku potom.

<b>omezovat (se)/omezit (se)</b>	<i>to limit, restrict (oneself)</i>
<b>kvůli mně</b>	<i>on my account, because of me</i>
<b>nebojte se</b>	<i>don't worry</i>
<b>bát se (boji se) (+gen.)</b>	<i>to be afraid (of)</i>
<b>dávat se/dát se + infinitive</b>	<i>to let oneself be -ed</i>
<b>ani o to nejde</b>	<i>that's not the issue</i>
<b>radit/po- (+ dat.) aby ...</b>	<i>to advise (someone) to ...</i>
<b>to v žádném případě nemusí</b>	<i>he needn't (do that) at all</i>
<b>v nejhorším případě</b>	<i>if the worst comes to the worst</i>
<b>nejhorší</b>	<i>worst</i>
<b>případ</b>	<i>case, event</i>
<b>nemít na vybranou</b>	<i>to have no option, alternative</i>
<b>doporučili mi, abych přišla</b>	<i>they recommended me to come</i>
<b>aby ji mohl vyprovodit</b>	<i>so that he can see her off</i>
<b>vyprovázet/vyprovodit</b>	<i>to see off</i>
<b>to opravdu není třeba</b>	<i>there's really no need</i>
<b>já vás tam hodím</b>	<i>I'll drop you there</i>
<b>buďte klidní</b>	<i>don't worry</i>
<b>klidný</b>	<i>calm</i>
<b>šikovný</b>	<i>clever, useful, handy</i>
<b>přehánět/přehnat</b>	<i>to exaggerate, overdo</i>
<b>přece</b>	<i>here, after all</i>
<b>to mě mrzí</b>	<i>I am sorry, I do regret that</i>
<b>nemějte strach!</b>	<i>never fear!</i>
<b>strach</b>	<i>fear</i>
<b>mně stačí (+ nom.)</b>	<i>I'll make do with</i>
<b>při večeři</b>	<i>over dinner</i>
<b>kapka</b>	<i>drop, also drip</i>
<b>koňak</b>	<i>cognac, brandy</i>

**snad ano** *possibly, probably, I should think so*  
**doktor mi neřekl, abych nepila** *the doctor hasn't told me not to drink*  
**nechtěla bych, abyste se omezovali** *I wouldn't like you to limit yourselves*  
**my se nedáme** *we won't let ourselves be (limited)*  
**radila bych ti, abys mnoho nepil** *I'd advise you not to drink much*  
**letíte zítra, abyste mohla ...** *you're flying tomorrow so that you can ...*  
**dovezu ji tam, aby přijela včas** *I'll take her so that she arrives on time*

**házet/hodit** to throw, (colloquial = also) to drop someone somewhere by car  
**abys to s plitím nepřehánějí!** You'd better not overdo the drinking  
**hlavně aby ...** the main thing is that you should ...  
**sklenička** (diminutive of sklenice f.) glass

## Notes

### 6 aby – 'that I/you/we ...'

This little word, which changes according to person in exactly the same way as *kdyby*, does several related jobs, all illustrated in Dialogue 2.

a Advising, telling, recommending or requesting someone to do something.

If you say: 'Come on time', this can, depending on the circumstances, be interpreted as advice, an order, a request or merely a recommendation. The same would apply to a Czech command if expressed in the imperative. However, you can specify what is really meant by using the verbs that exist for the purpose:

radit/po- (advise)

říkat/říct (and others having the same basic meaning) (tell)

prosít/po- (to request)

doporučovat/doporučit (recommend)

These are then followed by a clause beginning with *aby* in the appropriate person-form and containing the past-tense form of the verb – the part that ends in -l. In Dialogue 2 you have the example:

Radil bych ti, abys mnoho nepil.

*I'd advise you not to drink too much.*

which, to use an old-fashioned style of English, amounts to: *I advise you that you not drink too much.*

b Reporting on the advice of others.

The same construction is especially common in the third persons, where it is equivalent to an 'indirect command', a

reported version of what someone else has bidden or recommended or advised and so forth. There are a couple of these in the Dialogue:

Doktor mi neřekl, abych nepila. *The doctor didn't tell me not to drink.*

Doporučili mi, abych přišla. *They recommended me to come ('that I come').*

c Wanting and wishing.

If someone simply wants to do something, the verb *chtít* is enough, followed by an infinitive:

Chce si koupit chleba. *He wants to buy some bread.*

But if someone wants someone else to do something, you need, again, an *aby*-clause:

Chce, abych koupil chleba. *He wants me to buy some bread.*

The more formal verb *přát si* (*přeje si*) to wish works similarly:

Nepřejeme si, aby tady kouřili. *We do not wish them to smoke here.*

The same construction applies when *chtít* is used in the conditional, when it often translates as 'would like':

Nechtěla bych, abyste se omezovali. *I wouldn't like you to limit yourselves.*

This is the basis of some politely formulated sentence types such as:

Chtěl bych (or Já bych chtěl) ... *I would like ...*

followed by a noun, an infinitive or an *aby*-clause. Note also the way of politely offering to do something:

Nechtěl byste, abych ..? *Would you like me to ..?*

Some wishes, like the warnings below, may be expressed by an *aby* clause on its own (often with the addition of *už* to denote urgency):

Už aby tu byli! *I wish they'd hurry up!*

Folk idiom is full of such wishes; you may hear:

Abý ho čert vzal. *May the devil take him!*

Abý jí husa kopl! *May a goose kick her!*



(the latter meaning: 'What a nuisance she can be sometimes', 'Why did she have to go and do that?' or some other expression of annoyance).

#### d Warning.

The **aby** construction may follow the verbs *varovat* (to warn) and the bureaucratic *upozorňovat/upozornit* (to advise, draw someone's attention), notably when they have the force of a near-command, as opposed to a warning for information:

Varuji vás, abyste nezlobili.  
Zdáte se upozorňujeme, aby  
formuláře odevzdali trojmo  
a v češtině.

*I warn you not to be naughty.  
Applicants are advised to  
submit their forms in  
triplicate and in Czech.*

However, many gentle admonitions may be expressed by the **aby** construction on its own, as (from Dialogue 2):

Abys to s pitím nepřeháněl.  
*You'd better not overdo the  
drinking.*

Hlavně abyste si nemysleli,  
že jsem alkoholik.  
*The main thing is not to  
think I'm an alcoholic.*

#### e Purpose or reason.

Probably the most widespread function of **aby** clauses is to express purposes, where in English you would meet such phrases as 'in order to', 'in order that', 'so as to', or just an infinitive. The only example in Dialogue 2 is:

Letíte zítra, abyste mohla být  
v nemocnici ve čtvrtek.  
*You're flying tomorrow so  
as to be at the hospital on  
Thursday.*

There are endless possibilities.

Česky se učím, abych se  
domluvil s Čechy.  
*I'm studying Czech in order  
to make myself  
understood to Czechs.*

Abychom určitě dojeli včas,  
objednali jsme si taxík.  
*To be sure of getting there  
on time we've ordered  
a taxi.*

The **aby** clause may stand first or second in the sequence; it depends on context and emphasis;

Whatever the order, **aby** clauses must, in writing, be separated by a comma.

f Various important modalities – about possible, necessary, etc. states of affairs – not present in the dialogue types.

Je/není možné, aby ...	<i>It is(n't) possible that ...</i>
Je/není třeba, aby ...	<i>It is(n't) necessary ...</i>
Je/není žádoucí, aby ...	<i>It is(n't) desirable...</i>
Je/není vyloučeno, aby ...	<i>It is(n't) out of the question that ...</i>
Není žádoucí, aby nás viděli spolu.	<i>It isn't desirable that they see us together.</i>

## Exercises

4 Supply the appropriate form of **aby** and the verbs suggested to give meaningful utterances (beware of word order):

- Doporučujeme vám, (aby) (vzít si) kabát, přší.
- Je vyloučeno, (aby) (přijet) v úterý, už budeme doma.
- Chceme, (aby) Petr a Marie (vzít se).
- Upozorňujeme cestující, (aby) všechna zavazadla (vzít s sebou).
- Řekl mi, (aby) (poslat mu to) za týden.
- Poprosili nás, (aby) (půjčit jim) deset liber.
- Spěcháme, (aby) (nezmeškat) začátek představení.
- Nechtějí, Honzo, (aby) v ložnici (kouřit).
- (Aby), milí přátelé, (nemyslet si), že budu kandidovat!
- Už (aby) ty dopisy (přijít)

<b>zmeškat</b>	<i>to be late for</i>	<b>představení</b>	<i>performance</i>
<b>začátek</b>	<i>beginning</i>	<b>kandidovat</b>	<i>to stand for election</i>

5 Compile a set of planned activities from the following, using the first one as a model. (Be careful about which clause conveys the purpose.)

**Example:** (já) (jít do města) (koupit dceři dárek) – Jdu do města, abych koupil dceři dárek

- (my) (hledat ve slovníku) (najít významy slov)
- (ona) (vařit zeleninu) (manžel) (stát se vegetariánem)
- (oni) (učit se česky) (mocht pracovat v Praze)
- (my) (večeřet spolu) (vy) (muset přijít domů včas)
- (já) (zavolat sousedy) (pomocť nám s přípravami)

- f (člověk *one*) (studovat cizí jazyky) (muset mít jisté nadání)  
g (vy) (smět v Anglii řídit auto) (muset vám být aspoň 17 let)

nadání *talent*řídit *to drive*

- 6 Now convert b, d and f of 5 above into the past tense.  
(Example: Šel jsem do města, abych koupil dceři dárek.)  
7 Supply the correct form of *kdyby* and *by* in the following sentences:  
a (kdyby) mi to Petr neřekl, nevěděl (by 'I') o tom nic.  
b (kdyby), Jano a Ivane, chtěli jet s námi, bylo (by) ještě místo.  
c My (by) v Edinburghu nekupovali nový dům, (kdyby) já tam nedostal dobré místo.  
d (kdyby) její synové tak nepili, nemusela (by) si dělat tolik starostí.  
e (kdyby 'I') byl na vašem místě, řekl (by) to také sousedům.  
8 Now translate the sentences to be sure you understand them.

### **i** More proverbs

Look at these two versions of a common proverb; the second one should provide the 'logic' of the first, but as with proverbs in many languages, the logic is hidden. Check the **Key to the exercises** if it is unclear.

i **Kdyby jsou chyby.**

ii **Kdyby nebylo kdyby, nebyly by chyby.**

Another common lament is:

Pozdě **bycha** honit!

(*It's too late.*)

It is equivalent to *locking the stable door after the horse has bolted*, or *crying over spilt milk*.

# 15

it'll be quicker like that  
**tak to bude  
rychlejší**

In this unit you will learn

- how to make comparisons
- how to say something is the best
- how to talk about your children and pets

## Dialogue 1

The Smith children (Sharon and Graham), who both speak amazingly good Czech, are out and about with two of the Navrátil children, Líba and Štěpán (Jan was not available).

**Sharon** Nemohli bychom si jít někam sednout? Bolí mě nohy a mám žízeň.

**Štěpán** Vždyť jsme ještě nikde nebyli, nejdřív jsme vám chtěli ukázat Hrad a pak teprve se někde zastavit na občerstvení. Nemůžeš počkat?

**Graham** Jak je to daleko?

**Štěpán** Pěšky asi dva kilometry, nebo kousek pěšky a potom tři stanice metra.

**Sharon** Kousek?! Znáš tvoje 'kousky' – jsou trochu delší než moje!

**Líba** Neboj se, to není tak zlé. V Londýně byly vzdálenosti větší, a my jsme si nestěžovali.

**Štěpán** Nechte toho, pojedeme metrem. Tak to bude rychlejší.

**Graham** Souhlasím. Pěšky by to bylo možná hezčí ...

**Líba** Ano, bylo, cestou je několik skutečně pěkných pohledů na město, ale asi je musíme nechat na jindy.

*They've been round the Castle and are having the promised drink. Sharon is still complaining.*

**Sharon** To kafe mohlo být teplejší.

**Graham** Ty jsi čím dál protivnější. Máš být ráda, že jsi vůbec tady! (*trying to change the subject*) Ukažte mi pohlednice, které jste si koupili.

**Líba** Já mám lepší. Sharon si koupila první, které jsme našli, ale mně se moc nelíbily.

**Štěpán** To je její věc. (*Being diplomatic*) No, jsou taky hezké, jenom jiné. Aspoň má co lidem posílat.

**Sharon** Tahle je nejkrásnější. Tu si nechám, ale koupím si další, abych jich měla dost na posílání.

<b>sedat si/sednout si</b>	<i>to sit down</i>
<b>mít žízeň</b>	<i>to be thirsty</i>
<b>žízeň (f. gen. žízně)</b>	<i>thirst</i>
<b>vždyť</b>	<i>(protesting) but</i>
<b>ukazovat/ukázat (ukáže)</b>	<i>to show</i>
<b>občerstvení</b>	<i>refreshment (s), a snack</i>
<b>kousek</b>	<i>a bit (here, a short way)</i>
<b>stanice (f)</b>	<i>(bus or underground) stop</i>
<b>to není tak zlé</b>	<i>it's not that bad</i>
<b>zlý</b>	<i>wicked, evil, bad</i>

<b>vzdálenost (-i)</b>	<i>distance</i>
<b>větší</b>	<i>bigger</i>
<b>nechte toho!</b>	<i>leave off!, stop it!</i>
<b>rychlejší</b>	<i>quicker, faster</i>
<b>souhlasit</b>	<i>to agree, concur</i>
<b>bylo by to možná hezčí</b>	<i>it might be nicer</i>
<b>možná</b>	<i>perhaps</i>
<b>hezčí</b>	<i>prettier, nicer</i>
<b>skutečně</b>	<i>really</i>
<b>pohled na (+ acc.)</b>	<i>view of something</i>
<b>teplý</b>	<i>warm</i>
<b>protivný</b>	<i>obnoxious</i>
<b>máš být ráda, že</b>	<i>you should be thankful that</i>
<b>lepší</b>	<i>better</i>
<b>to je její věc</b>	<i>that's her affair/business</i>
<b>no</b>	<i>hmm</i>
<b>nejkrásnější</b>	<i>(the) most beautiful (one)</i>
<b>tu si nechám</b>	<i>I'll keep that one</i>
<b>nechávat si/nechat si</b>	<i>to keep</i>

**jít si někam sednout** *to go and sit somewhere (here, in order to have something to eat or drink)*

**hrad** *castle (with capital H = Prague Castle)*

**musíme je nechat na jindy** *we'll have to leave them for another time*

**to kafe mohlo být teplejší** *the coffee could have been warmer*  
**ty jsi čím dál protivnější** *you're getting more and more obnoxious*

**aspoň má co lidem posílat** *at least she's got something to send to people*

**abych jich měla dost na posílání** *so I have enough (of them) for sending*

## Notes

### 1 Good, better, best

a This section deals with the second degree of adjectives (*better*), the comparative. In English, this either ends in *-er*, or is expressed by the extra word *more*, as in *more beautiful*.

In Czech, the regular equivalent of *-er* is the ending *-ější* or *-ejší* (depending once again on the spelling rules). Look at the following examples:

<b>krásný</b>	<i>beautiful</i>	<b>krásnější</b>	<i>more beautiful</i>
<b>rychlý</b>	<i>quick</i>	<b>rychlejší</b>	<i>quicker</i>
<b>svěží</b>	<i>fresh</i>	<b>svěžejší</b>	<i> fresher</i>
<b>severní</b>	<i>northern</i>	<b>severnější</b>	<i>more northerly</i>

As in other circumstances, certain consonants are affected by the *-ě-* of this ending (most of the consonants in the groups of words given further on). The main ones to study are *-r-*, *-sk-* and *-ck-*, and just a few cases of *-k-*, which become *-ř-*, *-šť-* and *-čť-* (but beware the spelling!), and *-č-* as in:

<b>pestrý</b>	<i>colourful</i>	<b>pestřejší</b>	<i>more colourful</i>
<b>český</b>	<i>Czech</i>	<b>češtější</b>	<i>more Czech</i>
<b>logický</b>	<i>logical</i>	<b>logičtější</b>	<i>more logical</i>
<b>horký</b>	<i>hot</i>	<b>horčejší</b>	<i>hotter</i>

So much for the rule. The exceptions are unavoidable! However, most are words of everyday meanings, so you will meet them frequently and get used to them. These can be grouped together. Use the following section for reference, as an addition to the reference section at the back of the book.

The first of the minor comparative endings is *-ší*. This occurs with:

#### Group 1

Adjectives that end in *-chý* and *-hý* (notice what happens to *ch* and *h*):

<b>hluchý</b>	<i>(deaf)</i>	<b>hlušší</b>
<b>tichý</b>	<i>(quiet)</i>	<b>tišší</b>
<b>suchý</b>	<i>(dry)</i>	<b>sušší</b>
<b>jednoduchý</b>	<i>(simple)</i>	<b>jednodušší</b>
<b>tuhý</b>	<i>(stiff, tough)</i>	<b>tužší</b>
<b>drahý</b>	<i>(dear, costly)</i>	<b>dražší</b>

#### Group 2

Some that end in *-ký* and lose the *k*:

<b>těžký</b>	<i>(heavy, difficult)</i>	<b>těžší</b>
<b>hladký</b>	<i>(smooth)</i>	<b>hladší</b>
<b>sladký</b>	<i>(sweet)</i>	<b>sladší</b>
<b>prudký</b>	<i>(abrupt, steep; quick-tempered)</i>	<b>prudší</b>
<b>řidký</b>	<i>(rare, sparse, thin [of liquids])</i>	<b>řidší</b>
<b>krátký</b>	<i>(short)</i>	<b>kratší</b>
<b>krotký</b>	<i>(mæek, tame)</i>	<b>krotší (or krotčejší)</b>

#### Group 3

A few others, in which *-ší* is just tacked on to the stem:

<b>starý</b>	<i>(old)</i>	<b>starší</b>
<b>mladý</b>	<i>(young)</i>	<b>mladší</b>
<b>tvrdý</b>	<i>(hard)</i>	<b>tvrdší</b>
<b>hustý</b>	<i>(thick, dense)</i>	<b>hustší</b>
<b>čistý</b>	<i>(clean)</i>	<b>čistší</b>
<b>tlustý</b>	<i>(fat)</i>	<b>tlustší</b>
<b>sprostý</b>	<i>(rude, vulgar, uncouth)</i>	<b>sprostší</b>
<b>bohatý</b>	<i>(rich, wealthy)</i>	<b>bohatší</b>
<b>hrubý</b>	<i>(rough, coarse)</i>	<b>hrubší</b>
<b>slabý</b>	<i>(weak, thin)</i>	<b>slabší</b>
<b>tmavý</b>	<i>(dark)</i>	<b>tmavší</b>

#### Group 4

It also occurs with a family of words to do with space:

<b>vysoký</b>	<i>(tall, high)</i>	<b>vyšší</b>
<b>nizký</b>	<i>(low, base)</i>	<b>nížší</b>
<b>hluboký</b>	<i>(deep, profound)</i>	<b>hlubší</b>
<b>široký</b>	<i>(wide, broad)</i>	<b>širší</b>
<b>úzký</b>	<i>(narrow, tight)</i>	<b>užší</b>
<b>blízký</b>	<i>(near, close)</i>	<b>blížší</b>
<b>daleký</b>	<i>(far, remote)</i>	<b>další (another, a further)</b>
<b>dlouhý</b>	<i>(long)</i>	<b>delší (of time or space)</b>

## Group 5

Irregular items:

malý	(small)	menší
velký	(big, great)	větší
dobrý	(good)	lepší
špatný	(bad)	horší
snadný	(easy)	snazší

The second exceptional ending, -čí, is associated with words ending in -ký:

## Group 6

hezký	(pretty, nice)	hezčí
lehký	(light, easy)	lehčí
křehký	(frail, fragile)	křehčí
měkký	(soft)	měkčí
tenký	(thin – not of people)	tenčí
mělký	(shallow)	mělčí
trpký	(tart, acid)	trpčí
vlhký	(damp, moist)	vlhčí

You need to know two other common words that are comparatives in form:

a dřívější (*former, previous*) for which there is no basic form.  
 b pozdější (*later, subsequent*) for which the adjective *později* (*late*) is not widely used. (To say 'I am late' use *Jdu pozdě* or *Mám zpoždění*. The adjective cannot be used.)

Finally, the most minor type of comparatives. Just as English sometimes has to resort to *more*, so too Czech has comparatives based on *víc(e)*. Not many are involved and they all end in -cí:

žádoucí	<i>desirable, preferable</i>
víc žádoucí	<i>more desirable</i>

You may nonetheless occasionally hear such substitutes as *žádoucnější*, but do not imitate them.

## 2 More/even more/much more

Comparative adjectives form part of other expressions beyond merely those followed by *než* (*than*).

a *Even more* is expressed by *ještě* + comparative:

Jana je hezčí než Milena a  
 Helenka je ještě hezčí.      *Jana is prettier than Milena  
 and Helena is even prettier.*

b *Much more* is expressed by *mnohem* or *o mnoho* + comparative:

Jan je mnohem (or o mnoho)  
 starší než Milena.      *Jan is much older than  
 Milena.*

c *O mnoho* (*by much*) shows how Czech expresses the measure of the difference. *O mnoho krásnější* means, in effect, *more beautiful by much*. This 'by' construction appears in many contexts:

Petr je o dva roky starší  
 než Jan.      *Peter is (by) two years older  
 than John.*  
 Sklo je o centimetr užší  
 než okno.      *The glass is (by) a  
 centimetre narrower than  
 the window.*

d Where two sets of circumstances change in parallel, *the more ... the more ...*, Czech uses *čím ... tím ...* (instrumental case of *co* and *to*, just as *mnohem* above was the instrumental of *mnoho*).

Čím jsem starší, tím jsem  
 zapomnětlivější.      *The older I am, the more  
 forgetful I am.*

A simpler version of this uses *čím dál* + comparative:

Jsem čím dál zapomnětlivější.      *I am ever more forgetful  
 (more and more  
 forgetful).*

## 3 Best/fastest

The English forms in *-est* are called the superlative. Nothing could be simpler than forming the superlative in Czech – provided you get the comparative right. Without exception, all you need is to add *nej-* at the front:

dobrý	lepší	nejlepší
rychlý	rychlejší	nejrychlejší
hezký	hezčí	nejhezčí

There are again one or two useful constructions based on the superlative:

a *the best (fastest, ...)* (*out*) of is simply expressed by the superlative + *z* + genitive:

Petr je nejlepší ze všech.  
Jan je z nás nejrychlejší.

*Peter is the best of all.  
John is the fastest of us.*

b the English *as ... as possible* and *most ... possible* constructions also use the superlative in Czech, preceded simply by *co*:

Kupte si *co nejlevnější boty*. *Buy the cheapest shoes possible.*  
Vařila *co nejzdravější večeři*. *She cooked as healthy a dinner as possible.*

You may meet the word *možná* between the two parts of the idiom: *co možná nejlevnější boty*. It makes no difference to the meaning.

#### 4 Comparisons based on (non-)sameness

To say that *x* is or isn't as (old) as *y*, use *je stejně (starý) jako* or *není tak (starý) jako* if what follows is a noun:

Petr je stejně starý jako Marie. *Peter is as old as Mary.*  
Čeština není tak těžká jako čínština. *Czech isn't as hard as Chinese.*

If what follows is a clause, replace *jako* by *jak*:

Čeština není tak těžká, jak jste si myslel. *Czech isn't as hard as you thought.*

#### 5 nechávat/nechat – ways of saying 'to leave'

*Nechávat/nechat něco někde* is *to leave something somewhere* (by accident or design).

Nechal jsem klíče doma. *I've left the keys at home.*  
Nechá nám vzkaz v hotelu. *He'll leave us a message at the hotel.*  
Nechte to! *Leave it alone!*

*Nechat* + genitive means *to leave off doing something*, but is largely confined to commands with *toho*.

Nechte toho! *Stop it!*

*Nechávat/nechat si něco* means *to keep*, in the sense of 'take possession' or 'fail to return'.

Půjčili jsme jim židle a oni si je nechali! *We lent them some chairs and they kept them!*  
Nechte si to. *Keep it (often used about change, as a tip).*

*Nechávat/nechat si něco pro sebe* means *to keep something (a secret) to oneself*.

Nechte si to pro sebe. *Don't tell anyone.*

a *Nechat* forms its imperative: *nech/nechte*. There is also a regularly formed regional variant *nechej/nechejte*.

b *Leave nechat* must not be confused with *leave* meaning *to go away, to depart (odjet, odejít)*:

Odjeli/Odešli jsme v deset. *We left at ten.*

nor with the meaning *to abandon (opustit)*.

Lod jsme opustili, než se potopila. *We left the ship before it sank.*

#### 6 sedět and sednout – 'to be seated' and 'to sit down' – and other verbs

Czech, as you know, firmly distinguishes between positions and movements (e.g. at a place/to a place). Verbs denoting various postures need some care, since one and the same English verb may have two functions, kept apart in Czech:

The verbs denoting position, posture, can only be imperfective.

sedět (sit)	Sedím v křesle.	<i>I'm sitting in an armchair.</i>
ležet (lie)	Leží na pláži.	<i>They're (lying) on the beach.</i>
stát (stand)	Stála ve frontě.	<i>She was standing in a queue.</i>
klečet (kneel)	Klečel před oltářem.	<i>He was kneeling before the altar.</i>
viset (hang)	Visel na provaze.	<i>He was hanging on the rope.</i>

Verbs meaning *to adopt a posture* denote an act, and therefore have both aspects:

sedat si/sednout si (do křesla)	<i>to sit (down) (in an armchair)</i>
ležat si/lehnout si (na pláž)	<i>to lie (down) (on the beach)</i>
vstávat/vstát	<i>to get up, rise</i>
klekat si/kleknout si (před oltář)	<i>to kneel (down) (before the altar)</i>
věšet se/pověsit se (na provaz)	<i>to suspend oneself (on a rope)*</i>

\*This is not suicide: suicidal hanging is almost exclusively perfective and uses *oběsit se*.



Of these only *věšet/pověsit* also occurs with an object:

Věšela prádlo na šňůru. *She was hanging the washing on the line.*

There is also a verb *posazovat/posadit* (to seat):

Posadila ho vedle sebe. *She sat him down next to her.*

This has a reflexive form, usually only perfective *posadit se* (to sit down), as a common alternative to *sednout si*. So listen out for both *sedněte si* and *posadte se* (do) sit down – they are equally common.

## 7 What does 'mean' mean?

When you are asking after the significance or meaning, of a word, sentence, abbreviation or even an event, you must use *znamenat*.

Co znamená zkratka OSN? *What does the abbreviation UNO mean?*

Co to znamená, když kočka přede? *What does it mean when a cat purrs?*

When, however, you are talking more about a person's intended meaning, use *myslet*.

Jak to myslíš? *What do you mean? (Lit. How do you mean it?)*

On to nemyslí vážně. *He doesn't mean it./He can't be serious.*

Kdo ví, co tím myslel? *Goodness knows what he meant by that!*

levný	cheap
zapomnětlivý	forgetful
lod' (lodi or lodě f)	ship
opouštět/opustit	to leave, abandon
topit se/po- křeslo	to sink armchair
pláž (f)	beach
fronta	queue
oltář (m)	altar
prádlo	linen, the washing
šňůra	(washing) line
provaz	rope, string

zkratka	abbreviation
kočka	cat
příst (přede)	to purr; to spin (thread)
spojený	united
národ (gen. -a)	nation
čínština	Chinese (the language)

OSN = Organizace spojených národů UNO

## Exercises

1 Make up sentences on the basis of the following preferences (the first has been done for you). Use the present tense.

- Lenka (mít) radši (Praha) krásná Londýn  
Lenka má radši Prahu, protože je krásnější než Londýn.
- Studenti (číst) radši (překlad) jednoduchý originál
- (My) radši (letět) letadlo rychlý vlak
- Petr (sedět) radši vedle (Sára) protivná Marie
- Zuzana (mluvit) radši slovensky slovenština pro ni  
lehká čeština
- Skotové (pít) radši whisky silná pivo
- Štěpán (nosit) radši džínsy nový jeho kalhoty

překlad	translation	džínsy (f pl)	jeans
whisky (f)	whisky	kalhoty (f pl)	trousers

2 Now convert your sentences a to g in question 1 above to the past tense (think carefully about whether to do so in the second clause would always make sense).

3 Using the pairs, make the different types of comparisons as indicated:

- Londýn – New York (*older*)
- Pražský hrad – Hluboká (*much older*)
- Můj souseď – otec (*even older*)
- Jeho manželka – on (*six months older*)
- Jejich dům – náš (*not as old as*)
- Tento hotel – hotel na náměstí (*two hundred years older*)
- Moje auto – jeho (*as old as*)
- Tenhle kufr – ten druhý (*not much older*)

(Hluboká is a large country house south of Prague, and a 19th-century imitation of 'Tudor Gothic'.)

## Dialogue 2

This time it is the Navrátil children arguing, about their homework.

- Líba** Já jsem ti přece řekla, že budu hotová dřív než ty.  
**Štěpán** No a! Ale já jsem to udělal líp!  
**Líba** To si myslíš ty! Vypadá to hůř, než kdyby to psalo naše kotě.  
**Štěpán** A ten tvůj úkol snad vypadá líp?  
**Líba** Vypadá. Nenakresliila jsem sice ten obrázek právě nejkrásněji, ale naše učitelka říká, že každý nemůže být Rembrandt.  
**Štěpán** Tak já píšu škareději než kotě, a ty kreslíš jen o něco méně hezky, než maloval Rembrandt!  
*Their father enters in time to hear the last remark.*  
**Navrátil** Podívejte se, má tohle smysl? Kdybyste radši uvažovali rozumněji a hlavně se hádali tišeji.  
**Děti** Promiň, tati.  
**Navrátil** Jak by to vypadalo, kdyby mi maminka pořád vytýkala, že neumím natírat, nebo já jí zase říkal, že se zřejmě neučila vařit v Hiltonu? K čemu by to vedlo?  
**Líba** (giggling) Tak tys ji neslyšel minulý týden?  
**Navrátil** Co? Kdy? Co řekla?  
**Líba** Jak jsi natřel venku okna ... Já jsem potom slyšela, jak maminka povídá: Tohle snad natřelo prase zadní levou.  
**Navrátil** Počkej, děvče. To jsem slyšel. Jednak řekla prasata, a navíc jí šlo o práci natěračů z komunálu, kteří právě přetřeli lavičky na hřišti.  
**Líba** To jsem nevěděla, promiň.  
**Navrátil** O mé práci se vždycky vyjadřuje mnohem šetrněji. Nebo ji spíš přejde mlčením.  
**Štěpán** Dejte pokoj s tím, jak kdo natírá. Mě spíš zajímá, jak vaří v tom Hiltonu a jestli pestřeji než u nás!

budu hotová dřív než ty	I'll be finished before you (are)
dřív(e) než	before (conjunction)
no a	so what
líp	(adverb) better
To si myslíš ty!	That's what you think!
hůř	comparative of špatně
kotě (n. kotěte)	kitten
úkol	exercise, task, homework
kreslit/na-	to draw

- obrázek** picture  
**právě** (here goes with ne-) not exactly  
**nejkrásněji** most beautifully  
**každý nemůže být Rembrandt** not everyone can be a Rembrandt  
**jen o něco** just slightly  
**méně hezky** less nicely  
**malovat** to paint  
**podívejte se** (here) look here!  
**má tohle smysl?** What's the point of this?  
**hlavně** (here) above all  
**tišeji** comparative of tiše/ticho more quietly  
**tati** domestic usage for Dad(dy)  
**natírat/natřít (natře, past natřel)** to paint  
**vytýkat/vytknout (někomu něco)** to reproach  
**zřejmě** apparently, evidently  
**k čemu by to vedlo** where would that lead/get us  
**tys = ty jsi**  
**prase (n, prasete)** pig  
**zadní** rear, back (adj.)  
**levý** left  
**počkej, děvče!** wait a moment, my girl!  
**děvče (n, děvčete)** girl, lass  
**jednak ... a navíc** for one thing ... and what's more  
**natěrač** (house) painter  
**komunál** council services department  
**přetřít/přetřít** to repaint  
**lavička** bench  
**hřiště (n)** (children's) playground  
**vyjadřovat (se)/vyjádřit (se)** to express (oneself)  
**spíš(e)** more likely, rather  
**přejít mlčením** to pass over in silence  
**mlčení** silence, non-talking

**škareději** comparative adverb from škaredý ugly, awful, bad, gross  
**uvažovat** to think, consider, use one's head

**rozhledněji** comparative of rozumně adverb from rozumný sensible

**jak jsi natřel venku okna** when you had painted the windows outside

**tohle snad natřelo prase zadní levou** this must have been painted by a pig with its left hind leg

**šetrněji** comparative adverb from šetrný sparing, considerate

dát pokoj s + instrumental (idiom) to stop going on about something  
**pestřejí** comparative adverb from **pestrý** colourful, varied

## Notes

### 8 Looking better/thinking more sensibly

Forming comparative adverbs (*more quickly*) is relatively straightforward. For the majority, the 'regular' words, just replace the normal adverb ending -ě (-e) with -ěji (-eji):

krásně → krásněji	<i>beautifully</i> → <i>more beautifully</i>
rychle → rychleji	<i>quickly</i> → <i>more quickly</i>

also:

pomalů → pomaleji	<i>slowly</i> → <i>more slowly</i>
-------------------	------------------------------------

However, one or two variants are associated with adjectives in the groups listed in Note 1, so you do need to know how the comparative adjective is formed.

For the regular types, replace -ější (-ejší) with -ěji (-eji):

krásnější → krásněji	rychlejší → rychleji
logičtější → logičtěji	pozdější → později

(*Dřívejší* is an exception and uses *dřív(e)* *earlier, sooner*, which is the comparative of *brzo, brzy* *early, soon*.)

For most of Group 1 and Group 3, replace -ší by -eji and -ěji respectively; in Group 3 words this will have consequences for pronunciation and/or spelling.

tišší → tišeji	mladší → mlaději
jednodušší → jednodušeji	slabší → slaběji

(The exception *dražší* has *draž(e)* *more dearly*. *Starší* has *stáře* and, less commonly, *stařeji* *older*.)

For most of Group 2 and Group 6, replace -ší or -čí with -čeji (the *č* is because of the *k* in the base adjective):

prudší → prudčeji	hezčí → hezčeji
kratší → kratčeji	měkčí → měkčeji

(The exception *těžší* has *tíž(e)* *with more difficulty*.)

Groups 4 and 5, which were exceptional in how their adjectival comparatives behaved, need to be learned separately:

vyšší → výš(e)	bližší → blíž(e)	větší → víc(e)
nížší → níž(e)	další → dál(e)	lepší → lépe/líp
hlubší → hloub(ěji)	delší → déle/dýl	horší → hůř(e)
širší → šir(e)	menší → méně/míň	snazší → snáz(e)
užší → uže		

a The adjectives have a short vowel, the adverbs a long vowel.

b Almost all the exceptions given have optional longer forms. These are used in higher or more formal styles, or sometimes for rhythm or ease of pronunciation; the shorter forms are more informal. The short forms with a vowel change (*dýl, líp, míň*) are the most informal, though not unacceptably 'low'.

c There is a special adverb, comparative in form, *spíš(e)*, which means *probably, more likely, rather (more)* and sometimes just *more*, where it expresses a conjecture more than a fact, or qualifies other word-classes than adjectives:

Řekl bych, že to je spíš modré než zelené.	<i>I'd say it was more blue than green.</i>
Udělá to spíš Petr než Marie.	<i>Peter's more likely to do it than Mary.</i>

d Like superlative adjectives, all superlative adverbs are formed by mere addition of *nej-* to the comparative:

Petr vaří ze všech nejlíp.	<i>Peter cooks best of all.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

### 9 When to use comparative adverbs

a Whenever an adverb is, in Czech, unavoidable, such as (often) after *vypadat*.

Vypadá líp než včera.	<i>He's looking better than yesterday.</i>
-----------------------	--

Here, however, the comparative adjective is often used instead: *Vypadá starší* is more probable than *stáře* or *stařeji*.

b As in English to accompany other verbs:

Zpívala krásněji než Marie.	<i>She sang more prettily than Mary.</i>
Zůstali jsme déle, než jsme chtěli.	<i>We stayed longer than we intended.</i>



c In the case of *víc(e)* (*more*) and *méně/míň* (*less/fewer*) to express quantity. This means that they are also the comparatives of *mnoho* (*much/many*) and *málo* (*little/few*) and, like them, are followed by the genitive:

Má víc knih než já.  
Měla míň času, než  
potřebovala.

*He has more books than I.  
She had less time than  
she needed.*

d *Méně/míň* has an extra use in being the only way of expressing negative comparison in both adjectives and adverbs:

Kanály jsou méně důležité  
než železnice.  
Štěpán píše méně hezky  
než Líba.

*Canals are less important  
than railways.  
Štěpán writes less nicely  
than Líba.*

### 10 Children and young animals

Czech has a special class of neuter nouns, always ending in *-ě* or *-e*, reserved mostly for the names of young animals. In Dialogue 2 you met *kotě* (*kitten*), but in the same group there is *štěně* (*puppy*), *jehně* (*lamb*), *tele* (*calf*), *sele* (*piglet*), *hříbě* (*foal*), *kuře* (*chick*), *ptáče* (*baby bird*) and many others, often derived from the name of the adult: *slon* (*elephant*), *slůně* (*baby elephant*).

The peculiarity of the declension is the addition of an ending before the case endings, moreover the ending differs between singular and plural:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	kotě	kořata
Accusative	kotě	kořata
Genitive	kořete	kořat
Dative	kořeti	kořatům
Locative	(o) kořeti	kořatech
Instrumental	kořetem	kořaty

Note that the singular case endings, after the inserted endings, are like the 'soft' declensions, and the plural endings like those of 'hard' neuter nouns.

The young human, *dítě* (*baby, child*) also belongs in this family, but beware: its plural *děti* (*children*) is feminine (not neuter) and declines like the *i*-declension nouns.

Other human young in the group are *nemluvně* (*baby*), *batole* (*toddler*), *děvče* (*little girl*), *dvoučata* (*twins*).

Some common words happen also to share this declension: *prase* (*adult pig*), *koště* (*broom*), *poupě* (*flower bud*) and about half a dozen others, some of them colloquial, like *štamprle* (*tot, dram* or the glass you would have one in).

### 11 Not everyone can be Rembrandt!

This expression was used in Dialogue 2 – and you can imagine plenty more similar. Note that the negation comes on the verb: *Každý nemůže být Rembrandt*. Similarly you might say:

*Každý tohle neví. Not everyone knows that.*

### 12 Ne- právě nejlepší – 'Not exactly the best'

In Dialogue 2, Líba uses a version of this construction, which consists of *právě* (or more colloquially *zrovna*) and a superlative after a negative verb. It is used in irony and is equivalent to *not exactly* (*not what you'd call*) *the best* and similar.

### 13 On the subject of painting

*Malovat* is to paint pictures, or for interior decorating using water or emulsion paints. *Natírat* is for gloss paints. *Malíř* (m) = a painter, as artist, *natěrač* = a house painter or painting contractor, while a painter and decorator doing interiors is a *malíř pokojů*.

### Exercises

4 Complete the sentences in an appropriate manner, using up all the adverbs in the box overleaf without repeating them.

- a Vypadá \_\_\_ než včera.
- b Anna se dostala na poštu \_\_\_, protože běžela \_\_\_.
- c Je to \_\_\_ kotě než kočka.
- d Píše \_\_\_ perem než propisovačkou.
- e Spali jsme \_\_\_ na gauči, než loni na zemi.
- f Tady je \_\_\_ místa než v kuchyni.
- g Pojdte \_\_\_!
- h Koupil to \_\_\_, než počítal.
- i Chovala se \_\_\_ v patnácti letech, než když byla starší.
- j \_\_\_ tam nechoď, maminka se zlobí.

čitelněji pohodlněji raději rychleji víc  
zdravěji spíš draž dál dřív rozumněji

propisovačka	biro	v patnácti letech	at fifteen
čitelný	legible	pohodlný	comfortable
chovat se	to act, behave		

5 Read the following and answer the questions below.

Martin cestuje nejraději na kole. Ale když se potřebuje někam dostat rychleji, jede radši vlakem. Loni byl v Čechách, ale letos chce jet na Moravu, protože si myslí, že se mu tam bude líbit víc. V Čechách se mu nejvíc líbila Praha. Pro něho je jedním z nejzajímavějších měst, která zná, a on už poznal mnoho ještě větších hlavních měst. V Praze si dokonce půjčil kolo. Nejhorší však bylo, že na něm nemohl jezdit všude – kvůli kočičím hlavám.

- |                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| a Jak jezdí Martin nejraději? | e Měl možnost po Praze |
| b Kdy používá vlak?           | jezdit na kole?        |
| c Zná Martin Moravu?          | f Proč se mu to        |
| d Líbí se mu Praha? Proč?     | nevyplatilo?           |

kolo	bicycle
letos	this year
poznávat/poznat	to get to know
půjčovat si/půjčit si	to borrow, hire
hlavní město	capital
kočičí hlavy	cobblestones (Lit. cats' heads)
používat/použit	to use

vyplácet se/vyplatit se (někomu) to be worth it (to someone)

- 6 In various situations you are a bit put out. Seek to have matters improved.
- People are talking loudly in the library: say, 'Talk more quietly.'
  - Your friends are dawdling: say, 'Hurry up (Come more quickly).'
  - You are desperate for some help: say, 'Come as quickly as possible.'

- You cannot understand some directions: say, 'Please speak more slowly.'
- You think a friend is being foolish: say, 'Think more sensibly.'
- Some children are misbehaving: say, 'Be (act) more politely.'

(Do not worry if the English sounds a little odd; your Czech sentences should sound entirely natural, then you will appreciate how the common, simple Czech structures fit things that, in English situations, you might have expressed differently.)

### 1 Animals ...

As Dialogue 2 suggests, animals are just as common in comparisons as in English. So add an idiomatic flavour to your Czech and look for opportunities to use some of the following:

škrábat jako kocour/kočka	to scratch/scrawl like a cat
být utahaný jako pes	to be dog-tired
dřít se (dře) jako kůň/mezek/vůl	to slave/slog away ('like a horse/mule/ox')
potít se jako prase	to sweat like a pig
mít hlad jako vlk	could eat a horse ('be as hungry as a wolf')
být mlsný jako kocour	to be choosy about food (mlsný liking good food, choosy)
mlčet jako ryba	to say nothing, stay (stubbornly) silent ('like a fish')
být zdravý jako ryba	to be as fit as a fiddle ('as a fish')
být tichý jako myška/myš	to be as quiet as a mouse
být chudý jako (kostelní) myš	to be as poor as a church mouse

### 1 ... and aristocrats

In the changing conditions since 1989, Czech society has seen some of the old aristocratic families return, or simply resurface. Thus not only has the word **soudruh** (*comrade*) gone into decline, but such words as **kníže** (*prince*) and **hrabě** (*count*) have come back into service. They need mentioning if only because they share the forms of the 'young animal' words! However, in the singular they are masculine (and animate), therefore the accusative and genitive are the same (**knížete, hraběte**), but in the plural they are, oddly, neuter.

# 17

kvůli politice se  
nerozčiluji!  
don't get worked up over politics!

In this unit you will learn

- how to describe what people/things are doing, e.g. signing policemen/rising unemployment
- how to deal with some features of written Czech
- how to say *whose*

## Dialogue 1

Pan Navrátil is mulling over the evening paper and grumbling about the state of the country to his wife.

- On** Tak se mi zdá, že naši mladí politici to ještě moc neumějí.  
**Ona** Jak to myslíš?  
**On** Tady čtu, že se jistý 'vedoucí činitel' – nepíšou, které strany – 'divil, že zhoršující se hospodářská situace a stoupající zahraniční dluh jsou nezastavitelné'.  
**Ona** A co tě na tom tak překvapuje?  
**On** Já nejsem ekonom, ale i mně, rychle stárnoucímu inženýrovi je jasné, že to nějaký rok potrvá, než se postavíme na nohy. Samozřejmě. Ale ty se kvůli politice nerozčiluj!  
**Ona** Já se nerozčiluju, jenom se divím, že se diví ten činitel. Kdyby šlo o rostoucí nezaměstnanost – určitě by se divil zas.  
**Ona** Dej pokoj už s tou politikou – ty bys to taky neuměl.  
**On** Já vím. Co je dnes v televizi?  
**Ona** Program snad máš v ruce, ne? Ve Večerníku.  
**On** Ach ano. (*he looks for the TV page*) Hele, zrovna dávají údajně šokující anglický film o zpívajícím policistovi. Chceš ho vidět?  
**Ona** Viděla jsem první díl a moc se mi nelíbil, ale můžeš se dívat, když nic jiného není.  
**On** Zdá se, že není.  
**Ona** Hlavně se zas nerozčiluj, i kdyby to náhodou bylo pro tebe víc šokující než naši politikové.

Program **LIDOVÉ NOVINY** 3 příběhy na víkend  
TELEVIZE na celý víkend NEDELE ORIENTACE VĚDA  
Sobota 1. února 2003 NEZÁVISLÝ DENÍK ZALOŽENÝ 1895 Cena 10 Kč

tak se mi zdá	<i>well it seems to me</i>
moc to neumět	<i>to be not much good at it</i>
vedoucí činitel	<i>leading official</i>
kteřé strany	<i>of which party</i>
zhoršující se	<i>deteriorating</i>
hospodářský	<i>economic</i>
situace	<i>situation</i>
divit se (+ dat.)	<i>to be surprised (at)</i>
stoupající	<i>rising</i>
zahraniční	<i>foreign</i>
dluh	<i>debt</i>



nezastavitelný	unstoppable
co tě na tom překvapuje	what surprises you about that
překvapovat/překvapit	to surprise
stárnoucí	ageing
nějaký rok	a year or so
trvat/po-	to last, endure
postavit se (přv) na nohy	to get (back) on one's feet
rozčilovat se/rozčillit se	to get excited
rostoucí nezaměstnanost	rising unemployment
v televizi	on television
dávat film	to put on, show a film
údajný	alleged
šokující	shocking
zpívající	singing
policista (m)	policeman

strana side, page; party (political, contractual, in litigation)

## Notes

### 1 Adjectives ending in '-ing' and the Czech imperfective active participle

Dialogue 1 includes words ending in *-ící* and *-oucí*, translated by English forms ending in *-ing*. Clearly, they are all used as adjectives, but originate in verbs. The verbs in question are:

- vést (a familiar primary verb of motion, here in an abstract sense)
- zhoršovat se (to get worse) from zhoršovat/zhoršit (to make worse)
- stoupat (to rise, climb, go up)
- stárnout (to grow old)
- růst (roste) (to grow)
- šokovat (to shock)
- zpívat

They are from various different conjugations, yet there is little variety in the formation of these *-ing* words. This is because they are based on the *they* forms of verbs with the addition of *-cí* - and all verbs end in either *-í* or *-ou* in the 3rd person plural. The version of Czech that you are learning includes some forms that have become 'tolerated' only in fairly recent times. They

include any *I* and *they* forms ending in *-u* and *-ou* that you meet in the *-e* and *-uje* conjugations after 'soft' consonants. The higher-style equivalents of the endings are *-í* and *-í*, and it is the *-í* ending of the *they* form that has to be used to form the 'active participle', as these *-ící/-oucí* forms are called. In other words, *writing* and *buying* have to be *píšící* and *kupující*.

### 2 More about verbal adjectives

#### Aspect

These participles can only be formed from imperfective verbs. This makes sense, since it is the imperfective that is used to denote ongoing actions or states.

#### Word order

Objects or adverbs precede the participle when the participle is to the left of the noun:

cigaretu kouřící žena	the cigarette-smoking woman
rychle stárnoucí inženýr	a rapidly ageing engineer

Many compound words have their origins in this rule:

dlouhohrající	long-playing
protijedoucí	oncoming
rychlerostoucí	quick-growing

But if a participle is from a reflexive verb, the *se* will be treated as part of the noun phrase, not the overall clause: *zhoršující se situace* follows *že* in Dialogue 1. Combining these two facts, you have:

Rychle se zhoršující situace.	A rapidly deteriorating situation.
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

#### Style

Participles proper, which follow the noun, e.g.

Žena sedící vpředu je ministryně kultury.	The woman sitting in front is the minister of culture.
---	--

are largely a feature of written styles, but as adjectives to the left of the noun they often have to be used as the only possibility. Some such adjectives may actually be commoner than the verb they come from: *překvapující* (surprising),  *vynikající* (excellent, outstanding - *vynikat* to stand out, excel). Others occur in set phrases:

létající talíř  
vařící/tekoucí voda

*flying saucer (plate)*  
*boiling/running water*  
(vařit and téct  
(teče, tekl) *to flow*).

#### Other English equivalents

English has many words ending in *-ent* or *-ant*, versions of the Latin active participle. Some of these will then also have Czech participles as their equivalent:

blížící se	<i>imminent</i> (blížít se <i>to approach</i> )
převládající	<i>predominant</i> (převládat <i>to predominate</i> )
odpovídající	<i>equivalent, corresponding</i> (odpovídat <i>reply, correspond, match</i> ).

Notice also the special case of *budoucí* (*future*).

#### Changing status

A number of participle-adjectives, including some compound words, have taken on the function of nouns:

cestující	<i>passenger</i>
vedoucí	<i>manager/ess</i>
kolemjďoucí	<i>passer-by</i>
dílovedoucí	<i>foreman</i>

Since the participles are 'soft' adjectives, gender can only follow from context: *stará vedoucí* (*the old manageress*).

#### Exercises

- Fill the gaps with active participles from the verb suggested.
  - Někdo nechal (hořet) cigaretu tady na stole.
  - (Tonout [tone]) se i stébla chytá. (In this proverb the participle has become a noun: *a drowning man*.)
  - Nech (spát) psa ležet.
  - Mluvili jsme s několika (vést) činiteli.
  - Nechtěli zvýšit (stávkovat) horníkům mzdy.
  - Vyhodila už (vadnout) květiny.
  - Proti (rozhodovat) gólu nemohli protestovat.
  - (Štěkat) pes nekouše.
  - Otec spravoval (padat) omítku.

hořet	<i>to burn</i>
tonout/u-	<i>to drown</i>
chyťat se/chytit se (+ gen.)	<i>to catch at</i>
stéblo	<i>stalk</i>
zvýšovat/zvýšit	<i>to increase, raise</i>
stávkovat	<i>to strike</i>
horník	<i>miner</i>
mzda (gen.pl mezd)	<i>wage</i>
vadnout/u-	<i>to wilt</i>
rozhodovat/rozhodnout	<i>to decide, settle (something)</i>
rozhodující	<i>decisive</i>
štěkat/za-	<i>to bark</i>
kousat (kouše)/po- or kousnout	<i>to bite</i>
spravovat/spravit	<i>to repair</i>
omítka	<i>stucco, plaster</i>

#### Notes

##### 3 More verbal adjectives ending in '-ing'

It is vital to appreciate that *-ing* in English has several functions. There is another set of adjectives which must not be confused with the participles. This is a set that in some sense denotes a function – *what something is for, or what it does*. In Czech, these also, like the participles, end in *-cí*, but this time they are made from the infinitive: *šít* (*to sew*) gives *šicí* as in *šicí stroj* (*sewing machine*, a machine 'for sewing'). You have already met *psací* from *psát* in *psací stroj* (*typewriter*). From *plnit* (*to fill*) there is *plnicí* as in *plnicí pero* (*fountain pen*) (notice how minimally different this type is from the participle – *plnicí*). Many such words occur in conjunction with only a few nouns, often to produce technical terms:

plánovací výbor	<i>planning committee</i>
rysovací prkno	<i>drawing board</i>
bicí nástroje	<i>percussion instruments</i>
holící strojek	<i>shaver</i>
startovací pistole	<i>starting pistol</i>
nulovací tlačítko	<i>reset button</i>

Verbal adjectives of this type have a short vowel when the infinitive is a monosyllable.

výbor	committee
rýsovat	to draw (technical drawing)
prkno	plank, board
bít (bije)	to hit, strike
nástroj (m)	tool, instrument
pistole (f)	pistol
nulovat/vytlačítko	to return to zero (push-)button

## 4 '-ible/-able'

Many English words ending in *-ible* or *-able* have direct Czech equivalents in *-itelný*:

nezastavitelný	unstoppable
nepopíratelný	undeniable
srovnatelný	comparable
(ne-)stravitelný	(in)digestible
nepolepšitelný	incorrigible

There are scores of others (notice how many are negative). If all you have is a small dictionary, you should be able to work out the meaning of such adjectives on the basis of verbs, which are more likely to be in it.

zastavovat/zastavit	to stop (someone or something)
popírat/popířt (popře, popířel)	to deny
srovnávat/srovnat	to compare
trávit/strávit	to digest
polepřovat/polepřít	to improve, correct (as in criminology)

## Exercises

- 2 Using the verbs and nouns suggested create the terms in brackets below.
- krýt + jméno (*false name, alias, 'covering name'*)
  - balit + papír (*wrapping paper*)
  - rozkazovat + věta (*imperative sentence*)
  - školit + zařízení (*training centre, facility*)
  - obývat + pokoj (*living room*)
  - skladovat + prostor (*storage space*)
  - oddat + list (*marriage certificate*)

h poznávat + značka (*licence plate, 'recognition mark'*)  
i mýt + houba (*bath sponge, 'washing fungus'*)  
j hrát + karty (*playing cards*)

In what respect is g the odd-man-out?

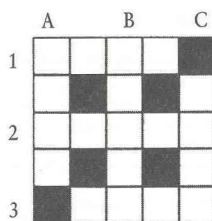
## Dialogue 2

Paní Navrátilová is in the kitchen cooking. Mr Smith is sitting out of the way, killing time with a Czech crossword. (Czech crosswords rely heavily on general knowledge and synonyms and are not cryptic.)

- Mr Smith Něco jsem přece jenom uměl, ale budete mi muset trochu pomoci, pokud vás to nebude zdržovat.
- Navrátilová Samozřejmě, jen se ptejte.
- Mr Smith Jaká je zkratka 'kódu umožňujícího včasné doručení dopisů'?
- Navrátilová To myslí 'poštovní směrovací číslo', čili PSČ.
- Mr Smith A meziválečný český spisovatel pocházející ze židovské rodiny?
- Navrátilová Na kolik písmen?
- Mr Smith Sedm, a třetí je L.
- Navrátilová To bude asi Poláček. Zkuste to.
- Mr Smith Dobře. O je třetí písmeno města ležícího západně od Londýna. Předposlední je G a celé slovo má šest písmen.
- Navrátilová To byste měl znát spíše vy než já!
- Mr Smith Já vím, ale nic mě nenapadá. Budu mít první písmeno, když uděláme ještě tohle: značka křemíku. Co je to křemík?
- Navrátilová Anglicky nevím, ale je to prvek a značka je Si.
- Mr Smith Už vím, jaké je to město: Slough.
- Navrátilová Slau? A jak se to píše?
- Mr Smith s-l-o-u-g-h. Nic si z toho nedělejte! Vždyť víte, jaký máme pravopis. A vychází taky Poláček.
- Navrátilová To jsem ráda.
- Mr Smith Ještě mi řekněte jedno a potom už dám pokoj: já bohužel neznám české dějiny: jméno dvou českých knížat panujících v desátém století: mezera, o, dvě mezery, s, mezera, a, mezera.
- Navrátilová To zřejmě bude Boleslav, první a druhý. Skončil jste přesně včas, budeme obědvat.

Mr Smith Ještě jsem neskončil. Či jsou ty noviny? Mohl bych si je ponechat?  
Navrátilová Samozřejmě. Jsou včerejší!

Here is a miniature crossword like the one Mr Smith is trying to do. Have a go! The answers are in the Key to the exercises. If a word contains ch, both 'letters' (which are one in Czech) go in the same space.



- A Kousek něčeho.  
B Katedrály.  
C Mužské jméno.  
1 Kde žijí Češi.  
2 Bez přestávky.  
3 Velká kočka.

něco jsem přece jenom uměl	<i>I did know some things</i>
zdržovat/zdržet	<i>to delay, hold up</i>
včasný	<i>timely, punctual</i>
doručení	<i>delivery</i>
to myslí	<i>what they mean is</i>
meziválečný	<i>inter-war (válka war)</i>
spisovatel	<i>writer</i>
židovský	<i>Jewish (Žid Jew)</i>
na kolik písmen	<i>(in/with) how many letters</i>
písmeno	<i>letter</i>
západně od	<i>to the west of</i>
předposlední	<i>next to last, last but one</i>
dohromady	<i>together, all told</i>
napadat/napadnout	<i>to occur/come to, dawn on</i>
značka	<i>sign, brand, mark, marque</i>
křemík	<i>silicon</i>
co je to křemík?	<i>what's silicon?</i>
prvek (-vku)	<i>element</i>
pravopis	<i>spelling, orthography</i>
vycházet/vyjít	<i>here, come out, work out</i>
to jsem ráda	<i>I am glad</i>

dějiny (f. pl)	<i>history</i>
panovat	<i>to reign</i>
mezera	<i>gap</i>
to zřejmě bude ...	<i>I expect that's ...</i>
budeme obědvat	<i>we're about to have lunch</i>
čí	<i>whose</i>
včerejší	<i>yesterday's</i>

umožňovat/umožnit *to make possible, facilitate, (with dat.) enable*

## Notes

### 5 Přece jenom: showing a positive attitude

This expression is hard to translate, and conveys more an attitude than a definable meaning. Basically it affirms that something *has* happened after there had been some doubt. Possible translations (in addition to letting intonation or forms of *do* suffice) include *so* at the beginning of the sentence, or *after all* at the end.

### 6 More about to

The *to* at the beginning of Mrs Navrátilová's second response (to myslí ...) is a kind of particle referring back to the previous question, but built into the sentence only loosely. A similar instance is her *to jsem ráda*, where the *to* picks up the preceding fact that has made her pleased.

The *to in co je to křemík* is part of the common formula for asking what something is when that something already has a name:

Co je to?	<i>What is this/that/it?</i>
Co je to ptakopysk?	<i>What is a platypus?</i>

All other occurrences of *to in* Dialogue 2 are various types of pronouns, equivalent to *it* or *that*, but often used indefinitely, ignoring the gender of the thing referred to.



## 7 'Yesterday's, today's, tomorrow's'

Learn the following adjectives from *time* adverbs.

včera	→	včerejší	yesterday's
dnes	→	dnešní	today's
zítra	→	zítejší	tomorrow's
loni	→	loňský	last year's
letos	→	letošní	this year's

## 8 Some names

- **Boleslav I** (reigned 929–967), famous for murdering his brother Wenceslas I, known to the Czechs as **svatý (St) Václav**, and to us *Good King Wenceslas*. Under Boleslav I the future Czech state covered Bohemia, Moravia, Cracow and possibly Lusatia and Silesia.
- The reign of **Boleslav II** (967–999) is chiefly associated with the outward recognition of Czech statehood that came with the institution of the bishopric at Prague in 973.
- **Karel Poláček** (1892–1944), a secular Jewish–Czech writer, journalist and satirical author of some enduring and endearing stories about children, Jews, footballers or card-players. Like so many, he died in Auschwitz (in Czech, **Osvětim**).

## 9 'Which', 'that' and 'who': and their substitutes

*The lady who ...*, *The man with whom ...*, *The town outside which ...*, etc. all contain forms of the English relative pronoun, the device which introduces relative clauses, and all could be translated by forms of *kteřý*. The Czech word has also to be used where English uses *that* or indeed nothing:

Návštěva, která tu byla ... *The visitor that was here ...*  
Boty, které jsem koupil včera ... *The shoes (which) I bought yesterday ...*

English commonly drops both the pronoun (when it is the subject of the relative clause) and any forms of the auxiliary verb 'to be', leaving just the participle:

*The woman (who is) sitting at the front is ...*

Czech may also use a participial construction:

žena, která sedí vpředu, je ..., *becoming*  
žena sedící vpředu je ...

The relative pronoun *kteřý* must share the gender and number of the noun to which it refers (*kteřá* in the last example is feminine and singular), its case is that required by its function in its own clause (here nominative, as the subject of *sedí*). As soon as it is replaced by the participle, which is a special kind of adjective, it must agree with the noun it is qualifying by case as well:

Vidím muže, který sedí vzadu. *I can see the man who is sitting at the back.*

but

Vidím muže sedícího vzadu. *I can see the man sitting at the back.*

*Muž* and *sedícího* are both masculine singular accusative whereas *kteřý* is masculine singular nominative.

If you return to Dialogue 2 on you can now see that:

- umožňujícího* agrees (masculine singular genitive) with *kódu*, but replaces (only in the economical language of crossword clues and some scholarly or official styles) *kteřý* *umožňuje*;
- pocházející* agrees (masculine singular nominative) with *spisovatel*, but replaces *kteřý* *pocházel*;
- ležícího* agrees (neuter singular genitive) with *města*, and replaces *kteřé* *leží*;
- panujících* agrees (plural genitive) with *knížat*, and replaces *kteřá* *panovala*. (For neuter plural agreement, see the end of Unit 16.)

Examples b and d show that the imperfective active participle can replace relative clauses in any tense, even if equivalent English sentences with full relative clauses do not have part of *be* as auxiliary: a writer *who came ...* (replacement by *[who was] coming* would be odd).

You need above all to be able to recognize this type of sentence in the various written styles where it may occur. You will have no active spoken need of it. You do, however, need to understand where the active participle comes from where it has evolved into an adjective.

### 10 How to say 'whose'

a When *whose* is a question word, use *čí*, a soft adjective. As the questioning word it has to stand at the front of the sentence. Since what is asked about is the other important element in the sentence, it stands at the end, as in English:

Čí jsou ty noviny? *Whose is that newspaper?*

But notice where to, the indefinite word for *it/this/that thing*, stands when needed:

Čí jsou to noviny?

or

Čí to jsou noviny? *Whose paper is it/this?*

b The same *čí* applies in indirect questions:

Nevěděl, čí to jsou noviny. *He didn't know whose paper it was.*

c When *whose* is used as a relative possessive pronoun, as in *The man whose dog bit me ... The girl whose friends I danced with ...* you need different forms, but in essence you already know them: just take the possessive pronouns *jeho*, *její* and *jejich*, and add *-ž*:

Muž, jehož pes mě kousl ... *The man whose dog bit me ...*

Dívka, jejíž pes mě kousl ... *The girl whose dog bit me ...*

Lidé, jejichž pes mě kousl ... *The people whose dog bit me ...*

Remember that *jehož* and *jejichž* will never change in form, but *jejíž*, like *její*, behaves like a 'soft' adjective:

Dívka, s jejímiž přáteli jsem tančil ... *The girl with whose friends I danced ...*

In writing, they are, like *který*, always preceded by a comma.

### Exercises

3 Insert appropriate forms of *čí*, *jehož*, *jejíž* or *jejichž*:

- a Dáma, ... psi se ztratili, je hraběnka.  
b To je ta kniha, ... autor zemřel v koncentračním táboře.

c Cestující, v ... kufrech jsou drobné elektrické spotřebiče (rádio, holicí strojek, kulma atd.), musí tuto skutečnost hlásit (*announce, report*).  
d Zeptali se, ... je kufr, ... obsah vzbudil pozornost.  
e Tady je ta židle, ... noha potřebuje opravu.  
f Řidiči, ... světla nesvítila, dali pokutu 250 korun.  
g V ... je to zájmu?  
h Dáma, o ... psoch nikdo nic nezjistil, žaluje hotel.

hraběnka	countess	skutečnost	reality, fact
tábor	camp	hlásit/na-	report
drobný	small	vzbuzovat/vzbudit	to arouse
spotřebič	appliance	pozornost	attention
kulma	curling tongs	řidič	driver
obsah	content(s)	pokuta	fine
atd. = a tak dále	etc.	zájem (-jmu)	interest
		žalovat/za-	to sue

4 Identify the imperfective active participles in the following passage and replace them by full relative clauses. (*Který* must always be preceded by a comma.)

Cizí státní příslušníci, disponující dostatkem kapitálu a přející si založit joint-venture s českým podnikem majícím k tomu oprávnění, musí svůj záměr ohlásit příslušnému ministerstvu. Adresy a telefonní čísla kanceláří zabývajících se těmito otázkami, lze obdržet na českých velvyslanectvích. Dokumentaci charakterizující celkový podnikový plán můžete zaslat poštou.

V minulosti zahraniční žadatelé, mající v úmyslu podnikat v ČR, často neznali, nebo plně nepochopili platné právní předpisy, proto se nejdříve přesvědčte, že máte k dispozici znění všech předpisů upravujících tuto činnost.

cizí státní příslušník	alien, foreign citizen
disponovat + inst.	to have available
dostatek	sufficiency
přát si	to wish
zakládat/založit	to found, set up
podnik	enterprise, company, firm
mít oprávnění k	be authorized to
záměr	intention
ohlašovat/ohlásit	to announce



příslušný	<i>the relevant</i>
zabývat se + inst.	<i>to deal with</i>
lze	<i>one can, it is possible</i>
obdržet (přv. only)	<i>to obtain</i>
velvyslanectví	<i>embassy</i>
charakterizovat	<i>to describe</i>
celkový	<i>overall</i>
podnikový	<i>corporate</i>
zasílat/zaslat (zašle)	<i>to send</i>
minulost	<i>the past</i>
žadatel	<i>applicant</i>
mít v úmyslu	<i>to intend</i>
ČR = Česká republika	
platný	<i>valid, in force</i>
právní	<i>legal</i>
předpis	<i>prescription, regulation</i>
přesvědčovat/přesvědčit	<i>to persuade, convince</i>
přesvědčit se	<i>to make sure</i>
mít k dispozici	<i>to have at one's disposal</i>
znění	<i>wording, text</i>
upravovat/upravit	<i>to adjust, amend, regulate</i>
činnost	<i>activity</i>

Note the irregular imperative of *přesvědčit*.

### **f** The Czech anthem

When the Czechoslovak Republic broke up, there was much arguing about whose was what, or how much of it, between the two daughter states. One matter, however, was very simple: the national anthem. Czechoslovakia had always had an anthem consisting of two distinct parts, one Czech and one Slovak. Each part then simply became the anthem of the respective new country.

The journalist and playwright Josef Kajetán Tyl's (1808–56) words, from his play *Fidlovačka*, run to several verses, but only the first verse is the official Czech anthem. The stage music, including the tune to which the anthem is still sung, is by František Škroup (1801–62), who also wrote the first original Czech opera.

### **f** Kde domov můj?

Kde domov můj, kde domov můj?  
Voda hučí po lučinách,  
bory šumí po skalínách,  
v sadě skví se jara květ,  
zemský ráj to na pohled.  
A to je(st) ta krásná země,  
země česká, domov můj,  
země česká, domov můj.

*Where is my home, where is my home?  
Water murmurs among the meadows,  
Pine-woods sigh among the cliffs,  
Orchards are radiant with spring blossom,  
An earthly paradise to the gaze.  
And that is that beautiful land,  
Land of Bohemia, my home,  
Land of Bohemia, my home.*



# 18

## nejdřív uděláme pořádek v Líbině skřini

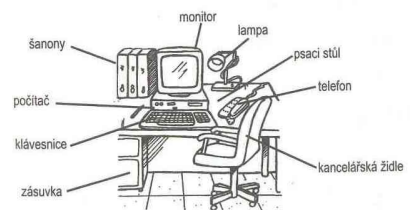
first we'll tidy Liba's wardrobe

- In this unit you will learn
- how to say more about possession
  - how to make suggestions
  - how to use the Czech equivalent of -ed

### Dialogue 1

It is a spring Saturday and Mrs Navrátilová would dearly like to do the spring-cleaning (jarní úklid).

- Navrátil** Dnes je patnáctého března a je docela hezky. Co budeme dělat? Nechcete někam jet?
- Navrátilová** Řekla jsem ti přece včera, že chci začít jarní úklid. Nemusíš u toho být, jestli nechceš.
- Navrátil** Tak já půjdu do laboratoře. Aspoň se ti tu nebudu plést. Jenom mi nic nevyhazuji!
- Navrátilová** Dobře. Nejdříve uděláme pořádek v Líbině skřini, potom se pustím do Štěpánova pokoje.
- Navrátil** Tak ahoj. Vráťím se kolem půl šesté.
- Navrátilová** (volá děti) Libo, Štěpo, uklízíme! Budete mi pomáhat?
- Liba** Ale mamí, já mám pořádek a nechci věci přehazovat.
- Navrátilová** Musíme odtáhnout nábytek a všechno důkladně vyčistit. A zeď za postelí potřebuje přemalovat.
- Liba** Tak dobře, ale já to udělám sama.
- Štěpán** Když budete malovat v Líbině pokoji, pak já chci, abyste vymalovali taky můj – na zelenou. Ta růžová, kterou tam mám, je pro holky.
- Liba** (matce) Mně růžová nevádí. Co kdybychom si pokoje vyměnili? Já se pohodlně vejdu do Štěpovy ložnice.
- Navrátilová** No nevím. Co ty na to, Štěpo? Máme to udělat?
- Štěpán** To víte, že ne. Já přece nepůjdu do menšího! Ledaže do tátovy pracovny. Tam jsou krásné poličky na moje věci.
- Navrátilová** A kam s tátou? Nesmíme vyházet jeho věci, natož jeho samotného!



Pan Navrátil svou pracovnu raději opustil

nemusíš u toho být	you needn't be around
u toho	at it, there (at the time)
vyhazovat/vyhodit	to throw away/out
v Libině skříni	in Liba's wardrobe
skříň (f. -ně)	cupboard, wardrobe
Štěpánův (pokoj)	Stephen's (room)
Štěpa	affectionate form of Štěpán Steve
uklízet/uklidit	to tidy (up)
já mám pořádek	my room's tidy
odtahovat/odtáhnout	to pull out
čistit/vy-	to clean
důkladný	thorough
přemalovávat/přemalovat	to repaint, paint over
když .., pak ...	if ..., then ...
(malovat něco) na zelenou	(to paint something) green
růžový	pink
holka	(informal) girl
mně růžová nevadí	I don't mind pink
co kdyby ..?	what if ..?
do Štěpovy ložnice	into Steve's bedroom
no nevím	I don't know about that
co ty na to	what do you think
máme to udělat?	should we do it?
to víte, že ne	certainly not
ledaže	(conjunction) unless
tátova pracovna	Dad's study
polička	(diminutive of police) shelf
kam s tátou?	where do we put your dad?
natož	let alone
opouštět/opustit	leave, abandon
přehazovat/přehodit	to throw (something) over, to jumble, cause disarray
vyměnovat (si)/vyměnit (si)	to exchange, swap (with one another)
samotný	(emphatic pronoun) (him-, etc.) -self

## Notes

### 1 Making suggestions

You have already seen polite inquiries expressed as negative questions. Pan Navrátil's *Nechcete někam jet?* is an example of the type. Paní Navrátilová's positive question *Budete mi pomáhat?* is slightly more abrupt.

Two other questioning phrases are also used:

**a co kdyby,** which will have to change according to the subject (*we - kdybychom*, in Dialogue 1). It is very close to English *What if* with *were* and similar.

**b co X na to?** asks what X thinks about it and seeks either agreement or a counter-proposal. The *na* 'accompanies' the verb *říkat/frict*, which is simply understood. The full version of paní Navrátilová's question would be: *Co na to říkáš ty?*

Outside the present tense, the same question merely asks for facts or predictions:

Co on (řekl) na to?

*What did he say to that?*

## 2 Colours

You have met several colour terms in passing, usually describing something other than the colours themselves, as in *černý mrak* (*black cloud*) or *hnědý kufr* (*brown suitcase*). To talk about colours themselves, use the adjective form, but in the feminine: *růžová* is really short for *růžová barva* (*pink colour*) (*barva* also means *paint* and *dye*).

Painting a thing a certain colour means achieving a change of state, the new colour is a goal, hence the need for the preposition *na*:

přemalovat zdi na fialovou *to repaint the walls purple*

The noun forms of colour names are not much used outside the realm of art, poetry, fashion or paintmaking, though these are worth knowing:

berlínská modř *Prussian blue*  
tiskařská čern *printers' ink/black'*

Here is a summary table of basic colour terms (some already met, some new):

černý	black	bílý	white
červený	red	hnědý	brown
modrý	blue	fialový	purple
zelený	green	růžový	pink
žlutý	yellow	šedý, šedivý	grey
oranžový	orange	stříbrný	silver
zlatý	gold(en)	barva	colour, paint, dye

### 3 Štěpánova ložnice and Líbín pokoj – expressing possession where the possessor is named

The English expression of possession by 's is matched in Czech by special endings to form possessive adjectives.

The ending -ův (-ov-; see table in Note 5) is added to the stem of masculine words:

Štěpánův, tátův, sousedův      *Stephen's, Dad's, the neighbour's*

and -in to feminines:

Líbín, mámin, sousedčín      *Líba's, Mum's, the (female) neighbour's*

These are the basic nominative singular masculine forms.

As you can see, the -i- of the feminine ending causes some final consonants to change. The full range of changes is:

d → ě	Milada/Miladin	<i>Milada's</i>
t → ř	teta/tetin	<i>(my) aunt's</i>
n → ň	žena/ženin	<i>the woman's</i>
These three show only in pronunciation, not spelling.		
r → ř	dcera/dceřin	<i>(my) daughter's</i>
k → ě	matka/matčín	<i>mother's</i>
ch → š	snacha/snašin	<i>daughter-in-law's</i>
g → ž	Olga/Olžin	<i>Olga's</i>

### 4 When can't you use possessive adjectives?

Possessive adjectives may be formed from given names, pet names, surnames and common nouns of most types.

You cannot form them if:

- the possessor is expressed by more than one word;
- the possessor is plural;
- the word denoting the possessor is adjectival in form;
- the word denoting the possessor is grammatically neuter;
- the 'possessor' is not human.

In the first three instances you must use the genitive:

romány Karla Poláčka	<i>K. P.'s novels</i>
tradice Angličanů	<i>the traditions of the English</i>
politika Thatcherové	<i>Thatcher's policy</i>
knihy Škvoreckého	<i>Škvorecký's books</i>

In this type, where the adjectival noun is masculine, inversion is common: Škvoreckého knihy, similar to which you have already seen Palackého most (*Palacký Bridge*).

In the case of neuter nouns, the genitive is also more likely: hlava prasete (*the pig's head* – as opposed to prasečí hlava *a pig's head*, i.e. 'what sort of head', not 'whose'), but sometimes a 'normal' adjective is used: dětský pokoj (*the child's room*, as well as *at the children's room, nursery*).

For non-human 'possessors', generally use the genitive: listy dubu (*the oak tree's leaves*) (but dubové listy *oak leaves*).

Bear in mind that 'more than one word in the possessor phrase' refers to Czech, not English. In English, you would have to say 'my brother's', 'our mother's', but Czech kinship terms usually dispense with můj/náš, so: bratrovo auto will, usually, itself mean *my brother's car*.

### 5 Possessive adjectives: Janův – 'John's'

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	Janův	Janova	Janovo	{ Janoví* Janovy	Janovy	Janova
Accusative	{ Janův Janova*	Janovu	Janovo	Janovy	Janovy	Janova
Genitive	Janova	Janovy	Janova		Janových	
Dative	Janovu	Janově	Janovu		Janovým	
Locative		(o) Janově			Janových	
Instrumental	Janovým	Janovou	Janovým		Janovými	

Points to notice:

- a forms marked with an asterisk are for masculine animate agreement (Janoví rodiče *Jan's parents*);
- b the case-endings are short, very like familiar hard noun endings, except in the instrumental singular and plural, and genitive, dative and locative plural.



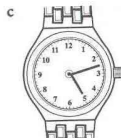
c the male-possessor ending changes from *-ův* to *-ov-* when any further ending is added.  
d the case endings after the female-possessor ending *-in* are exactly the same as above (*Janini rodiče = Jana's parents*).

### Exercises

1 Revise the sections in earlier units on dates (see Unit 11, Note 8) and times (see Unit 9, Notes 2 and 9), then give the dates (*Dnes je ...*) and times (*Je ...*) in Czech as shown on the various calendar pages and clock faces:

a

BŘEZEN	
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30
3	10 17 24 31
4	11 18 25
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27



d

ZÁŘÍ	
5	12 18 25
6	13 19 26
7	14 20 27
1	8 15 21 28
2	9 16 22 29
3	10 17 23 30
4	11 18 24

e

ČERVENEC	
4	11 18 25
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30
3	10 17 24 31



g

PROSINEC	
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30
3	10 17 24 31
4	11 18 25



i

LEDEN	
3	10 17 24
4	11 18 25
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30

j

ÚNOR	
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
3	9 16 23
4	10 17 24
5	11 18 25
6	12 19 26
7	13 20 27



l

SRPEN	
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30
3	10 17 24 31
4	11 18 25
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27
7	14 21 28

m

LISTOPAD	
7	14 21 28
1	8 15 22 29
2	9 16 23 30
3	10 17 24
4	11 18 25
5	12 19 26
6	13 20 27



The answers are in the Key to the exercises at the back of the book, and they offer just one possibility. Some other solutions are possible, so double-check with the earlier sections or ask a Czech friend for confirmation.

2 Complete the following sentences:





- a (*My brother's wife*) ztratila klíče od auta.  
b Byla na procházce s (*the neighbour's dog*).  
c Nikdy nečetla (*Shakespeare's plays*).  
d Koupili jsme parcelu (*behind Peter's cottage*).  
e Během jarního úklidu našla (*under Vera's bed*) starého medvídku.  
f Báł se, že ho (*Stephen's friends*) nepoznají.  
g Na (*Mrs Smith's fridge*) stála láhev mléka.  
h Šli mu naproti na (*Wilson Station*).  
i Udělali to (*without Marie's agreement*).  
j Nevyhazujte (*Zdenka's old books*)!  
k (*St Vitus' Cathedral*) vidíte odevšad.  
l Studenti hráli na kytaru (*on Charles Bridge*).  
m (*My sister's cat*) má pět koťat.  
n (*The guide's last words*) jsme kvůli letadlu neslyšeli.

parcela	plot (of land)	medvídek	teddy bear
lednička	fridge	chrám	cathedral

3 Compose questions and suggestions along the following lines (there will be two acceptable possibilities):

- a What if we were to ask Peter?  
b Suppose Líba didn't know?  
c How about going to a restaurant for dinner?  
d Shall we have a beer?  
e What do you say to that?  
f What did she say to that?

4 Are you good with flag colours? Six flags are reproduced below, but unfortunately they are in black and white. Say what their colours are in Czech!

- a Česká republika  b Wales   
c Německo  d Švýcarsko 

e Irsko



f Francie



## Dialogue 2

Continuation of the previous dialogue.

- Štěpa** Myslíš, že by mu to hodně vadilo? Většinu věcí má stejně v laboratoři.
- Navrátilová** No nevím. Musíme se ho večer zeptat. Kdoví, možná bude souhlasit.
- Liba** To asi ne. Náš otec nemá rád změny.
- Navrátilová** Nebudu ho přemlouvat, jenom se o tom u večere zmíníme jako o možnosti a uvidíme, jak zareaguje.
- Štěpa** Můj pokoj je asi o dva metry delší a o metr širší, vejde se mu tam třeba i křeslo a bude si tam moct vodit návštěvy. Vsadím se, že to ocení!
- Liba** Kdypak tu měl někoho naposled?
- Navrátilová** Náhodou před týdnem. Zastavil se nějaký kolega pana Smithe z Anglie – ty jsi nebyla doma, zřejmě proto o tom nevíš.
- Štěpa** A kde ho tatínek přijal?
- Navrátilová** V obýváku – a zrovna když jsem chtěla luxovat. Proto byla pozdě večere, všechno se tím posunulo.
- Štěpa** Vidíte, o co by bylo lepší, kdybychom si s tatínkem vyměnili pokoje. Já dostanu poličky, on bude mít místo pro návštěvy a ty si budeš moct luxovat, kdykoli se ti bude chtít.
- Evening, and the suggestion has just been made.*
- Navrátil** To je sice velmi hezké, ale: za prvé ve Štěpánově pokoji není přípoj na telefon, za druhé je málo zásuvek, abych tam mohl mít počítač, tiskárnu, kopírku, stolní lampu, konvici a rozhlas, za třetí Štěpovo okno je rozbité a já nemám čas ho spravit, za čtvrté nějaké poličky navíc bych zřejmě potřeboval i tam a za páté dnes ráno jsem odvezl do práce ty dvě bedny knih, které už nepotřebuju, a z práce přivezl na jejich místo vyřazené křeslo, aby si moje návštěvy měly kam sednout!
- Navrátilová** Tušila jsem, že bude někde háček.

vadilo by mu to	he would mind
možná bude souhlasit	he may agree
to asi ne	I shouldn't think so

o tom ... jako o možnosti	změna	change
vsadím se, že ...	reagovat/zakřeslo	about it as (about) a possibility
sázet/vsadit	i křeslo	to react
oceňovat/ocení	vsadím se, že ...	even an armchair
kdypak	sázet/vsadit	I bet (that ...)
náhodou před týdnem	oceňovat/ocení	to bet
zřejmě proto	kdypak	to appreciate; to price
přijímat/přijmout (přijme, přijal)	náhodou před týdnem	when (see Note 6b)
obývací	zřejmě proto	a week ago, as it happens
luxovat/vyposunovat/posunout	přijímat/přijmout (přijme, přijal)	that's perhaps why
o co by bylo lepší	obývací	to see, receive
za prvé (etc.)	luxovat/vyposunovat/posunout	informal for obývací pokoj
přípoj (m)	o co by bylo lepší	'to Hoover', in fact to '(electro)lux'
zásuvka	za prvé (etc.)	to shift, delay
počítač (m)	přípoj (m)	how much better it would be
tiskárna	zásuvka	firstly, for one thing
kopírka	počítač (m)	connection
stolní lampa	tiskárna	socket, informal also plug
konvice	kopírka	computer
i tam	stolní lampa	printing works; printer
bedna	konvice	photocopier
vyřazený	i tam	table lamp
tušit	bedna	kettle
háček	vyřazený	there too
	tušit	(large) box, crate
	háček	discarded, scrapped, thrown out
		to guess, have a presentiment
		here, snag

přemlouvat/přemluvit to talk someone round, persuade  
 zmiňovat se/zmínit se + o (+ loc.) to mention  
 zrovna když jsem chtěla luxovat just as I was about to Hoover  
 aby si návštěvy měly kam sednout so visitors have somewhere to sit

## Notes

### 6 Attitudes

a Czech has many words to convey various types of conjecture. Some have direct equivalents in English, such as kdoví, the rhetorical *who knows*, pravděpodobně (*probably*) or the



informal *vsadím se (I bet)*. Others may have direct equivalents in English, but the tendency is to use something different. This applies above all to the modal particles that express possibility and probability. It would be more natural to translate *možná bude souhlasit* as *he may (or might) agree*, rather than 'perhaps he will agree'. Liba's *To asi ne*, short for *asi nebude souhlasit*, is perhaps best expressed by *I don't think he will* or *I shouldn't think so* than by 'perhaps not'. The conjecture in *zřejmě proto o tom nevíš* is far closer in tone to *I expect that's why you don't know* than to 'apparently for that reason you don't know'; and *zřejmě bych potřeboval* has more the force of *I might well need* than 'evidently I would need'.

This is a subtle area in which the dictionary can only help in part. In English the verb forms (*may, might, should, expect, guess* and others) are heavily used in contrast to the Czech particles (*asi, možná, zřejmě, třeba, patrně*). Much conversational practice is needed for the learner to appreciate fully the subtleties of the equivalences.

b Adding *-pak* to the question words adds a degree of informality, which can come across as sarcasm, irony, sympathy, condescension or irritation. In Liba's *kdypak* utterance in Dialogue 2 a reasonable equivalent might be with *Now when ..?* A brusque *Kdepak jsi byl?* could well be *Where on earth have you been?*, while a solicitous *Copak se ti stalo?* could be *Dear me, what have you done?*

Thanks to the extra shade of meaning one or two words have special uses:

- *kdepak!* in reply to a suggestion is abruptly dismissive – *not a bit of it!, not likely!* (or the modern *no way!*);
- *copak*, in addition to being a pronoun, is also a particle that usually conveys surprise:

Copak si už kupuje další nové auto?	<i>Do you mean to say he's buying another new car already?</i>
-------------------------------------	--

c Adding a fundamentally redundant *si* (*for oneself*) to the verb gives the sense that the activity is a source of enjoyment, pleasure, comfort or other positive feeling. For this reason many verbs occur almost automatically with *si*: *sednout si* (*to sit down*), *lehnout si* (*to lie down*) or *hrát si* (*to play*) are common examples. Even a simple sentence like *Čte* (*He is reading*) can be

converted to *Čte si* (*He's having a read* – presumably purely for leisure).

*Si* may be added even in the case of activities that are perhaps not inherently enjoyable, though that may mean adding a hint of irony. Paní Navrátilová had merely wanted to vacuum (*luxovat*) the living room. But when Štěpán uses *luxovat si*, he is conveying an attitude, saying, in effect, that she will no longer be deprived of the pleasure, she will be able to Hoover to her heart's content. These English attempts to convey this use of *si* are too wordy; the actual English equivalent is an appropriate tone of voice.

Any other function of *si* in a sentence predominates and the 'pleasure dimension' doesn't enter into it.

Kupuje si novou kravatu.	<i>He is buying a new tie.</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------------

This does not suggest that this is a pleasurable exercise, but that the intended wearer is *he*.

vyměnit si s někým pokoje	<i>to change rooms with someone</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

*Si* here guarantees the meaning that A has B's old room and vice versa, not that A and B swapped their present rooms for different ones.

## 7 za prvé, za druhé: ordering facts and events

Use *za* and the neuter singular form of ordinal numerals to express *firstly, secondly*, etc. Do not confuse these with *poprvé, podruhé, potřetí*, etc. (*for the first/second/third time*) or *pokaždé* (*every time*).

*Next (time)* is either *příště*, implying that the next event is just one of many:

Příště budeme opakovat číslovky.	<i>Next time we shall revise numerals.</i>
----------------------------------	--

or *podruhé*, suggesting only that 'this time' is, or 'last time' was, the first time:

Až člověk přistane na měsíc podruhé ...	<i>Next time man lands on the moon ...</i>
---	--

Some contexts allow for both:

Až tu budeme příště/podruhé,...	<i>Next time we're here,...</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

## 8 'Last'

There are two Czech adverbs meaning (for the) last (time).

a To refer to the most recent occurrence of an event like the present event use *minule* or *naposled(y)*:

Když jsme tu byli minule/  
naposled, pršelo. *Last time we were here it  
was raining.*

b To refer to the last occurrence of a particular event use *naposled(y)*:

Kdy tu byl naposled?  
Byl tu naposledy v červnu.  
Toš udělal naposled!  
*When was he here last?  
He was last here in June.  
That's the last time you do  
that! (Lit. 'you have done  
that for the last time!')*

## 9 rozbitý and vyřazený – 'broken' and 'cast out' (passive participles)

Like the active participles learned in Unit 17, the 'passive participles' (forms denoting something *done*, not *doing*) are also common as adjectives. In English, the vast majority of forms end in *-ed*, frequently pronounced as *t*, as in, say, *cropped* (neatly cropped lawn). Sometimes a form with *t* may coincide with other forms of the same verb, as in *cut* (the freshly cut grass). So *t/d* is the main type. Rather fewer use *n* instead: *done*, *given*, *hidden*.

In Czech, the proportions are reversed: the vast majority use *n*, in the ending *-aný* or *-ený* (*-ěný*), while just a few use *t*, in *-tý*. You have already met *unavený* (*tired*), *zklamáný* (*disappointed*) and *rozbitý* (*broken*), and in Dialogue 2 *vyřazený* (*cast off, thrown out*).

## How to form the passive participle

• Most monosyllabic verbs use forms with *-tý*, with a short vowel in front of it:

bít → bitý *beaten* hnout → hnutý *moved*  
vzít → vzatý *taken*

and so will their, often commoner, compounds:

zabítý *killed* ohnutý *bent*  
převzatý *taken over* přejetý *run over*

including some compounds of 'dead' words:

přijmout → přijatý *received, accepted*  
najmout → najatý *hired*

Monosyllables ending in *-at*, and their compounds, generally use *-n-*:

dát → daný *given*  
vybrat → vybraný *chosen, selected*  
ozvat → pozvaný *invited*  
napsat → napsaný *written*

Exercise 5 Make your own phrases with participles formed in this way:

(rozlít *to spill*) + (mléko) a *spilt milk*  
(nezvat) + (host) b *uninvited guest*  
(přibít *to nail up/on*) + c *nailed-up posters*  
(plakáty *posters*)  
(připsat) + (písmena *letters*) d *letters added*  
(zahnout *to bend*) + (nos) e *crooked nose*

• Verbs whose infinitives end in *-at* use *-aný*:

udělat → udělaný *made* slibovat → slibovaný *promised*  
poslat → poslaný *sent*  
irrespective of conjugation.

Exercise 6 Form more phrases of your own:

(zadat *to reserve*) + (stůl) a *reserved table*  
(uznávat *to recognize, acknowledge*) + (autorita) b *recognized authority*  
(zakázat *to ban, forbid*) + (ovoce) c *forbidden fruit*  
(informovat) + d *informed sources*  
(zdroj [m] *source*)

• Most others use *-ěný/ený*:

otevřít → otevřený *open(ed)*  
pochopit → pochopený *grasped, understood*  
vyplnit → vyplněný *filled in (of a form)*  
objevit → objevený *discovered*  
zkoušet → zkoušený *examined (of a student)*  
vyrábět → vyráběný *manufactured*

but because of the *-ě-* there will be some consonant changes, and spellings with *-ený*:

t → c as in ztracený	lost (ztratit)
d → z as in vyřazený	thrown out (vyřadit)
s → š as in ohlášený	reported (ohlásit)
z → ž as in vožený	transported (vozit)
sl → šl as in vymyšlený	fictitious (vymyslet = think up)
st → št as in pojištěný	insured (pojistit)

though not all verbs show such changes, e.g.:

cítěný	felt	(cítit)
zazděný	bricked-up	(zazdíť)
odsouhlasený	carried (in a vote)	(odsouhlasit)
omezený	limited	(omezit)
kreslený	drawn	(kreslit)

Which verbs do or do not change can usually be verified in the dictionary. The form of any secondary imperfectives is often a guide (ztracet, nahrazovat and ohlašovat would help in the first three examples, vymýšlet, pojistovat, zazdívat and omezovat in some of the others).

Exercise 7 Make some more phrases of your own:

(vyžehlit to iron) + (košile)	a	an ironed shirt
(zlepšit to improve) + (výkon performance)	b	improved performance
(ztratit) + (Ráj Paradise)	c	Paradise Lost
(přihlásit to register) + (cizinec)	d	unregistered alien
(omezit) + (prostředky)	e	unlimited resources
(vypůjčit si to borrow) + (kolo)	f	a borrowed bicycle
(promyslet to think through) + (návrh)	g	a well thought-out proposal
(spojit to join) + (národ)	h	United Nations

- Verbs whose infinitives end in -st or -ct usually use the present tense to form the passive participle:

přinést-přinese → přinesený	brought (on foot)
opéct-opěče → opečený	roasted
vyvést-vyvede → vyvedený	led out
krást-kradne → ukradený	stolen (impfv.), but
ukrást-ukradne → ukradený	stolen (pfv.)
říct-řekne → řečený	said

Exercise 8 Make some phrases of your own:

(dovézt) + (stroj)	a	imported machines
(nalézt to find) + (štěstí)	b	new-found happiness

(unést to hijack) + (letadlo)	c	the hijacked plane
(okrást to rob) + (turista)	d	the robbed tourist

- Verbs ending in -nout behave variously, according to whether -nout is dropped or not, and should be learned individually as you meet them:

zapomenout → zapomenutý	forgotten
vytisknout → vytištěný	printed
dosáhnout → dosažený	achieved
nadchnout se (to enthuse) → nadšený	enthusiastic
zahrnout → zahrnutý	included
stisknout → stisknutý	squeezed

## 10 Aspect and the passive participles

Passive participles are formed from verbs of either aspect, and the usual differences apply:

Kradené věci are simply *stolen things* in general, as opposed to ukradené věci, some particular items that have been stolen and the affects of their particular loss are felt. Kupovaný chleba is of the type normally bought, 'shop bread', as opposed to koupený chleba, the bread that has (just) been bought as intended. Uznávaná autorita (a recognized authority) is expressed by the imperfective, because the recognition has gone on, been renewed and still applies.

## Exercises

- 9 Express the following ideas without using modal verbs:

- He may come.
- I expect you're right.
- He must have left the keys at home.
- There may have been 20 people there.
- He's unlikely to come.

- 10 Describe your needs to a Czech friend, beginning Potřebuju ...:

- a freshly washed (prát/vyprat) shirt.
- those two recently published (vydávat/vydat) translations.
- to find your lost watch.
- to see the newly opened bridge before (než) you go home.



- e to rest, because your feet are tired.  
g to repeat the forgotten words from Unit 8.  
g to open the locked (*zamykat/zamknout*) wardrobe.  
h three talented young people for the film you want to make (*natáčet/natočit to make* [a film]).  
i a cautiously formulated (*formulovat*) letter which you want to send the hotel manager.  
j to mend your broken briefcase (*aktovka*).

### **i** Possessives and place names

On any Czech street map you will see countless cases of possessive adjectives. In effect the Czechs say *Wilson's Station*, *Smetana's Embankment*, *Jirásek's Square*, *Charles' Bridge* – *Wilsonovo nádraží*, *Smetanovo nábřeží*, *Jiráskovo náměstí*, *Karlův most* – where English uses just the name (*Victoria Street*, *Russell Square*). Similar forms are found in the names of many towns and villages: *Králův Dvůr* (*King's Court*) (but *Dvůr Králové* *Queen's Court*, with the genitive of *Králová queen-consort*), *Kardašova Řečice*, *Golčův Jeníkov*. The final *-ov* of the last, occurring in many Czech and other Slav place names, is itself an historic version of *-ův*.

Some very ancient Prague and other street names based on the names of people use the adjective ending *-ský* that now cannot be used this way: *Václavské náměstí* (*Wenceslas Square*). Others of the same sort refer not to a person, but to an adjoining church: *Havelská ulice* refers not to some medieval Havel, but to the church of St Havel and *Voršílská ulice* not to an Ursula (*Voršila*), but to the Ursuline convent.

# 19

dejte si něco na  
ochutnání  
have something to taste

- In this unit you will learn
- how to use *-ing* (as a noun) to state your likes and dislikes
  - how to say what things are good for
  - how to recognize and form 'passive' sentences

## Dialogue 1

Paní Navrátilová telefonuje Smithovým, aby je pozvala.



- Navrátilová** Dobrý večer, paní Smithová. Poslyšte, dělám zítra malé pohoštění pro Zdeňkova kolegu. Mohli byste přijít?
- Mrs Smith** Myslím, že ano. Zeptám se manžela, až přijde – šel s dětmi do galerie moderního umění.
- Navrátilová** Dobře. Zavoláte mi pak?
- Mrs Smith** Samozřejmě. Nebudete potřebovat pomoc s vařením? Nechci se chlubit, ale kdysi jsem vyhrála cenu za pečení dortů!
- Navrátilová** Jste velmi hodná. Sladkosti jsem už objednala, ale jestli chcete pomoci s napichováním jednohubek ...
- Mrs Smith** Velmi ráda. V kolik mám přijít?
- Navrátilová** Řekněme v půl páté. Dobře?
- Mrs Smith** Dobře. A děkuju za pozvání.
- Navrátilová** Nemáte vůbec zač. Potěšení je na naší straně.
- Druhý den večer. Paní Smithová je už u Navrátilů, kde pomáhala, jak se s paní Navrátilovou dohodly. Pan Smith přichází pozdě – zapomněl na včerejší pozvání.*
- Mr Smith** (paní Navrátilové) Nezlobte se, že jdu pozdě. Úplně jsem na to zapomněl – měl jsem spoustu vyřizování, a navíc autobus měl zpoždění. Nejhorší je, že jsem se i najedl. Nebylo to už k vydržení.
- Navrátilová** To nevdá. Dáte si aspoň něco na ochutnání.
- Navrátil** Ano, pojďte mezi nás a povězte tady Ježkovým něco o sobě.
- Ježek** Vaše paní nám právě říkala, jak má ráda vaření, ale o vás víme jen to, že si libujete v luštění křížovek. Máte ještě jiné koníčky?
- Mr Smith** Hlavně plavání a pěší turistiku, ale na pěstování jakýchkoli koníčků nemám mnoho času.
- Ježek** To já znám – já jsem musel nechat domácího kutění, které mě dost bavovalo.

- Mr Smith** Děti jsou na tom líp – syn tráví celé hodiny vymyšlením nových počítačových her a dcera se věnuje hře na housle a jednou týdně chodí do kursu aranžování květin.
- Navrátil** Ano, Smithovy děti jsou ospravdu šikovné a mají pěkné chování.
- Mrs Smith** Ale zlobit umějí taky.

poslyšte	<i>listen, I say</i>
zavoláte mi pak?	<i>Will you ring me later?</i>
vaření	<i>cooking</i>
chlubit se	<i>to boast</i>
vyhrávat/vyhrát	<i>to win</i>
pečení	<i>baking; roasting</i>
sladkost	<i>sweetness; something sweet</i>
objednávat/objednat	<i>to order</i>
napichování	<i>spiking, putting on cocktail sticks</i>
nemáte vůbec zač	<i>not at all</i>
potěšení	<i>the pleasure</i>
dohodnout se	<i>to agree, come to an agreement</i>
vyřizování	<i>things to sort out</i>
nebylo to k vydržení	<i>it was beyond endurance</i>
vydržet	<i>to (with)stand, bear</i>
dáte si něco na ochutnání	<i>you can have a bite to taste</i>
ochutnávat/ochutnat	<i>to try, taste (food, drink)</i>
pojďte mezi nás	<i>come and join us</i>
libovat si v něčem	<i>to take satisfaction in, enjoy</i>
luštění křížovek	<i>doing crosswords</i>
luštit/vy- or roz-	<i>to solve</i>
koníček	<i>hobby</i>
plavání	<i>swimming</i>
pěší turistika	<i>hiking</i>
pěstování	<i>cultivation</i>
nechávat/nechat (+ gen.)	<i>to give up</i>
domácí kutění	<i>DIY</i>
kutit (si)	<i>to tinker about</i>
na tom jsou líp děti	<i>the children are better off</i>
být na tom dobře	<i>to be well off</i>
trávit/s-	<i>to spend (time)</i>
vymyšlení	<i>thinking up</i>
počítačová hra	<i>computer game</i>
věnovat se (+ dat.)	<i>to devote oneself to</i>
hra na housle	<i>violin-playing</i>



housle (f.pl.)	violin
jednou týdně	once a week
kurs	course
aranžování květin	flower-arranging
Smithovy děti	the Smith(s)' children
chování	behaviour

dělat pohoštění to give/have a (small formal) party  
jednohubka canapé or other titbit that goes into the mouth  
(huba vulg.) at one go (jednou)  
nejhorší je, že jsem se i najedl the worst thing is that I've  
even eaten  
bavívat (from bavit to amuse, give pleasure)

## Notes

### 1 Saying you like (doing) something

Not only can you mít rád something or combine rád with any other verb to say you like doing such and such, you can trávit (spend time) (+ inst.) on it – which need not always mean that it is for pleasure. You might also věnovat (devote) time to it, using the dative, or věnovat se (devote oneself, one's energies) to it. Then, from the same origin as líbit se (to please, to appeal to) (Líbí se mi to = I like it) there is the verb líbovat si + v (+ locative case), meaning to enjoy, relish. The verb pěstovat means to cultivate, grow of plants, but is widely used for the cultivation of all kinds of activities. Most of these are illustrated in the Dialogue. Yet another possibility is the verb bavit (to amuse):

Baví mě chodit na houby. I like going mushrooming.  
Nebaví mě sedět doma. I don't like sitting at home.

The reflexive bavit se means either to amuse oneself (+ inst. for the result of the activity, or s + inst. for the means) or to chat:

Bavili se tapetováním ložnice. They were amusing themselves by wallpapering the bedroom.

Bavíme se s počítačem. We're having fun with the computer.

Baví se venku se sousedkou. She's outside chatting to her neighbour.

## 2 -ání/-ení: '-ing' words

These are the verbal nouns from the various verbs concerned – usually translated, once again, by the English -ing form. You have met several in the course of the book, simply as extra neuter nouns ending in -í. Some, like umění (art), pohoštění (party, refreshments) or potěšení (pleasure), have become separated from their verbs (umět to know how; hostit/po- to host, treat; těšit/po- to console), some are the only available way of expressing an activity as a noun, as opposed to the verb (plavání swimming); yet others could be used, but might be avoided because some other, preferable, noun may exist in competition with it (hraní playing could be used to refer to the manner of someone's playing, as opposed to hra, denoting the fact of playing).

You form the verbal noun in the same way as the passive participle (Unit 18), except for the noun ending -í and the lengthening of a in words from -at verbs – but not from verbs of one syllable: hrát:hraní (play-ing), práť:praní (wash-ing).

A small number end in -tí: bytí (being), šití (sewing), použití (use), hnutí (movement in various senses). Moreover, while the passive participle can only be formed from verbs that can have a direct object, the verbal noun can be formed from almost all verbs and from both aspects: čtení (reading – in general), přečtení (the – completed – reading of a particular thing). Sometimes there may be a conspicuous meaning change (viewed from the English perspective):

vydávání knih	book publishing
but	
první vydání knihy	the first edition of the book
• As in English, what was the direct object of the verb goes into the genitive (of) after the verbal noun:	
prát košile	to wash shirts
praní košil	the washing of shirts
• If the noun following a verb (what would be the English direct object) is in any other case, or needs a preposition, then that other case or prepositional phrase is also used after the verbal noun:	
mávat kapesníkem	to wave one's handkerchief
mávání kapesníkem	handkerchief-waving

prát v pračce  
praní v pračce

to wash by (in a) machine  
washing by machine

- The verbal noun from reflexive verbs loses *se*, except to avoid ambiguity:

chovat se  
chování  
učit jazyky  
učení jazyků  
učit se jazyky  
učení se jazyků

to act, behave  
behaviour  
to teach languages  
language-teaching  
to study languages  
language-learning

(An older construction uses the dative of subjects taught or learnt, hence *učení (se) jazykům*.)

- English has some variety in the way it uses its verbal nouns: 'the washing of shirts', 'washing shirts' or 'shirt-washing'. Watch out for them, beware when an *-ing* form is to be understood as a noun (and not one of its other uses), and always rethink it so that it is like the first structure: that is the only one that matches Czech.

### 3 Idioms based on the verbal noun

Two common ones are:

- a **být k** + verbal noun *to be -able*, or *to be for -ing*: this is very common in the negative:

Není to k vydržení.  
Pokoj je k pronajmutí.  
Slovník není k dostání.

*It is not endurable.  
The room is for rent(ing).  
The dictionary cannot be got,  
isn't gettable, to be had.*

Or the even more idiomatic:

Je to k zbláznění.

*It's enough to drive you mad.*

This can often be met in a reduced form, without the verb:

pokoj k pronajmutí  
něco ke čtení

*room to let  
something to read*

Interpret the following signs, versions of which you will see in buses, trams and underground trains:

72 míst k sezení

140 míst k stání

- b **být na** + verbal noun *to be (good, used) for -ing*. This is used to denote either the permanent use to which something may be

put: *tyto brýle jsou na čtení (these glasses are for reading)*, and from this: *brýle na čtení (reading-glasses)*.

To je jen na ochutnání. *This is just (for you) to taste.*

The difference between the two types may sometimes be minimal. In instructions you will often find the version with *k*: *k čištění použijte vlhký hadřík (to clean, use a damp cloth)*, but a *cloth for cleaning* is likely to be *hadřík na čištění*. This is one of those features of Czech best learned by observation.

### 4 **bavívalo**: frequentative verbs

One of the meanings of imperfective verbs is to express a regular repeated activity. Czech has a set of forms which, in the present or past tense, suggests fairly regular or merely sporadic repetition:

Chodili jsme do divadla  
ve čtvrtek.

*We used to go to the theatre  
(regularly) on Thursdays.*

Chodívali jsme do divadla  
ve čtvrtek.

*We used to go to the theatre  
(if at all) on Thursdays.*

The frequentative form of some verbs is fairly common (*bývat* from *být*, *mívat* from *mít* are obvious ones, but others will be heard). Most are formed by insertion of an extra *-va-* before the *-t* of the infinitive, with the vowel in the syllable before lengthened, as in *bavívat*. One or two verbs have special forms, such as *slychat* for *slyšet*, *vidat* for *vidět* and *čítat* for *číst*. Sometimes you may even meet a type of double frequentative, especially from *být*, namely *bývávalo*, as in the idiom *Bývávalo!* (*Those were the days!*). You need not try to use frequentatives at all, but be prepared to spot them.

### 5 **Být na tom dobře** – 'To be going well'

This idiom uses a form of *to* which is 'empty' when it comes to meaning. The phrase means *to be well off, to be getting along OK*, but need not be to do with material wealth. It is commonly followed by *s* + instrumental:

Jak jste na tom s prací? *How's your work coming along?*  
Jak jste na tom s češtinou? *What's your Czech like?*

### 6 **Nemáte zač** – 'Don't mention it'

This formula is reduced from:

Nemáte za co mi poděkovat. *You don't have anything for which to thank me.*

Co is reduced to č in one or two other words, of which proč (pro co) you know. Another is nač (for what purpose):

Nač tam jít teď? *Why go there now?*

### 7 chodit or jít na houby – 'to go mushrooming'

The Czechs are great gatherers of wild mushrooms (houby). To say to go -ing, use a suitable verb to go with na 'for' and the collected item in the accusative plural.

chodit na ostružiny/maliny/ *to go blackberrying/*  
borůvky/ryby *raspberrying/*  
*bilberrying/fishing*

### 8 Smithovi: forming plurals of surnames

The plural form of surnames, denoting the whole family, may be treated like the possessive adjectives or as nouns:

Jdeme k Smithovým/Smithům. *We're going to the Smiths'.*

The nominative is the odd man out: for the whole family use -ovi; the noun ending -ové is reserved for two or more males or two or more females of the same surname:

bratři Čapkové *the Čapek brothers*  
slečny Smithové *the misses Smith*

### Exercises

1 Convert the rád (+ verb) construction to mít rád (+ verbal noun).

- Petr rád vaří.
- Rádi létáme na kluzácích (kluzák glider).
- Nerad utírá nádobí (utírat/utřít [utře, utřel] to wipe).
- Radši si hrál s počítačem, než dělal úkoly.
- Nejraději ze všeho četl dlouhé romány.
- Ráda pěstovala malé druhy azalek (druh kind, type, species; azalka azalea)

2 Create sentences using the suggestions in brackets.

- (vyřizovat žádost) trvalo tři měsíce.
- Nelíbilo se nám její (provést poslední část). (provádět/ provést to execute, play, perform, do)

- (Učit se matematiku) většinu dětí nebavilo.
- Někteří byrokraté (some bureaucrats) si libují v (klást překážky). (překážka obstacle).
- Nestojí to za (utrácet tolik peněz).
- (psát kondolenční dopis) nebylo pro něho lehké. (kondolenční dopis letter of condolence)
- Podnik musí provádět (hodnotit výsledky) aspoň jenou za rok. (hodnotit/o- assess, evaluate; výsledek result)

Be sure you can translate the sentences in 1 and 2 into English.

- Find (at least) two ways of putting the following into Czech.
  - I don't like washing shirts.
  - We aren't much into mushrooming.
  - She didn't devote much time to writing the letter.
  - They like tinkering about with cars.

### Text

What follows is a series of little extracts, typical of encyclopedia entries, history textbooks and newspaper reporting:

- Pražský orloj byl sestaven koncem 15. století. Je opředen legendami, například o tom, jak byl jeho tvůrce oslepen, aby nemohl své znamenité dílo opakovat jinde.
- Jako oběti demonstrací byli hlášeni jeden mrtvý a patnáct zraněných. Převážně jsou postiženi Češi, avšak také četní Němci byli zraněni. (from a report in October 1939)
- Jan Hus byl odsouzen roku 1415 k smrti, protože trval na tom, čemu věřil. Když mu byla nabídnuta milost, odvolal-li své bludy, odmítl.
- Všechny počáteční potíže pobytu československých letců v Anglii byly brzy odstraněny. Když počátkem srpna 1940 navštívil první čs. stihací peruť prezident Beneš, zastihl desítky letců, mechaniků a jiných v nejhrolivějších přípravách k boji na strojích Hurricane, které jim byly přiděleny.



orloj (m)	astronomical clock
sestavovat/sestavit	to construct
koncem	at the end of
být opředen (+ inst.)	to be wreathed (in)
legenda	legend
o tom, jak	about how
tvůrce (m)	maker, creator
oslepovat/oslepit	to blind
znamení	magnificent
oběť (f)	victim; sacrifice
rání/z-	to wound
převážně	predominantly
postihovat/postihnout	to affect, afflict
četní	numerous
odsuzovat/odsoudit k	to condemn to
trvat na (+ loc.)	to insist on
milost (-i)	mercy
odvolávat/odvolat	to withdraw, repeal, cancel
-ji	if (added to verb at start of clause)
blud	heresy
odmítat/odmítnout	to refuse
počáteční	initial
potíž (f)	problem, difficulty
pobyt	stay
letec	airman
odstraňovat/odstranit	to remove
počátkem	at the beginning of
čs. = československý	
stíhací perut'	fighter squadron
stíhat	to pursue
stíhat/stihnout	to have time for
perut'	(poetic and military) wing
desítka	a tensome, (loosely) dozen
mechanik	mechanic
horlivý	eager, keen, diligent, urgent
přípravy k	preparations for
boj (m)	battle
přidělovat/přidělit	to assign

zastihnout (usually limited to pfv.) to catch, find

## Notes

### 9 Passive forms: je opředen – 'is wreathed'

The Text items were selected as the type of Czech where you will find most occurrences of the passive voice. (If you are not familiar with the term, 'Peter killed Paul' is in the active voice: Peter, the subject, is the active party; 'Paul was killed by Peter' is in the passive voice, in which the subject Paul is the passive 'target' of the action.)

The English passive is usually expressed by *be* + the *-ed* form of the verb. So too in Czech, but a shorter version of it than what you learned in Unit 18. To form the short passive participle as needed for this purpose, imagine the verbal noun without the final *-i*:

vydání (*edition*) → vydán (*published*)

This gives the masculine singular form. Then simply add the usual gender and number endings as required:

Slovník byl vydán.	<i>The dictionary was published.</i>
Zpráva byla vydána.	<i>The report was issued.</i>
Město bylo vydáno nepříteli.	<i>The city was surrendered to the enemy.</i>
Rukojmí byli vydáni.	<i>The hostages were handed over.</i>
Slovníky/Zprávy byly vydány.	<i>The dictionaries/reports were published.</i>

If the verb is one of those that requires an 'object' in a case other than the accusative, a passive participle can still be formed, but it will always be neuter singular in form, and the 'object' stays in the same case:

Hnuli stolem.	<i>They moved the table.</i>
Bylo hnuto stolem.	<i>The table was moved.</i>

### 10 When to use the passive

The examples which you were given at the outset were not put into a dialogue because, while passives can be heard, they are not the most common feature of spoken Czech. Indeed, there is relatively little need for them. To go back to the initial example of 'Peter killed Paul': this is simply expressed by *Petr zabil Pavla*. The English passive version, 'Paul was killed by Peter', which has its uses in the right context, is equally simply expressed in Czech by inversion: *Pavla zabil Petr*.

There is in neither case any doubt as to who was dead and who was responsible, and both the English and the Czech version are conveying a fact chiefly about Paul, namely his being killed by Peter. It is the flexibility of Czech word order – here the fact of being able to open a sentence with the object, the accusative – which not only guarantees that it can adapt to context, but also accounts for the low incidence, outside certain special styles, of ‘true passive’ constructions. That is to say, in a different type of Czech, the sentence might be expressed: *Pavel byl zabit Petrem*, or *Král byl zabit davem*. *The king was killed by the crowd*. But not for everyday purposes.

### 11 The man (who was) killed by Peter ...

Just as the active participle could be used to replace a relative clause, so too can the passive participle. And it too will have to agree with the noun it follows:

Compare:

Muž, který byl zabit Petrem,  
byl jeho tchán. *The man who was killed by  
Peter was his father-in-law.*

and

Muž zabitý Petrem byl  
jeho tchán. *The man killed by Peter...*

and

Pochovali muže, který byl  
zabit Petrem. *They buried the man (who  
was) killed by Peter.*  
Pochovali muže zabitého Petrem.

This type of ‘participial’ clause is more frequent than the relative clause with the passive verb.

### 12 Other facts about the passive

a As early as Unit 4 you met the ‘reflexive passive’. This is an alternative to the passive construction you have just been reading about, but only if the ‘passive subject’ is not human, sometimes not even animate, and provided there is no need to state who the agent was, that is, by whom the act was performed.

Talíř se rozbil.

*The plate was (or got) broken.*

A plate is not animate, and no culprit is named. If the culprit is known and to be named, the obvious solution is inversion:

Talíř rozbil Petr.

*The plate [obj.] broke  
Peter [subj.]*

But if circumstances dictated that a passive of some kind had to be used, then it would have to be the ‘true’ passive:

Talíř byl rozbít Petrem.

*The plate was broken by Peter.*

b If you try to make a human the subject of a reflexive passive construction, remembering you cannot add the agent, you will either produce nonsense, or, more probably, a different sentence, since reflexivization produces so many different results with different types of verbs. To stay with poor Paul: *Pavel se zabil*. This can only mean that Paul was in some sense the cause of his own death. In fact more often, though not exclusively, it implies involuntary death rather than suicide:

Paul se zabil na lyžích.

*Paul killed himself on skis.*

This means he died, perished, was killed while skiing. Just one more example: with the ‘true passive’:

Turisté byli vráćeni od hranic. *The tourists were turned  
back from the frontier.*

And with a reflexive verb form:

Turisté se vrátili od hranic. *The tourists returned  
(came back) from the  
frontier.*

Here *vracet se/vrátit se* is an intransitive reflexive verb (intransitive means ‘not requiring a direct object’). The way to avoid using the true passive construction is, of course, to invert the sentence again: *Turisty vrátili od hranic*. In this *turisty* is accusative (like *Pavla* earlier) and *vrátili* contains the impersonal, unnamed ‘they’.

c Now look back to the Texts. Most talk about past events: the clockmaker *was* blinded, Germans *were* injured, the planes *had been* assigned, and so on. But there are two phrases where the passive participle is combined with the present tense of *be*: *je opředen* and *jsou postiženi*.

These examples serve to illustrate the two English counterparts of the combination, namely *is/are -ed* and *has/have been -ed* respectively. To interpret them you have to think of the past ‘moment’ when the clock became wreathed in legends, or the Czechs were affected by the outcome of the demonstrations, coupled with the present relevance of the facts. (The choice of



the different English tense forms is irrelevant to Czech, so it can be left aside here.) In speech you will often hear the long passive participles used for this function, but strictly there is a difference – between the present state resulting from a past act:

Tento pokoj je (už) vytapatován.	<i>This room has (now) been papered.</i>
but Tento pokoj je (už) vytapatovaný.	<i>This room has already got wallpaper (is already papered).</i>

The long form, therefore, is much like any other adjective after *be*.

### 13 desítky – ‘tens’

Numerals ending in *-ka*: Round numerals are often expressed by this type of noun, which will also be met in the plural: *stovky* (*hundreds*), *desítky* (*‘tens’*, as a low number best treated as *dozens*: the real Czech word for ‘dozen’ is *tucet*). *Tens of thousands* is *desítky tisíců*. Smaller clusters use the words: *dvojice/trojice/čtyřice/pětice* a *twosome (couple)/threesome/foursome/fivesome*.

The other use of *-ka*, which works with all numerals, denotes anything that carries the particular number (hotel rooms, trams, school grades up to five, dress sizes, strengths of beer – see Unit 7), as well as naming the number itself:

So *desítka* is a No. 10 tram, room No. 10, the lightest common beer strength, or, in *Nakreslila velkou desítku, 10* itself: *She drew a big 10*.

In the plural these numerals are used for any numbered items associated with plurals: *potřebuju desítky* (*I need size 10*) probably refers to shoes.

To form these numerals, add *-ka* to the end of the ordinary numbers, but if these end in *-et* change *e* to *i*: *trícet* → *trícítka*. Two-digit numerals use the inverted form: *dvacet čtyři* → *čtyřadvacítka*. Three-digit numerals usually use just the last: *sto trojka 103, sto dvacet trojka 123*. The odd ones out are:

jednička	dvojka
trojka	čtyřka
sedmička	osmička
devítka	stovka
tisícovka	

### 14 Counting doors and trousers

You have met several nouns which were plural in form but referred to single items: *dveře* (f pl) is *one door*, *kalhoty* are *one pair of trousers*. To count them a special set of numerals has to be used:

jedny dvoje troje čtvery patery šestery  
and so on.

*Jedny* is merely the plural of *jeden* and changes like *ten*:

Šel jedněmi dvěma tam a druhými ven.	<i>He went in through one door and out through the other.</i>
---	---

The others decline as follows:

Nominative/Accusative	dvoje	čtvery (čtvera for n.pl.)
Genitive/Locative	dvojich	čtverých
Dative	dvojím	čtverým
Instrumental	dvojími	čtverými

Note the similarity to adjectives.

(There are some other rather more specialized types of numerals, but you can ignore them.)

### 15 Fractions

These are formed by adding *-ina* to the basic numbers: *pětina* (*one-fifth*), *sedmáctina* (*a seventeenth*), *tisícina* (*thousandth*). Again there are some odd ones out:

polovina	half	třetina	third
čtvrtina	quarter	setina	hundredth

### Exercises

4 The following pairs of similar sentences hint at different styles, requiring different ways of handling the verb. Put them into Czech forms appropriate to the style.

- a i My suitcase was removed by a tall man with long hair.  
ii My suitcase was stolen by the tall man with long hair.

- b i In 1884 the village was abandoned so that the valley could be flooded.  
 ii The village was deserted so a dam was built.  
 c i The king was unceremoniously executed by his enemies.  
 ii The king's been killed by his doctor!  
 d i The accused was observed by three witnesses at 4.30 p.m.  
 ii They say the man was seen by three witnesses at half past four.  
 e i The bedroom was painted to schedule.  
 ii This room is nicely painted already.  
 f i The suitcase removed by the man with long hair was found near the river.  
 ii Her passport was in the suitcase stolen by the man with long hair.

odcizovat/odcizit	remove
vesnice (f)	village
údolí	valley
topit/zatopit	flood
přehrada	dam
bez ceremonie	unceremoniously
nepřítel	enemy
popravit/popraviti	execute
obžalovaný	accused
pozorovat/zpozorovat	observe
v termínu (termín deadline)	to schedule

nalézat/nalézt (nalezne, nalezi, nalezený) find

5 The extra numeral types cannot be avoided, as these specimen sentences show. Put them into Czech.

- a I'm in (na) number 17.  
 b I would like you to wash these four pairs of trousers.  
 c He prefers 12-degree beer to 10-degree beer.  
 d Can you change (rozměnit) a 500-crown note for me?  
 e They gave us a sixth and kept five sixths, but I think we should have got three quarters.  
 f We had to replace (vyměnit) the locks on (v) two doors.

## Water resources

The Czechs have no sea (they are fond, however, of blaming Shakespeare for alleging in *The Tempest* that Bohemia had a coast), but they are not short of water.

The longest river in the Czech Republic is the **Vltava**, 271 miles long. It flows from the southern hills northwards and through Prague to join the **Labe (Elbe)** at Mělník in Bohemia's most northerly wine-producing area. There are many impressive rivers descending from all the country's encircling mountains, including the **March (Morava)**, which cuts across Moravia eventually to form the southern end of the Czech-Slovak frontier before joining the Danube.

The biggest natural lake is **Černé jezero**, which is 18.4 hectares in area and nearly 40 metres deep. It lies in the part of the hills that make up the frontier with Germany in the South-West known to the Czechs as **Šumava** (the north-western end of this range of forest-covered hills is called **Český les**; the English name *Bohemian Forest* covers both parts of the range).

The largest man-made lake is the **Rožmberk** fishpond (**rybník**) in South Bohemia (489 hectares), one of many in the region. It is here that the carp which Czechs eat at Christmas is farmed and from where fish was exported as far away as England in Henry VIII's time. There are of course many larger, more recent artificial lakes – reservoirs (**vodní nádrž**), especially where valleys have been dammed (**údolní nádrž**, or **přehrada** *dam* for short).

Then there are the famous mineral springs (**pramen** or, if hot, **vřídlo**) all over Bohemia and parts of Moravia, hence the number of spa towns (you can often spot them on the map from the word **lázně** (*baths*) in their name); the hottest is one of the 12 that made Carlsbad (**Karlovy Vary**) famous – it leaves the ground at 72 degrees Celsius and at the record rate of about 1,800 litres a minute. The popular liqueur or aperitif known as **Becherovka**, produced at Karlovy Vary, is jocularly known as the town's **třináctý pramen** (*thirteenth spring*).



Remember that throughout the book you have been taught a neutral version – not too bookish and not over-colloquial – of Standard Czech. It is as well, however, to be aware of some of the key features of higher-style (chiefly written) and lower-style (chiefly spoken) versions of the language.

### Selected features of high-style Czech

Key features of high-style Czech are likely to occur in more pretentious or archaic texts.

#### 1 Gerunds

Unfortunately this is yet another *-ing* form of English, which we may call the verbal adverb. It is the kind of thing you have in *Running after the bus she slipped and fell* – meaning *as, when or because she was running ...*, or *Having admired the cake, they proceeded to eat it*, that is *when or after they had admired it ...*

In Czech, the equivalent forms of the first type are a short version of the active participle, which means that, although they are 'adverbial', they show some agreement according to gender, the gender of the subject of the sentence ('*she*' or '*they*' in the English examples).

As there were two types of present active participle (ending in *-oucí* or *-ící*), so there are two ways of forming the gerund. If the stem of the third person plural (the '*they*' form) ends in a 'soft' consonant, or if the verb is of the *i*-conjugation, the endings are *-e/-ě, -íc, -íce*, otherwise *-a, -ouc, -ouce*.

	Masculine	Feminine/neuter	Plural
dělat	dělaj-	dělaje	dělajíc
psát	piš-	piše	pišíc
myslet	mysl-	mysle	myslíc
hledět	hled-	hledě	hledíc
chodit	chod-	chodě	chodíc
vést	ved-	veda	vedouc
být	js-	jsa	jsouc

An accessible, if rather theoretical, example:

Zpívající nahlas, vzbudila sousedy. *Singing loudly, she woke the neighbours.*

This shows all you need to know: this type is used for economy to express a simultaneous action, whatever the tense. It can only be formed from imperfective verbs.

There is a perfective gerund to express an action that precedes the action in the main clause. This is formed in the same way as the past tense, except that instead of *-l, a -v* is added; this gives you the masculine form. The feminine/neuter and plural forms are then based on it and end in *-vši* and *-vše*.

	Masculine	Feminine/neuter	Plural
udělat	uděla-	udělav	udělavši
napsat	napsa-	napsav	napsavši
vymyslet	vymysl-	vymyslev	vymyslevši
vzít	vza-	vzav	vzavši
přežít	přeži-	přeživ	přeživši

If, however, the past tense uses a consonantal stem, this alone is the masculine form, to which the feminine/neuter and plural endings are then added:

	Masculine	Feminine/neuter	Plural
přivést	přived-	přived	přivedši
vytisknout	vytisk-	vytisk	vytiskši

Again, let one example suffice:

Král, propustiv komorníka, brzy toho litoval. *The king, having dismissed his chamberlain, soon regretted it.*



Only two verbs need to be thought of as anomalous. One is *být*, which has the forms *byl, byvši, byvše* (the oddity is that here a past gerund is formed from an imperfective verb). The other is *jit*, or more importantly its forms with prefixes, which have *-šed, -šedši, -šedše*:

Přišedši pozdě, ani se  
neomluvila.

*Having arrived late, she  
didn't even apologize.*

One or two words that are gerunds in origin have become divorced from their respective verbs and taken on new functions. They include: *nehledě na* (*disregarding*); *chtě nechtě* (*willy-nilly*) and *počínaje* and *konče*, which may work as prepositions or post-positions (and they are accompanied by the instrumental) meaning *beginning with* and *ending with*:

Umí všechno, počínaje biologií  
a hudbou konče. *He knows everything from  
biology to music.*

and a few others.

Even rarer than the perfective, past, gerund is the perfective active participle based on it. This is formed by replacing the *-i* of the feminine form of the gerund by *-í* and treating it as a 'soft' adjective. Some are also to be seen in adjectival functions proper: *vrátivší se emigranti* (*returning émigrés* – 'the having returned émigrés'). Far commoner in a related function are adjectives formed from the past tense: from *zbohatnout* (*to get rich*) there is *zbohatlý* (*nouveau riche*), from *zmrznout* (*to freeze*) there is *zmrzlý* (*frozen*), while *zkamenět* (*to turn to stone*) gives *zkamenělý* (*fossilized*). Some are highly restricted, *došlá* (*korespondence incoming* (*mail*)), from *dojit* (*to have arrived*), while others have become far removed from their verbs: *umělý* (*artificial: umět to know how*).

## 2 *jenž*: another way of saying 'who', etc.

This is a higher-style alternative to *kteřý*, the relative pronoun. It declines like the long forms of *on, ona, ono, oni, etc.*, but has distinct nominative and accusative forms.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	jenž	jež	jež	jíž*	jež	jež
Accusative	jenž	jíž	jež	jež	jež	jež

(\*denote animate forms.)

Konference, na niž nás pozvali, byla zrušena. *The conference to which they had invited us was cancelled.*

Konference, jichž jsme se zúčastnili, byly nudné. *The conferences which we attended were boring.*  
(účastnit se/z- + gen. = *to participate in, attend*)

Notice that, like the third-person pronouns, this word must start with *n-* after prepositions.

If you are alert, you will observe that there is considerable interference between (confusion about) these forms in 21st-century usage.

## 3 *tentýž/týž* – 'the very same'

This means *the same, the very same*. In everyday speech it is replaced by *stejný*, which strictly means 'same' as to type, appearance and so on. If I and another write *týmž perem*, we are sharing the pen, if we write *stejným perem*, strictly we each have our own, but they look the same.

The declension of (ten)týž is rather unstable, but the approved current pattern is as follows:

	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
Nominative	týž/tentýž	totéž	táž/tatáž
Accusative	týž/tentýž	totéž	touž/tutéž
Genitive	téhož (anim.)	témuž	téže
Dative		témuž	téže
Instrumental		týmž/tímtež	touž/toutéž
Locative		(o) témž(e)/tomtéž	téže

	Plural		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
Nominative	tíž/titíž (anim.)	táž/tatáž	tytéž
Accusative	tytéž	táž/tatáž	tytéž
Genitive		týchž	
Dative		týmž	
Instrumental		týmiž	
Locative		(o) týchž	

Various 'non-approved' forms such as *těchže* also occur as a natural consequence of the mixture of pronoun and adjectival endings already present in this approved set of forms. Just one form, the neuter singular, enjoys an everyday use, as the absolute pronoun 'the same (thing)':

Dnes ráno umyla okna a zase dělá totéž. *This morning she washed the windows and she's doing the same again.*

#### 4 *dělati, věsti, zapomenouti*: archaic infinitives

You learnt early on that such verbs as *moci* and *řici* are still used also in their more conservative forms *moci, říci*. Until fairly recently all infinitives ended, or could end, in *-i*, but this is now a 'dead' feature, occasionally surviving in legalese, or in fossilized bits of Czech, such as proverbs:

Nouze naučila Dalibora housli. *Necessity taught Dalibor to play the fiddle.*

equivalent to *Necessity is the mother of invention*.

#### Selected features of low-style Czech

Now for a glimpse of overlapping types of Czech called 'Common Czech', 'Spoken Colloquial Czech' or 'Spoken Urban Czech'. It would need a whole new book to describe them all properly, but the most readily observed points are listed below.

#### 5 Sound changes

*y* is almost regularly replaced by *ej*: *být*→*bejt*, *dobry*→*dobrej*.

*é* is almost regularly replaced by *í/y*: *péct*→*píct*, *dobré*→*dobry*.

initial *o-* is largely replaced by *vo-*: *on*→*von*, *okno*→*vokno*.

#### 6 Form changes

Many of these are a consequence of the above, but there are others.

*a* the instrumental plural ends in all circumstances in *-ma*, with various vowels preceding it:

<i>pánama</i>	<i>oknama</i>
<i>ženama</i>	<i>klíčema</i>
<i>židlema</i>	<i>děťma</i>
<i>krásnýma</i>	<i>cizíma</i>
<i>mýma</i>	<i>našíma</i>
<i>třema</i>	

*b* the 1st person plural of *e*-conjugation verbs often shortens from *-eme* to *-em*: *vedem* from *vedeme*. Other conjugations cannot do this because the resulting form would be the same as the 1st person singular.

*c* the third person plural of all *i*-conjugation verbs (not just those limited sets which you have learnt) ends in *-ějí/-ejí*, though usually shortened first to *-ějí/-ejí*, or more often even to *-ěj/-ej*: *choděj(i)*, *myslej(i)* and so on. Similarly, the *-aj* of the *a*-conjugation verbs shortens to *-aj(i)*: *dělej(i)*. This has no effect on how the imperative is formed; that remains based on standard conjugation.

*d* In *e*-conjugation verbs where the third person plural and the first person singular may have either *-ou* or *-í* and *-u* or *-i*, only *-ou* and *-u* will be heard.

*e* the past tense of verbs whose stems end in a consonant drop the *-l* in the masculine form: *ved* from *vedl*, *moh* from *mohl*. Those from verbs ending in *-nout* may behave similarly, or retain a version of the ending: *spad* or *spadnul* from *spadnout*, for the standard form *spadl*. The other forms are generally as you have learnt (*spadla*), but alternatives with *-nu-* may also occur (*spadnula*).

*f* the conditional auxiliary has its own, more 'regular' conjugation: *bysem*, *bys(i)*, *by*, *bysme*, *byste*, *by*.

*g* the second-person singular of *být* as *to be*, but not as auxiliary, is *seš*.

*h* forms of *který*, when used (see below), will often be heard without the *-t-*, and many other words will turn up in simplified pronunciation: *dy* from *kdy*, *dyť* or even *dyk* from *vždyť*; *puđu*, etc. from *půjdu* (and imperative *pod(te)*); the verb *vzít* conjugates *vemu*, *vemeš*, etc. (imperative *vem(te)*).

#### 7 Grammatical changes

The most conspicuous is replacement of *který* by *co*, and the various case-forms of *který* by *co* with the corresponding forms



of the third-person pronouns: muž, se kterým jsem mluvil becomes muž, co jsem s ním mluvil. Another is the use of the conjunction jak for když (*when, if*), jakmile (*as soon as*), pokud (*if, insofar as*) and some others. For the rest it follows that there will be a total absence of the features described for high-style Czech.

### 8 Vocabulary changes

These are far too numerous to mention and no systematic rules can be given. One or two are well known and widely acknowledged, such as táta for otec, or brácha for bratr, Pražák for Pražan, anglina for angličtina, ten samej, ta samá, to samý for both stejný (etc.) and tentýž (etc.) (a borderline hybrid style may use ten samý, ta samá, to samé here). However, the stylistic diversity of many words remains a huge and open problem. Only practice will teach you what words may be used when – what is admissible as standard colloquial, and what is by any measure substandard – so for safety and propriety's sake, stay with standard forms for a long time yet!

Some suggested other works you might use, now that you have the basics of Czech firmly in your mind:

F. Čermák, M. Šára, J. Holub, J. Hronek & D. Short *Czech: a Multi-Level Course for Advanced Students*, Prague: Charles University; Brno: Masaryk University; London: School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University of London, 1993. A substantial, somewhat technical course useable at two levels of intensity; includes a reader, tables and a generous vocabulary.

Tom Dickins *Spoken Czech: Situational Dialogues for Intermediate Level Students*, Wolverhampton: Univ. of Wolverhampton, 1993. A set of 13 video recordings of situations with an accompanying book of transcripts and exercises.

Josef Fronek, Světlana Obenausová, David Bickerton *Mluvíte s námi česky! Audiovizuální kurs*, Glasgow: Department of Slavonic Languages and the Language Centre of the University of Glasgow, 1995. Book, video-cassette and audio-cassette. The ten lessons, for intermediate learners, rely on simultaneous use of the book and both cassettes. The scenes, set in the university environment, theatre, shops, stations, the countryside etc., were filmed in Olomouc and the whole course arose from close co-operation between the universities of Glasgow and Olomouc.

Michael Heim *Contemporary Czech*, Columbus, Ohio: Slavica Publishers, 1991 and later reprints. A course for more advanced students assumed to have a knowledge of a related language; your knowledge of Czech after completing *Teach Yourself Czech* puts you in a similar position, making *Contemporary Czech* an excellent revision tool.

Laura A. Janda & Charles E. Townsend *Czech*, Munich: Lincom Europa, 2000. An excellent survey grammar and reference work by two of the leading US scholars in the field of Czech language studies.

David Short 'Czech', in Bernard Comrie (ed.): *The Slavonic Languages*, London: Routledge, 1993, pp.455–532. Another linguistic survey of the language.

Charles E. Townsend *A Description of Spoken Prague Czech*, Columbus, Ohio: Slavica Publishers, 1990. A valuable attempt to distil the core features of modern urban speech in Prague; least reliable is the section on vocabulary.

### Dictionaries

Josef Fronek *Anglicko-český - Česko-anglický slovník*, Prague: LEDA, 1998. Also available on CD-ROM. The best by far of the available two-way dictionaries, excellent for contemporary vocabulary; the separate English–Czech and Czech–English dictionaries from the same author and publisher give a wider vocabulary overall.

Karel Hais & Břetislav Hodek *Velký anglicko-český slovník*, Prague: Academia, 1992–94. A comprehensive, four-volume work, currently (2003) being updated, but still generally reliable.

*Oxford photo dictionary anglicko-český. Praktická cvičení pro potřebu škol a samouků*, Oxford University Press, 1992 and later revisions. The Czech mutation of a work intended for learners of English; can be used profitably by English-speaking learners of Czech; includes exercises.

Ivan Poldauf, with Robert Pynsent *Czech–English Dictionary*, Prague: SPN, 1986; 3rd ed. Prague: WD Publications, 1996, distributed in the USA by Hippocrene Books. A fairly comprehensive dictionary, enabling the user to cope with literature, as well as the press and everyday spoken Czech; the 3rd edition contains some 'modernizations and other modifications' by Sinclair Nicholas, who has also compiled a Czech–American dictionary.

Lukáš Vodička *Anglicko-český slovník frázových sloves*, Prague: Fragment, Práh, 1992. A good resource for coping with English phrasal verbs – interpreted here very broadly.

### On-line dictionaries (a small selection)

<http://users.ox.ac.uk/~tayl0010>. Created by James Naughton of Oxford. It offers a learner's dictionary to download and use offline. Also includes many classical Czech texts with annotations and translations.

*Ectaco Online Dictionaries*

[www.ectaco.com/online/diction.php3?lang=4](http://www.ectaco.com/online/diction.php3?lang=4). A site designed to sell more powerful dictionaries in software form. This free online version nonetheless gives access to a reasonable range of Czech–English–Czech equivalents.

*Moravia Translations:*

<http://www.mtranslations.cz>. A reasonable dictionary that tends to show less frequent equivalents first. Also contains a description of the Czech alphabet.

*The Langsoft Multilingual Dictionary*

[www.translator.cz/bin/translator](http://www.translator.cz/bin/translator). Offers translation from and into a variety of languages, including English and Czech.

*GNU/FDL English–Czech Dictionary*

<http://www.wordbook.cz>. Another online dictionary which permits searches with or without diacritics ('accents'). Contains an ingenious system for typing in letters with accents for those without a Czech keyboard.

### Phrase books

Lexus Ltd with Václav Řeřicha *Czech Phrase Book*, Woodbridge, Suffolk: Hugo's Language books, 1991 (and reprints). Permutations of the same work, with varying emphases, are available from other publishers of phrase books, guide books etc.

Zuzana Zrůstová *Czech Phrase Book Travel Pack*, London: BBC Books, 1996. One of the best general phrase books; includes a 3000-word dictionary and is accompanied by a 60-minute cassette.

<http://travlang.com/languages/index.html>. Includes a reasonably wide selection of Czech expressions to click on and listen to.

There are numerous other, generally reliable, phrase books available from major UK, US and Czech phrase book publishers.

### Useful websites – a selection

[www.bohemica.com](http://www.bohemica.com) – one of the most varied sites, which includes masses of background information, and links to a wide range of other sites, on all aspects of learning Czech, including exercises, textbooks, dictionaries, glossaries, information about the Czech Republic, its literature, culture etc., and much else. It is created and constantly updated by Dominik Lukeš.

[www.czech-language.cz/](http://www.czech-language.cz/) – a rich site associated with Charles University, Prague, offering in summary or inventory form, and often more discursively, all aspects of the language from pronunciation to sentence structure. Includes a 500-word vocabulary and a variety of quirky bits, such as the language's longest words, games and quizzes. There is a small selection of translations and parallel texts, some areas which sidestep to the *Czech National Corpus*, and a valuable links button.

[www.seelrc.org/czech.html](http://www.seelrc.org/czech.html) – one of several excellent US sites, the 'Resources for Students and Instructors of Czech' page of the Slavic and East European Resource Center of the University of North Carolina, has annotated links to 50+ of the most useful sites (not just language-learning sources), including the other main US sites and the premier British sites.

[www.ucnk.ff.cuni.cz](http://www.ucnk.ff.cuni.cz) - the 'public access' (*veřejný přístup*) site of the Czech National Corpus, enabling searches for examples of words in use (up to 20 examples for each word or form keyed in), drawn from the corpus, which grows by the day. It is also possible to get full access to all the facilities offered by the corpus site on payment of a subscription.

[http://www.localingo.com/countries/czech\\_republic/language/index/html](http://www.localingo.com/countries/czech_republic/language/index/html) - a general culture site, combining a country guide with travel tips and an introduction to the language, including numerous examples to listen to. Includes idioms and an impressive range of links to other cultural sites.

[www.seznam.cz](http://www.seznam.cz) – one of the major Czech general search engines, with a comprehensive range of links to everything Czech, including a multilingual online dictionary. In Czech.

### Useful booksellers

Bay Foreign Language Books, Unit 3(B) Frith Business Centre, Frith Road, Aldington, Ashford, Kent, TN25 7HJ, England (Tel: +44 (0)1233 720 020 Fax: +44 (0)1233 721 272) is the main UK importer and worldwide distributor of foreign

language books, including an impressive range of Czech grammars, dictionaries and other language-learning aids. See <http://www.baylanguagebooks.co.uk>.

The Talking Bookshop offers audio language sources in addition to those accompanying some of the above book titles. See [www.talkingbooks.co.uk](http://www.talkingbooks.co.uk).

### Organizations and institutions

The British Czech and Slovak Association has a membership of largely UK-based Czechs, Slovaks and Britons interested in what is going on in the Czech and Slovak Republics. It publishes the bi-monthly *BCSA Review*, which contains topical news items, general-interest articles, reports on Czech events in the UK, book reviews, a letters page and a calendar of future events. See [www.bcsa.co.uk](http://www.bcsa.co.uk).

The International Association of Teachers of Czech publishes a half-yearly journal, *Czech Language News*, which contains articles on the language, book reviews and news of conferences, language summer schools etc. Membership (by modest subscription payable in US\$, UK£ or Czech crowns) is open to learners as well as teachers. See <http://www.language.brown.edu/NAATC/index.html>.

The Czech Centre London, 13 Harley St, London W1G 9QG (Tel. (020) 7307 5180; Fax: (020) 7323 3709; e-mail: [cclondon@czechcentre.org.uk](mailto:cclondon@czechcentre.org.uk)), organizes regular events on site, and coordinates closely with the Czech Embassy and various cultural bodies (theatres, local authorities, the British Film Institute etc.) in the promotion of Czech events, including regular film festivals, anywhere in the UK. The Centre also runs language evening courses. See also [www.czechcentre.org.uk](http://www.czechcentre.org.uk).

The Czech Center New York, 1109 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10028 (Tel: (212) 288-0830, Fax: (212) 288-0971, e-mail [info@czechcenter.com](mailto:info@czechcenter.com)), operates in a very similar manner. The same address is home to the Czech Tourist Authority.



**Embassies of the Czech Republic**

3900 Spring of Freedom Street, N.W.  
Washington, DC 20008, USA  
Tel. (202) 274-9123, Fax (202) 363-6308  
E-mail: washington@embassy.mzv.cz

26 Kensington Palace Gardens  
London, W8 4QY, UK  
Tel. (020) 7243 1115, Fax (020) 7727 9654  
E-mail: london@embassy.mzv.cz

251 Cooper Street  
Ottawa, Ontario, K2P 0G2, Canada  
Tel. (613) 562-3875, Fax (613) 562-3878  
E-mail: ottawa@embassy.mzv.cz

Consulate General of the Czech Republic, New York  
1109 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10028, USA  
Tel. (212) 717-5643, ext. 1, Fax (212) 717-5064  
E-mail: consulate.newyork@embassy.mzv.cz

Consulate General of the Czech Republic, Los Angeles  
10990 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 1100  
Los Angeles, CA 90024, USA  
Tel. (310) 473-0889, Fax (310) 473-9813  
E-mail: losangeles@embassy.mzv.cz

Consulat Général de la République Tchèque  
1305 Ave. des Pins, Ouest  
Montréal, Québec, H3G 1B2, Canada  
Tel. (514) 849-4495, Fax (514) 849-4117  
E-mail: montreal@embassy.mzv.cz

**Unit 1**

1 (a) Dobré ráno (b) Dobrý den (c) Dobrý večer 2 (a) Dobrý den. Jak se máte? (b) Velmi dobře, děkuju. (c) A jak se máte vy? (d) Dobrou noc a na shledanou. 3 (a) Dobrý večer. Vítám vás v Praze. (b) Jak se máte? 4 (a) Velmi dobře, děkuju. (b) Jde to. (c) Špatně. 5 (a) Na shledanou večer. (b) Na shledanou ráno. (c) Na shledanou zítra. (d) Na shledanou zítra večer. 6 Jsem rád, že jsem tady/v Praze. **English imports:** (a) sandwich, (b) shaker (for mixing drinks), (c) (pork) lunch(eon) meat, (d) jam, (e) weekend, (f) team, (g) showman, (h) sweater, jumper, (i) training, (j) goal, (k) combine (harvester), (l) hooligan (the last two entered Czech via Russian!)

**Unit 2**

1 (a) Smím se vám představit. Jmenuju (jmenuji) se XY. (b) Smím vás představit? To je Jane Williamsová. (c) Těší mě. 2 (a) Jsem vlastně Angličan/-ka, ne Čech/Česka. (b) John je vlastně Skot, ne Angličan. (c) Sabine je vlastně Francouzka, ne Němka. 3 (a) Slečno Schmidtová, odkud jste? (b) Ale odkud pocházíte původně? 4 (a) Patrick je Ir. Je student. (b) Paní Evansová je Velšanka. Je průvodkyně. (c) Mária Slobodová je Slovenka. Je doktorka. (d) Heinz Bayer je Němec. Je tlumočník. 5 (a) Patrick je student. Je z Irska. (b) Paní Evansová je průvodkyně. Je z Walesu. (c) Mária Slobodová je doktorka. Je ze Slovenska. (d) Heinz Bayer je tlumočník. Je z Německa. 6 (a) Jsem z Prahy/Londýna/Anglie/Walesu. (b) Smím/Můžu se vám představit? (c) Známe se z letadla. (d) Naproti, to je pan Smith/paní Smithová/to jsou Smithovi. (e) (i) Kdo je to tady? (ii) Kdo je to tam? (f) Je to student/-ka z Edinburghu (g) Co je to? (h) Promiňte (Omlouvám se), ale musím spěchat na konferenci. 7 (a) Jak se máte? (b) Profesor pochází z Brna. (c) Jsem rád, že jsem tady v Praze. (d) Vítám vás v Londýně. (e) Můžu vás představit, slečno Navrátilová? (f) Smím se vám představit? 9 (a) Hledá hotel. (b) Musím spěchat. (c) Neznáme vás.

(d) Pocházejí z Londýna. (e) Bydlí v hotelu Jalta. (f) (Vy) jste pan Smith.

### Unit 3

1 (a) Kde pracujete? A co dělá vaše žena? (b) (i) Jsem novinář/-ka, (ii) doktor/-ka, (iii) učitel/-ka, (iv) úředník/úřednice. 2 (a) Pracuju v Londýně/New Yorku/Praze/Edinburghu. (b) Pracuju v továrně/ v kanceláři/ v divadle/ve škole. (c) Pracuju ve školství/ v návrhářství/ v bankovníctví/ v dopravě. 3 (a) Kde pracuje vaše žena? (b) A co dělá váš syn? (c) Můj syn pracuje v divadle, je herec. (d) Promiňte (Omlouvám se, Pardon), mám telefon. 5 (a) Ne, není to pravda. (b) Ano, je to pravda, (c) Ne, není to pravda. (d) Ano, je to pravda. (e) Ne, není to pravda. (f) Ne, není to pravda. 6 (to 5 (a)) Neznají se. (to 5 (c)) Nemluví česky. (to 5 (e)) Je herečka. (to 5 (f)) Je úřednice. 7 (a) Co děláte, pane Navrátili? (b) Kde pracujete? (c) Máte dobré místo? 8 Jsem doktor/-ka, inženýr/-ka, novinář/-ka, učitel/-ka. 9 (a) Co dělá váš syn. A co dělá vaše dcera? (b) Vaše žena má také dobré místo, že? 10 Vy nemáte děti, že? 11 Bohužel nemám děti. 12 Bylo to na poště, ve škole, v Brně, doma, na univerzitě, v práci, v bance, v letadle.

### Unit 4

1 (a) Kde bydlíte, Jano? Jak bydlíte? (b) Doma bydlíme v domě; Doma bydlíme v bytě, v činžáku; Doma bydlíme v bytě ve věžáku. (c) Bydlím v hotelu. 2 (a) Ivane, kolik máte místností? Or: Kolik máte pokojů? (b) Náš (or Můj) byt je malý, ale dcera má velký dům. (c) Má čtyři velké pokoje, kuchyň a koupelnu. (Or: Má čtyři plus jedna.) 3 (a) Kdy jste doma? (b) Někdy bydlím v Londýně. (c) Jaký je váš byt? or Jaký máte byt? (d) Telefon je někde v kanceláři. (e) Který pokoj je můj/náš? (f) Který je můj/náš pokoj? (g) Bohužel musím někam jít. (b) Slečno Brabcová, co děláte? 4 (a) Chci/Chceme vás pozvat k nám na návštěvu. (b) Přijďte až v sedm. (c) Pojďte dál! Nemusíte se zouvat. (d) Já se zouvám doma také (taký). My se zouváme doma také (taký). 5 (a) Máte krásný byt. (b) Kde je u vás záchod, prosím? (c) (i) Mám (Máme) dvě ložnice; (ii) Mám (Máme) čtyři plus jedna. (d) Omlouvám se, ale musím spěchat domů.

### Unit 5

1 (a) Ano, je to pravda. (b) Ne, není to pravda. (c) Ne ... (d) Ano ... (e) Ne ... (f) Ne ... (g) Ano ... 2 (to (b) Pan Smith neví, kde je; (to (c) Na rohu je hotel; (to (e) Pan Smith není slepý, jenom špatně vidí. or Pan Smith je jenom unavený; (to (f) Pan Smith mluví česky. 3 (a) pravdu, (b) ta taška, (c) benzínovou pumpu, (d) pana Čermáka a paní Čermákovou, (e) tu poštu, (f) toho starého cizince, (g) moje židle, (b) vaši matku a vašeho otce 4 Promiňte prosím, potřebuju pomoc. ... Nevíte náhodou, kde je hotel Forum? ... Jak daleko přesně? ... To není daleko – já nemám kufr.

5 (a) Jmenuju se XY, (b) Ano, bydlím v Londýně/Ne, nebydlím v Londýně, (c) Ano, rád čekám/Ne, nerad čekám, (d) Ano, paní Smithová poslouchá historky ráda. (e) Ano, hraju fotbal/Ne, nehraju fotbal. (f) Pana Navrátila chválí paní Navrátilová. (g) Ano, můj muž/moje žena mluví hodně/Ne, můj muž/moje žena nemluví hodně. 6 (a) Prosim vás, máte sirky? (b) Nevíte náhodou, kde je paní Navrátilová? (c) Rád(a) slyšíte kritiku? (d) Těšíte se na oběd? (e) Je unavená? (f) (Ne)chce si nejdříve odpočinout? (g) Není to paní Smithová? (h) Těšíte se na Prahu? (i) Těší se do Prahy? (j) Hraje venku fotbal? 7 (a) bank official, (b) annually, (c) one month, (d) for a rest and to be alone, (e) a flat in a tenement block and a luxury hotel room.

### Unit 6

1 (a) Jsme cizinci. (b) Dívky jsou Velšanky. (c) Chceme knihy. (d) Mají tašky a kufrы. (e) Kanaďané si myslí, že vidí celníky. (f) Manželé Smithovi jsou v Praze dva týdny. (g) Fotografie neznáme, jsou to Irové. (h) Synové nemají zavazadla. (i) Hosté nevědí, kde jsou záchody. 2 (a) pneumatika na škodovku, (b) papír na dopisy ('paper for letters' – letter paper), (c) hadr na podlahu (floorcloth), (d) kartáček na zuby (toothbrush), (e) asfalt na silnici (asphalt for the road) or asfalt na silnice (asphalt for roads), (f) pila na dřevo (a wood saw), (g) váza na růže (a vase for [the] roses), (h) nůžky na papír (paper-scissors), (i) nový zámek na dveře (a new lock for the door). 3 (a) Ano. Tento kufr a taška. (b) Ne. Má jenom osobní věci – oblečení, fotoaparát a podobně. (c) V tašce má věci na cestu – mycí potřeby, nějaké jídlo, knihu. (d) Má tam kameny (or: Jsou tam kameny). (e) Bude je v Praze potřebovat na konferenci. 4 Promiňte, prosím./Je to hotel Jalta?/Ano, mám objednávku./ (your name, ending in -ová if female)/Děkuju (-ji)/Bydlím v Manchesteru./ Bohužel ne. Manchester je velké město./To je v pořádku. Musím spěchat a ještě nemám klíč./Děkuju (-ji). Na shledanou. 5 (a) Kde máte tašku? (b) Proč chcete kupovat mapu? (c) Co znamená m a ž? (d) Jaký máte byt? (e) Co máte v kufru? (f) Na co je tento papír? (g) Kdo to je? 6 Nominative plural: nouns – zavazadla (n), kameny (m), vědci (m. anim.), geologové (m. anim.), kolegové (m. anim.); pronouns – vaše (n), mí (m. anim.). Accusative plural: nouns – věci (f), potřeby (f), kameny (m), důvody (m); adjectives – osobní, mycí, jaké, různé, těžká (n); pronouns – je (them), ty, své, vaše (n). 7 Novák is, like Smith, a very common name.

### Unit 7

1 (a) Pan Smith studoval v Edinburghu. (b) Protože se na doktorát připravoval v Praze. (c) Doktor Stuart teď pracuje v New Yorku a dřív pracoval v Edinburghu. (d) Profesor Williams pracoval v Londýně, ale minulý týden zemřel. (e) Setkali se na geologické konferenci. 2 (a) Neměli mapu. (b) Byli jsme na návštěvě u pana Navrátila. (c) Mluvil/Mluvila/Mluvíli/Mluvíly celý den česky. (d) Chtěl(i)/Chtěla/Chtěly jste si večer odpočinout? (e) Doma jsme se



zouvali. (f) Konference nás velmi unavovala. (g) Co to znamenalo? (b) They didn't have a/the map. – We were visiting Mr Navrátil. – He/she/they spoke Czech all day. – Did you want to rest in the evening? – At home we used to change our shoes. – The conference tired us greatly. – What did it/that mean? 3 (a) Kde jste studoval or Na které univerzitě jste studoval? (b) Proč nepijete kávu? (c) Slyšel jste, že profesor Williams zemřel? (d) Kdy se to stalo? (e) Máte rádi/rády Prahu? (f) Co mají v tašce? 4 (a) Ve městě je osm divadel. (b) Do hospody u Fleků je to jenom pět minut pěšky. (c) Mají (unikátní) černé pivo. (d) Protože chce přepsat několik pasáží ve svém referátu. (e) Ve své laboratoři má (doktor Navrátil) pár kuriozit, které pan Smith určitě nikdy neviděl. 5 (a) Mám dvě dcery a pět synů; je to jenom deset minut pěšky do práce; doma mám několik druhů piva. (b) Máte ve městě hodně cizinců? Máte dost času? Máte šest kufrů? (c) Včera byly dvě smutné zprávy; Na stole bylo pět různých klíčů; Kromě toho německého kolegy bylo v letadle sedm anglických geologů. 6 (a) Pojdte na pivo/na kávu/kafe. (b) Přijďte k nám (dnes) večer. (c) Kde se cítíte víc jako doma, v kanceláři nebo v hospodě? (d) Můžeme jít do divadla nebo do kina spolu? (e) Chcete si nejdřív odpočinout? (f) Pojdte do kuchyně na čaj.

### Unit 8

1 (a) Ano, je smolař; Ne, není smolař. (b) Klíče má na televizi; jsou to klíče od kanceláře. (c) Protože tramvaje dělaly hluk. (d) Protože (ví, že) staré zlobí (or nejdou). (e) Rozhlas má v pracovně. (f) Ne, bolí ho hlava. (g) U Navrátilů si stěžuje pan Navrátil. 2 (a) Bolí ho hlava. (b) Bolí ho krk (or v krku). (c) Bolí ho kříž (or v kříži). (d) Bolí ji oči. (e) Bolí ho zub(y). (f) Bolí ji ruka (or zápěstí). 3 Bolí mě hlava. To nepomáhá. Moc ne. Budily mě pořád tramvaje. Tak to jsme dva 4 (a) Jak se dostanu do kina? (b) Neviděl jste moje klíče? (c) Máte hodinky? Moje nejdou (or nefungují). (d) Kolik máte aspirínů? Potřebuju dva, protože mě bolí hlava a jeden nestačí. (e) Může mě recepční vzbudit? (f) Nevíte náhodou, kde je pošta (nádraží)? 5 (a) Kolik stojí/stál ten nový kufr? (b) Kolik stojí/stály hodinky? (c) Kolik stojí/stála hodina práce? (d) Kolik stojí/stála (you may say stály) dvě piva? (e) Kolik stojí/stálo pět čajů? (f) Kolik stojí/stál koncert? (g) Kolik stojí/stála ta krásná kytice? (h) Kolik stojí/stál ten otvůrka na konzervy? (i) Kolik stojí/stála nová střecha? (j) Kolik stojí/stál ten anglický holicí strojek? 7 (a) Máte lístky? (b) Kolik stojí? (c) To je moc! (d) Potřebuju tři, prosím. (e) Bohužel mám jenom pětistovku. (f) Řekněte mi, prosím, kde jsou tady (or máte) záchody? (g) Jste velmi laskava. Děkuji. (h) You were probably entering the ladies', having turned right instead of left!

### Unit 9

1 (a) Kdy tady budete? (b) Kolik je (teď) hodin? (c) (Ne)Víte náhodou, kolik je hodin? (d) Kdy začíná koncert? (e) Co znamená poledne? (f) Kolik máš/máte peněz? (g) Kdy tam pojedeme?

(b) Kolik mám/máš/máme/máte času? 2 (a) Je pět (hodin) pryč. (b) Čekali jsme te/vás v osm. (c) Večeříme až v devět. (d) Jen (ten) nový, starý nefunguje. (e) (Do práce) Půjdu v sedm. (f) (Budu/ Budeme čekat) na nádraží ve tři hodiny/v patnáct hodin. 3 (a) Protože pan Navrátil (or její muž) jde pozdě domů (or domů pozdě). (b) Protože (jeho přítel) Ivan měl narozeniny. (c) Měl tři piva. (d) Platil Ivan, protože dostal zvláštní odměnu. (e) Protože Maruška chtěla koupit za zvláštní odměnu nový gauč. (f) (Večer) Půjdu do vzorkovny nábytku. (g) Myje každý den nádobí. (h) Answer appropriately: Já/Můj muž/Moje žena/syn/dcera, etc. 4 (a) Zítra bude mít moje žena narozeniny. (b) Kolik peněz poneseš do banky? (c) Ve tři hodiny budou dávat krásný film. (d) Otec zítra povede naši dceru do školy. (e) (won't work in the future) (f) Promiňte, paní, budete číst tyto noviny? (g) Co si o tom bude/budou myslet? (h) V Praze nebudeme nikoho znát. (i) Vy se budete mít! 5 (a) Včera měla moje žena narozeniny. (b) Kolik peněz jste nesl/nesla/nesli/nesly do banky? (c) Ve tři hodiny dávali krásný film. (d) Otec včera vedl naši dceru do školy. (e) Zuzano, kde jsi viděla moje klíče? (f) Promiňte, paní, četla jste tyto noviny? (g) Co si o tom myslí/myslela/mysleli/myslely? (h) V Praze jsme nikoho neznali. (i) Vy jste se měl/měla/měli/měly! 6 (a) Můžete na mě čekat v práci (na pracovišti) ve čtvrt na jednu. (b) Můžete číst, dokud nebudu zpátky v půl čtvrté. (c) Můžete jít do banky, kde budu čekat v devět (hodin). (d) Můžete mě čekat (očekávat) ve tři čtvrté na pět přesně (or přesně ve tři čtvrté na pět). (e) Můžete spolupracovat a mýt auto v poledne. (f) Můžete tento týden vodit mého syna a (mou/moju) dceru do školy ve čtvrt na devět? (g) Můžete jít za mě do obchodu? Je pozdě – půl páté pryč – a já sám/sama nemám čas. (h) Můžete mi podat knihy ze stolu? (i) Můžete najít čtvrtou lekcí na straně 36 a číst mi pomalu první rozhovor? (j) Víte, kolik je hodin? 7 (a) Je půl jedné; (b) je tři čtvrté na čtyři; (c) je čtvrt na dvanáct; (d) je půl deváté; (e) je čtvrt na deset; (f) je tři čtvrté na deset; (g) je půl sedmé; (h) je čtvrt na pět; (i) je půl třetí; (j) je půl jedenácté.

### Unit 10

1 vám after pomáhat; rodně indirect object after koupit; manželce, synovi, dceři indirect objects after koupit understood from previous sentence; někomu indirect object after shánět; otci a matce, sousedům a sekretářce indirect objects after shánět understood from previous question; tolika lidem ditto; sousedům a sekretářce 'beneficiaries' after chci; vám beneficiary of the act of typing; nám beneficiaries of the neighbours' care. 2 (a) cizincům, (b) Věře, (c) vám, (d) sousedům, (e) svým studentům, (f) sekretářce, (g) Naším lidem, (h) hotelu, nádraží, (i) krásnému počasí, (j) studentkám, (k) Petr and Jarmila don't understand (the) foreigners. We are going (will go) to Věra's for dinner. Because of you we haven't had dinner yet. We looked after our neighbour's flowers (plants). We recommend our students a month's stay in Prague. He is buying his secretary a

souvenir of ('from') his trip. Our people will be issued passports tomorrow ('To our people they will issue ...'). Opposite the hotel and opposite the station there are (some) new shops. Thanks to the beautiful weather we are playing outside today. We give the students (fem.) few exercises. 3 (a) Musím jít k řezníkovi/doktorovi/tetě/profesorovi. (b) Co máte proti novému návrhu/anglickému počasí/českému jídlu/těm lidem/jeho manželce (or ženě)/nám? (c) Je to kvůli vlaku/autům/celníkům/počasí/mým hodinkám. (d) Bylo to díky našim přátelům/Slovákům/jejich sousedům/vašemu starému psovi. (e) Nerozuměli jsme Petrovi/Marii/starému profesorovi/prvnímu slovu/jeho dlouhému dopisu. 4 (a) Posílám tento (tenhle) dopis přáteli v Anglii (or do Anglie). Kolik bude stát? (b) Musím jít k druhé přepážce? (c) Prosím, můžete půjčit této (téhle) paní propisovačku? (d) Snažím se sehnat (or just Sháním) české známky své dceři. (e) Nerozumím těmto (těmhle) předpisům. (f) Zavíráte v pět nebo (v) šest? (g) Kde jsou telefony? 5 (a) O Vánocích. (b) V těchto (těchhle) kufrech. (c) Mluvíme o svých sousedech. (d) Protože v těchto malých bytech je málo místa. (e) Na všech nádražích. (f) Loni o prázdninách. (g) V Čechách. (h) O pražských hospodách. (i) Po Velikonočních. (j) O Česích a Slovácích a jejich problémech. 6 Petrovi, konferenci, Praze, chyb, většinu příležitostí, hospodách, pivo, bance, peníze, ulici, cestu, anglická, německá slova, cestách, zitrka.

### Unit 11

2 (a) Nabídlí nám výlet do hor. (b) Kde jste vyměnil (vyměnila, vyměnili) peníze? (c) Vadilo vám to? (d) Nejdřív jsme se podívali do galerie, potom jsme se najedli. (e) Celý den jsem nedělal nic. (f) Pršelo. (g) Marie udělala strašnou chybu, když si ho vzala. (h) Kupovali celý den suvenýry. (i) V neděli jsme jeli domů. (j) Nekoupil (-la, -li) jste dceři něco k narozeninám? 3 (a) jsem vydělal; (b) nekoupili; (c) udělal; (d) uslyšíme; (e) pomoci; (f) se najít (navěčíte, etc.); (g) si ... odpočinout; (h) řekněte; (i) pochopil; (j) Najíme se. 4 Monday – V pondělí půjdu do banky, kde vyměním (nějaké) libry, na poštu, kde si koupím známky, na nádraží pro zavazadla a odpoledne budu odpočívat. Tuesday – V úterý navštívím přátele v Benešově; přivezou mě zpátky v půl osmé. Wednesday – Ve středu změním hotel, zkusím hotel na konci ulice; nelíbí se mi pokoj (nemám rád [svůj] pokoj) a v druhém hotelu budu mít pěkný výhled na hrad. Nesmím zapomenout vrátit klíč. Odpoledne budu kupovat knihy, ale nevím, jestli seženu/dostanu to, co chci. Večer nebudu mít co dělat. Thursday – Ve čtvrtek ráno budu zase na poště, budu tam čekat, dokud nezavolá manželka – je na dovolené na Kypru, takže já telefonovat nemůžu. Odpoledne chci zkusit aspoň tři dobré pražské hospody, a večer si budu muset zase odpočinout. Friday – V pátek, pokud (když) nebudu mít kocovinu, přijmu pozvání pana Nováka na víkend a zkusím žít na českém

venkově. Má chatu. Nebudu ale odpočívat – (pan Novák a já) budeme čistit zahradu po zimě. Sunday night – V neděli večer se vrátím do Prahy; chci se dobře vyspat, protože v pondělí ráno (po)letím domů. 5 (a) Ve středu, v neděli večer, v červnu, v pět hodin, příští léto (napřesrok v létě), v pátek, přesně v půl osmé, v únoru, v úterý, dnes večer, v listopadu, dvanáctého. (b) celý týden, jeden celý týden, pět dní/dnů, tři měsíce, celý červen, celou zimu, čtrnáct dní/dnů, jenom dvanáct hodin. 6 (a) seděli jsme v hospodě/četli jsme noviny/šli jsme do divadla; (b) all answers possible; (c) v půl dvanácté/hned po představení/až zavoláš/pátého ledna/zitra večer ...; (d) nevím/na televizoru/byly v téhle kapse/zůstaly v kanceláři/klíče si vzal Petr/které?/leží u dveří; (e) čtyři dny/dokud budou stačit peníze/dvě hodiny/celý příští měsíc/dokud nám nenapišes .../do čtvrtka/do března.

### Unit 12

1 (a) Impfv. to bring (on foot) přinést; (b) Pfv. to fly through prolét(áv)at; (c) Pfv. to transfer, carry across přenášet; (d) Impv. to drive/go out (by vehicle) vyjet; (e) Impv. to pull/drag through protáhnout; (f) Pfv. to come/arrive running přibíhat; (g) Impv. to carry/take away (by vehicle) odvézt; (h) Pfv. to cross/drive over přejíždět; (i) Impv. to lead out vyvést; (j) Pfv. to drive/shoo away/repel odhánět. 2 (a) Zaletěli jsme daleko, takže jsme přiletěli na letiště pozdě. (b) Někdo mi odnesl kufr. (c) Jana není doma, protože roznáší noviny. (d) Přetáhli/Přetahovali krabici do druhého pokoje/do druhé místnosti. (e) Právě odcházeli, když zazvonil telefon. (f) Dodávka právě přivezla chleba. (g) Město objedeme. Neradi jezdíme v cizích městech. (h) Obvykle chodí (přichází) v šest, ale dnes přišla až v sedm. (i) Přeběhl ulici. (j) Pan Navrátil vyšel z domu, podíval se na nebe, pomyslel si, že to vypadá na déšť a vrátil se dovnitř pro kabát. 3 (a) Vypadá dobře. (b) Vypadá dobře. (c) Vypadá jako Napoleon. (d) Vata vypadá jako sníh. (e) Vypadá jako sníh. (f) Vypadá to na sníh. (g) Dívá se (ven) z okna. (h) Vypadalo to, že nepjide. (i) Vypadá anglicky. (j) Vypadal jste strašně. 4 (a) Přijel jsem vlakem. (b) Přiletěl jsem letadlem. (c) Přijel jsem autem. (d) Přijel jsem autobusem. (e) Přijel jsem metrem. (f) (Při)šel jsem lesem. (g) (Při)šel jsem městem. (h) Přijel jsem prostřednictvím Čedoku. (i) Přijel jsem stopem. (j) Přijel jsem taxíkem. 5 (a) perem, stroji. (b) rodiči. (c) partnerem, novém podniku. (d) námi, hrad. (e) sebou. (f) mostem. (g) autem, opravně. (h) tebou. (i) psem, vlkem. (j) válkou, dům, venkově. 6 (a) Fotbalista dal košili na postel. (b) Dám peníze k pasu. (c) Dala nákup do kočárku. (d) Učitel dal slovník mezi ostatní. (e) Dávali jsme popelnice před dům. (f) Instalátér dává novou trubku za vanu. (g) Dal knihy ze stolu na židli. (h) Musí dávat porcelán do krabic opatrně. (i) Proč jste dal ty dopisy na zem?



## Unit 13

1 (a) Slunce svítí. (b) Prší. (c) Sněží. (d) Je zima. (e) Je zataženo/zamračeno. (f) Fouká vítr. 2 (a) Vypadá to na déšť. (b) Doufám, že zítra nebude pršet. (c) Moje dcera se bojí hromu. (d) Nerad jezdím v mlze. (e) Včera padal sníh celý den. (f) Nejdřív lilo jako z konve, potom svítilo slunce. (g) Předpověď říká, že bude zima a zataženo. (h) Když stoupá tlak, bolí mě hlava. (i) Kolik stupňů je venku? Jsou čtyři stupně. (j) Ne, nejsou, je pět stupňů. (k) Vítr fouká od jihu, bude teplo. 3 (a) Ale Marie řekla Petrovi, že auto už umyla. > Ale řekla mu, že ho už umyla. (b) Koncert se mi nelíbil > Nelíbil se mi. (c) Navštívíme Smithovy zítra > Navštívíme je zítra. (d) Neobejdu se bez slovníku > Neobejdu se bez něho. (e) Řekněte nám o své cestě > Řekněte nám o ní. (f) Nejdřív zkusíme dát knihy do krabice > Nejdřív je zkusíme dát do ní. (g) Smithovi si spletli hospody > Spletli si je. (h) Nekoupí lístky Anně, ale Štěpánovi koupí > Nekoupí je jí, ale jemu koupí. (i) Dcera nedala deštník sousedům > Nedala ho jim (or: Sousedům dcera deštník nedala > Jim ho nedala). (j) Kdy jste viděl (-la, -li) výstavu? > Kdy jste ji viděl (-la, -li)? 4 (a) Viděl před jeho domem sanitku. (b) Někomu jiný. (c) Paní Navrátilová. (d) V Bratislavě. (e) Bude ho zastupovat v práci/v laboratoři. (f) Nevíme. 5 (a) Sunday, 13 April 2003. (b) The moon sets. (c) Rain will be occasional, and only localized in the north. (d) až means 'to', between points on a scale. (e) 1775 is the year when records began at the Klementinum in Prague; 1952 saw the highest temperature for 13 April since records began; 1986 saw the lowest temperature since records began. (f) In the south and south-east, where more persistent rain is forecast. (g) 5 metres per second. 6 (a) jiného. (b) jiný. (c) někam jinam. (d) jinam/jinudy. (e) jiného. (f) jiný. (g) jiným. (h) jinde. (i) jinak. 7 (a) Jsou dvě hodiny a deset minut or Je za pět minut čtvrt na tři. (b) Je čtvrt na čtyři a pět minut or Je za deset minut půl čtvrtě. (c) Je tři čtvrtě na dvanáct a pět minut or Je za deset minut dvanáct. (d) Je půl osmé a deset minut or Je za pět minut tři čtvrtě na osm. (e) Je za pět minut půl šesté (the other possibility is unlikely here). (f) Je tři čtvrtě na devět a tři minuty or Je za dvanáct minut devět. (g) Je půl páté a sedm minut or Je za osm minut tři čtvrtě na pět. (h) Je deset hodin a sedm minut or Je za osm minut čtvrt na jedenáct. (i) Je tři čtvrtě na jednu a jedenáct minut or Je za čtyři minuty jedna. (j) Je dvanáct (hodin) čtrnáct (minut) or Je za minutu čtvrt na jednu. (k) Je dvanáct (hodin) dvacet devět (minut) or Je za minutu půl jedné. 8 watches to show: (a) 10.05, (b) 6.45, (c) 12.23, (d) 4.50, (e) 2.30, (f) 1.15. 9 (a) to stand on one's own two feet; (b) to get under someone's feet; (c) to be all fingers and thumbs ('to have two left hands'); (d) to shake hands; (e) not to be able to believe one's ears; (f) to be head over heels (up to the ears) in love; (g) stay/keep out of my sight; (h) out of sight, out of mind.

## Unit 14

1 (a) Nakupujte v obchodě za rohem. (b) Kupte mi, prosím, zmrzlinu. (c) Donesme (or Odnesme) (svoje) knihy zpátky do knihovny. (d) Vždycky pomáhejte starým lidem přes ulici. (e) Nemyjte nejlepší porcelán v myčce. (f) Podívejte se! Zase prší. (g) Řekněte mi, prosím, kde jsou záchody. (h) Mějte trpělivost. Petr tu brzy bude. (i) Přečtěte mi, prosím, ten článek. (j) Nespěte během filmu. (k) Pochopte, já se tam do čtvrtka nedostanu (nemohu/nemůžu dostat). (l) Myslete na nás, až budeme pryč. 2 (a) Pass me the ... (b) Apply/Refer to ... (c) Store in a dry place. (d) Don't hesitate. (e) Cross to the opposite pavement. (f) Sit down. (g) Don't park in front of the exit. (h) Stop (it). (i) Let's say no more about it. (j) Return your form, duly filled in, by/to ... 3 (a) Kupte mi, prosím, známku na poštu. (b) Přineste/Doneste mi knihu zpátky včas. (c) Pojďte dál. Nemusíte se zouvat. (d) Přeložte mi, prosím, tento dopis. (e) Nemluvte nahlas! (f) Rozsviňte mi, prosím. (g) Buďte tak hodný a pomozte mi vyplnit formulář. (h) Jděte pryč. (i) Nenechávejte klíče na stole. (j) Nechoďte ke mně, když máte takovou rýmu. 4 (a) Ať je počasí jakékoli, jdeme ven. (b) Ať vám to(hle) řekl kdokoli, je hlupák. (c) Ať pojedete kamkoli, pošlete mi pohlednici. (d) Ať jste to koupil kdekoli, osídili vás. (e) Budu se učit podle kterékoli knihy v kterémkoli jazyce. (f) Nemluvte o tom s nikým. (g) Kdo se (ze)ptal, jestli něco potřebuji (-ju)? (h) Kdykoli bude svítit slunce, budeme si hrát venku. (i) Máte (nějaké) pohlednice s obrázky řeky? (j) Na mě se svými problémy nechoďte.

## Unit 15

1 (a) Chodím raději do divadla než do kina. (b) Kupuji dárky raději (or Raději kupuji dárky) rodičům než dětem. (c) Seděli bychom raději vzadu než vpředu. (d) Mám raději Janu než Petra. (e) Šel bych raději k řece než do parku. (f) Budu platit raději v dolarech než v korunách. (g) Platil bych raději v korunách než v librách. (h) Parkoval bych raději na parkovišti než na ulici. (i) Šla bych tam raději s Milošem než sama. (j) Měli by to koupit raději teď než za týden. 2 (b) Marie je ochotná každému pomáhat. Zatím je v domácnosti, ale raději by byla učitelkou. (c) Štěpán je vtipný. Zatím je televizním hlasatelem, ale raději by byl komikem. (d) Radek je energický. Zatím je programátorem, ale raději by byl horolezcem. (e) Josef je hudebně nadaný. Zatím je fotbalistou, ale raději by byl dirigentem. (f) Sofie je krásná. Zatím je písarkou, ale raději by byla modelkou. (g) Jsem líný. Zatím jsem šoférem, ale raději bych byl ředitelem. 3 (a) Jde o počasí/přednášku/Marii/nás/všechno. (b) Jde jim o peníze/dovolenou/příští schůzi/nový pas. (c) Jde nám o kariéru/tu zprávu v novinách/zdraví/naši návštěvu. (d) Panu Smithovi jde o jeho zavazadla/věceři/dárek pro sousedku/práci v laboratoři. (e) O nový návrh jde panu Smithovi/slečně Šetkové/řediteli/celému podniku/nám. 4 (a) .., abyste si vzali ... (b) .., abychom přijeli ... (c) .., aby se Petr a Marie vzali. (d) .., aby

všechna zavazadla vzali s sebou. (e) .., abych mu to poslal ... (f) .., abychom jim půjčili ... (g) .., abychom nezmeškali ... (h) .., abys v ložnici kouřil. (i) Abyste si, milí přátelé, nemysleli ... (j) Už aby ty dopisy přišly! 5 (a) Hledáme ve slovníku, abychom našli významy slov. (b) Vaří manželovi zeleninu, aby se stal vegetariánem. (c) Učí se česky, aby mohli pracovat v Praze. (d) Abychom večereli spolu, musíte přijít domů včas. (e) Zavolám sousedy, aby nám pomohli s přípravami. (f) Aby člověk studoval cizí jazyky, musí mít jisté nadání. (g) Abyste směl v Anglii řídit auto, musí vám být aspoň 17 let. 6 (b) Vařila ... (d) Musel jste přijít ... (f) .., musel mit ...

7 (a) Kdyby mi to Petr neřekl, nevěděl bych o tom nic. (b) Kdybyste, Jano a Ivane, chtěli jet s námi, bylo by ještě místo. (c) My bychom v Edinburghu nekupovali nový dům, kdybych já tam nedostal dobré místo. (d) Kdyby její synové tak nepili, nemusela by si dělat tolik starostí. (e) Kdybych byl na vašem místě, řekl bych to také sousedům. 8 (a) If Peter hadn't told me, I wouldn't know anything about it. (b) If, Jana and Ivan, you would like to go with us, there would still be room. (c) We wouldn't be buying a new house in Edinburgh if I hadn't got a good job there. (d) If her sons didn't drink so, she wouldn't have to worry so much. (e) If I were in your place, I would tell the neighbours as well.

Proverbs: (i) *Ifs are errors (something wrong)*; (ii) *If there were no ifs, there'd be no errors (nothing wrong)*. They mean that if nothing is wrong, we would not have been led to wish for alternatives. The English equivalents are the rather more colourful: *If wishes were horses, beggars would ride*, or *If ifs and ans were pots and pans there'd be no need for tinkers and perhaps others*.

### Unit 16

1 (a) Lenka má radši Prahu, protože je krásnější než Londýn. (b) Studenti čtou radši překlad, protože je jednodušší než originál. (c) Radši (po-)letíme, protože letadlo je rychlejší než vlak. (d) Petr sedí radši vedle Sary, protože není tak protivná jako Marie. (e) Zuzana mluví radši slovensky, protože slovenština je pro ni lehčí než čeština. (f) Skotové pijí radši whisky, protože je silnější než pivo. (g) Štěpán nosí radši džínsy, protože jsou novější než jeho kalhoty. 2 (a) Lenka měla radši Prahu, protože je krásnější než Londýn. (b) Studenti četli radši překlad, protože byl jednodušší než originál. (c) Radši jsme letěli, protože letadlo je rychlejší než vlak. (d) Petr seděl radši vedle Sary, protože nebyla/není tak protivná jako Marie. (e) Zuzana mluvila radši slovensky, protože slovenština je/byla pro ni lehčí než čeština. (f) Skotové pili radši whisky, protože je silnější než pivo. (g) Štěpán nosil radši džínsy, protože byly novější než jeho kalhoty. 3 (a) Londýn je starší než New York. (b) Pražský hrad je mnohem starší než Hluboká. (c) Můj souseď je ještě starší než otec. (d) Jeho manželka je o šest měsíců starší než on. (e) Jejich dům není tak starý jako náš. (f) Tento hotel je o dvě stě let starší než hotel na náměstí. (g) Moje auto je stejně staré jako jeho. (h) Tenhle kufr není o mnoho starší (je jen o málo starší) než ten druhý.

4 (a) zdravěji. (b) dřív, rychleji. (c) spíš. (d) čitelněji. (e) pohodlněji. (f) víc. (g) dál. (h) dráž. (i) rozumněji. (j) raději. 5 (a) Nejraději jezdí na kole. (b) Vlak používá, když se potřebuje někam dostat rychleji. (c) Ne, Moravu nezná. (d) Ano, Praha se mu líbí, protože je velmi zajímavá. (e) Ano, měl. Někdo mu ho půjčil. (f) Protože tam jsou kočiči hlavy. 6 (a) Mluvte tišeji! (b) Pojdte rychleji! (c) Pojdte co nejrychleji. (d) Mluvte, prosím, pomaleji. (e) Uvažujte rozumněji. (f) Chovejte se slušněji.

### Unit 17

1 (a) hořící. (b) tonoucí. (c) spícího. (d) vedoucími. (e) stávkujícím. (f) vadnoucí. (g) rozhodujícím. (h) štekající. (i) padající. 2 (a) krycí jméno. (b) balicí papír. (c) rozkazovací věta. (d) školící zařízení. (e) obývací pokoj. (f) skladovací prostor. (g) oddací list. (h) poznávací značka. (i) mycí houba. (j) hrací karty. → (g) is the odd man out because the adjective is formed from the perfective – and logically so. Crossword: A = ČÁST, B = CHRÁMY, C = PETR; 1 = ČECHY, 2 = STÁLE, 3 = TYGR. Did you remember that CH counts as one letter? 3 (a) jejíž. (b) jejíž. (c) jehož or jejížž. (d) či, jehož. (e) jejíž. (f) jehož. (g) čím. (h) jejížž. 4 disponující = kteří disponují; přející = kteří si přejí (or: a přejí si); mající = který má; zabývajících se = které se zabývají; charakterizující = která charakterizuje; mající = kteří měli; upravujících = které upravují.

### Unit 18

1 (a) patnáctého března; (b) tři čtvrtě na čtyři; (c) za dvě minuty čtvrt na šest; (d) sedmadvacátého září; (e) prvního července; (f) půl jedné; (g) dvanáctého prosince; (h) za deset minut pět; (i) jednadvacátého ledna; (j) devěťadvacátého února; (k) za pět minut půl osmé; (l) devátého srpna; (m) pátého listopadu; (n) čtvrt na osm a dvě minuty. 2 (a) Bratrova manželka .., (b) se sousedovým psem. (c) Shakespearovy hry. (d) za Petrovou chalupou. (e) pod Věřinou postelí. (f) Štěpánovi přátelé. (g) lednička paní Smithové. (h) Wilsonovo nádraží. (i) bez Mariina souhlasu. (j) Zdeňčiny staré knihy. (k) Chrám svatého Víta. (l) na Karlově mostě. (m) Sestřina kočka. (n) Průvodcova poslední slova. 3 (a) Co kdybychom se zeptali Petra? or Nemohli bychom se zeptat Petra? (b) Co když to Líba nevěděla? or Co kdyby to Líba nevěděla? (c) Co kdybychom šli na večeři do restaurace? or Nechcete jít na večeři do restaurace? (d) Nedáme si pivo? or Co kdybychom si dali pivo? (e) Co na to říkáte? or Co vy na to? (f) Co na to řekla? or Co ona na to? 4 (a) modrá, bílá a červená. (b) bílá, zelená a červená (s červeným drakem). (c) černá, červená a žlutá. (d) červená a bílá (s bílým křížem). (f) zelená, bílá a oranžová. (g) modrá, bílá a červená. 5 (a) rozlité mléko; (b) nezvaný host; (c) přibité plakáty; (d) připsaná písmena; (e) zahnutý nos. 6 (a) zadaný stůl; (b) uznávaná autorita; (c) zakázané ovoce; (d) informované zdroje. 7 (a) vyžehlená košile; (b) zlepený výkon; (c) Ztracený Ráj;



(d) nepřihlášený cizinec; (e) neomezené prostředky; (f) vypůjčené kolo; (g) dobře promyšlený návrh; (h) Spojené národy.  
 8 (a) dovezené stroje; (b) nově nalezené štěsti; (c) unesené letadlo; (d) okradený turista. 9 (a) Možná (or: Třeba) přijde. (b) Máte asi pravdu. (c) Zřejmě nechal klíče doma. (d) Bylo tam asi dvacet lidí. (e) Patrně (or: Asi) nepřijde. 10 (a) Potřebuju čerstvě vypranou košili. (b) ... ty dva nedávno vydané překlady. (c) ... najít svoje ztracené hodinky. (d) ... vidět nově otevřený most, než pojedou/odjedou domů. (e) ... si odpočinout, protože mám unavené nohy. (f) ... si opakovat zapomenutá slova z osmé lekce. (g) ... otevřít zamčenou (or: zamknutou) skříň. (h) ... tři talentované mladé lidi pro film, který chci natočit. (i) ... opatrně formulovaný dopis, který chci poslat manažerovi (or: vedoucímu) hotelu. (j) ...spravit rozbitou aktrvku.

### Unit 19

1 (a) Petr má rád vaření. (b) Máme rádi létání na kluzácích. (c) Nemá rád utírání nádobí. (d) Má radši hraní s počítačem než děláni úkolů. (e) Nejráději ze všeho měl čtení dlouhých románů. (f) Měla ráda pěstování malých druhů azalek. 2 (a) Vyřizování žádosti ... (b) ... provedení poslední části. (c) Učení se matematiky (or: matematice) ... (d) ... v kladení překážek. (e) ... utrácení tolika peněz. (f) Psaní kondolenčního dopisu... (g) ... hodnocení výsledků ... 3 (a) Nerad peru košile/Nemám rád praní košil. (b) Nechodíme příliš rádi na houby/Chození (or: Chodit) na houby se nám moc nelíbí. (c) Psaní dopisu nevěnovala mnoho (or: moc) času/Psaním dopisu nestrávila mnoho času. (d) Mají rádi kutění s auty/Baví se kutěním s auty. 4 (a) (i) (Můj) Kufr byl odcizen vysokým mužem/člověkem s dlouhými vlasy. (ii) Kufr mi ukradl ten vysoký člověk/muž s dlouhými vlasy. (b) (i) Roku (R.) 1884 byla vesnice opuštěna, aby údolí mohlo být zaplaveno. (ii) Vesnice byla opuštěná, proto postavili přehradu. (c) (i) Král byl popraven bez ceremonie svými nepřáteli. (ii) Krále zabil jeho lékař! (d) (i) Obžalovaný byl zpozorován třemi svědky v 16 hodin a třicet minut. (ii) Toho muže prý viděli tři svědkové (svědci) v půl páté. (e) (i) Ložnice byla vymalována v termínu. (ii) Tento pokoj hezky vymalovaný už je. (f) (i) Kufr odcizený mužem s dlouhými vlasy byl nalezen blízko řeky. (ii) Její pas byl v kufru ukradeném tím mužem s dlouhými vlasy. 5 (a) Jsem na sedmnáctce. (b) Chtěl bych, abyste mi vypral(a) tyto čtyři kalhoty. (c) Má radši dvanáctku než desítku. (Dává přednost dvanáctce před desítkou.) (d) Můžete mi rozměnit pětistovku? (e) Nám dali šestinu a sobě nechali pět šestin, ale já si myslím, že jsme měli dostat tři čtvrtiny. (f) Museli jsme vyměnit zámek (zámky) ve dvořích dveřích.

**adjectives** Adjectives are used to provide more information about nouns, e.g. *That school is very good.* Ta škola je velmi dobrá. The new hotel is expensive. Nový hotel je drahý. In a language like Czech adjectives must agree in gender and number and, where relevant, case with the noun they qualify, e.g. *good school dobrá škola, good hotel dobrý hotel, good people dobří lidé, with good people s dobrými lidmi.*

**adverbs** Adverbs mainly provide more information about verbs: *She was singing quietly. Zpívala tiše.* They may also provide more information about adjectives: *It was completely unnecessary. Bylo to úplně zbytečné.* The typical English adverb ends in -ly while in Czech the main type ends in -ě or -e. Simple words expressing additional information about time, place, manner or degree such as *then tehdy, here tady, somehow nějak, very velmi* are also adverbs.

**articles** English has a definite article *the* and an indefinite article *a/an*. Czech has no articles, though forms of ten and nějaký may sometimes appear to act as substitutes for them. Czech frequently compensates for its lack of articles by changes of word order: *The book is on the table. Kniha je na stole, but: There is a book on the table. Na stole je kniha.*

**aspect** Aspect is a category in Czech which expresses whether a verbal action is (*perfective* aspect) or is not (*imperfective* aspect) completed. With the perfective, the fact of completion is in some sense relevant (consequences may follow from it). The imperfective can express both ongoing states or acts (by definition not completed), or those that are regularly repeated (by definition not one completed event), or those which may have been completed, but where that completion has no particular relevance or consequence. Examples: *I've read the paper. Noviny jsem přečetl* (perfective;



possible consequence: you can have the paper). *At home I (used to) read the Guardian Doma jsem četl Guardian* (imperfective; implied regularity). *I read War and Peace as a child Četl jsem Vojnu a mír jako dítě* (imperfective; no particular relevant consequence, even if I did read the whole book).

**auxiliary verb** This term applies to those bits of the verbal expression in a sentence which give it its 'grammar' as opposed to just its 'meaning'. In *I have been cooking since ten o'clock* the verb is *to cook*, while *have* and *been* are the auxiliary, 'helping', words that place the cooking in a particular time frame; similarly the 'will' in *I will cook today* or the *do* in *Do you cook?* Being grammatical, these English auxiliaries have no direct equivalent in Czech, though Czech does have auxiliary verbs of its own, in the past tense, the imperfective aspect of the future tense and the conditional.

**case** Case is that feature of a noun (or adjective, pronoun or numeral) by which it is integrated into the sentence; it is revealed by 'endings'. For example, the function of 'subject of the sentence' is expressed by the nominative case. Most of the cases, which are conventionally ordered in Czech as nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, locative, instrumental, have more than one function: a noun in the genitive (with its genitive ending) will frequently have to do with possession or some other relation expressed in English by *of*, but it is also the case required by many **prepositions**. Case has long gone from English, but we see shades of it in some pronouns: *he v. him, we v. us* and others.

**clause** This is a technical term for a sentence, but used specifically to denote each of the part-sentences that make up a whole, more complex 'space between full stops'. *She was knitting and her husband was working in the garden* *Ona pletla a manžel pracoval na zahradě* consists of two simple clauses, either of which could stand on its own. *He made some tea because he was thirsty* *Udělal si čaj, protože měl žízeň* likewise has two clauses, the first potentially free standing, the **main** clause, the second a so-called **subordinate** clause introduced by the **conjunction** *because*. A clause can be recognized by having a **finite** verb-form, here *was knitting, was working, made* and *was* (as opposed to the **infinitive** or **participles**).

**comparative** The comparative form of adjectives and adverbs is used in making comparisons. In English this means adding *-er* to most adjectives and some adverbs or putting *more* in front of them; Czech adds endings of the type *-ější, -ší, -čí* to adjectives and, most frequently, *-ěji* to adverbs: *This shirt is cheaper/more*

*expensive than that one. Tahle košile je levnější/dražší než tamta. The baby is sleeping more calmly than yesterday. Dítě spí klidněji než včera.*

**conditional** This term applies in Czech to a set of verb forms which look like a **tense**, but which apply to acts or states that are in some sense 'unreal' or merely 'possible' or 'desirable'. It is akin to the much rarer English **subjunctive**. Examples: *If he felt worse [but he doesn't], he would go to the doctor [but he probably won't]. Kdyby se cítil hůř, šel by k doktorovi. He insisted that I go to the doctor [at the time I hadn't gone, wasn't going; it was merely desirable]. Naléhal, abych šel k doktorovi.* The Czech 'conditional auxiliary' – forms of *by* – are embedded, where applicable, in the conjunctions *kdyby if* and *aby that, so that, in order to*.

**conjugation** This term applies to the fact that, and the manner in which, verbs change – *conjugate* – according to their formal class. For example, an **a-conjugation** verb will be marked by having an *-a-* or *-á-* appearing in its various forms. However, *-a-* in the **infinitive** need not guarantee that the verb is itself of the **a-conjugation**, though it often will.

**conjunction** Conjunctions are the words that literally *conjoin clauses*. They are divided between *co-ordinating* conjunctions, such as *and a, but ale* and *or nebo*, and *subordinating* conjunctions, which introduce clauses which would not normally be able to stand on their own. They include *when když, although ačkoli, because protože* and many others.

**declension** This term applies to the fact that, and the manner in which, nouns, pronouns, adjectives and some numerals change – *decline* – according to their formal class. Patterns of declension are associated with **gender, case** and **number**.

**demonstratives** These are words like *this* and *that – tenhle* and *tamtén*; they indicate, 'point to', items that are relatively closer to or farther from the speaker, or, in the case of *that – ten*, indicate something that the speaker believes the hearer will know of, remember etc.: *He was washing that new car of his. Myl to svoje nové auto.* In Czech, demonstratives, like **adjectives** and other qualifying expressions, agree with their **noun** in **gender, number** and **case**.

**gender** In English, gender is usually linked to the sex of persons and animals and is expressed by the use of *he* and *she* for males and females respectively; objects and beings of indeterminate sex are referred to as *it*. These are the **masculine, feminine** and **neuter** personal **pronouns** of English, where

gender is a 'natural' category. In Czech, gender is a grammatical category and nothing to do with sex; it broadly matches natural gender with humans and some animals, so *man muž, husband manžel, judge soudce, bull býk* are masculine, and *woman žena, wife manželka, (lady) judge soudkyně, cow kráva* are feminine, while all other items, whether living, non-living or abstract, have *grammatical* gender, which may appear arbitrary: *vrabec sparrow* is masculine, *ryba fish* is feminine, *prase pig* is neuter; *stůl table* is masculine, *židle chair* is feminine, *křeslo armchair* is neuter; *zájem interest* is masculine, *krása beauty* is feminine, *zdraví health* is neuter. In many cases a word's gender is predictable from its form, but you must accept that the gender of each new noun you meet has to be learnt at the first encounter.

**imperative** The imperative is the form of the verb used to give directions, instructions or commands: *Insert the diskette in drive A. Vložte disketu do diskové jednotky A. Pop to the shop for me and buy some tea. Skoč mi do krámu a kup čaj. Halt! Stůjte!*

**infinitive** The infinitive is the basic form of the verb as you will find it in dictionaries. In Czech the infinitive ends in -t, though until fairly recently the ending -ti was the norm, and those you meet ending in -ct ended in -ci; these earlier forms may still be encountered in older texts or dictionaries. In large measure, the letters to the left of the final -t give some guidance as to a verb's **conjugation**, but this is not reliable enough; therefore with each new verb be prepared to learn not only the infinitive, but also the third-person singular and, especially in the case of *monosyllabic* verbs, the past tense. Examples: *mít-má-měl to have, říct-řekne-řekl to tell, brát-bere-bral to take*.

**irregular verbs** Not all verbs conjugate (see **conjugation**) according to the small number of main patterns, nor is their conjugation necessarily obvious from the **infinitive**. All languages have such verbs, called 'irregular verbs'; the crucial ones in Czech tend to be *monosyllabic* and their individual peculiarities have to be learnt (see **infinitive**).

**nouns** Nouns are words like *house dům, teacher učitel, wealth bohatství*; they are often called 'naming words' – they name persons, objects or ideas etc.

**number** This is the name for the grammatical category indicating whether something is 'one' or *singular* (house) or 'more than one' or *plural* (houses).

**object** This term describes the **noun** or **pronoun** affected by the action (or other operation) of the verb. In *The cat caught the*

*mouse Kočka chytila myš* or *Kamila is writing a book. Kamila píše knihu*, the mouse and the book are the objects in their respective sentences. In Czech, the object is typically expressed by the accusative case (see **case**). In more complicated sentences such as *My mother gave the driver some money Matka dala šoferovi peníze*, the expression *some money* expresses what was given (just as the mouse was what was caught and the book what was being written) and so is the **object**; here, however, we refer to it as the *direct object*, to distinguish it from the driver, who as recipient or beneficiary of the giving, is said to be the *indirect object*. In Czech the indirect object is typically expressed by the dative case.

**participles** In English these are the *-ing* and *-ed* forms, 'parts', of verbs. The former is the *active*, as in *killing*, the latter the *passive* participle, as in *killed*. They have various uses and various formal equivalents in Czech.

**passive** See Unit 19, Note 9.

**person** Person is what characterizes the different conjugated forms of verbs. *Zpívám* and *zpíváme* are the *I* and *we* or 'first person' singular and plural forms of *zpívat sing* respectively. Similarly *zpíváš* and *zpíváte* are the *you* or 'second person' forms. The 'third person' forms – singular *zpívá*, plural *zpívají* – are not only used for third persons *he/she/it* and *they*, but for any other singular or plural **subject** expressed as a noun. Thus on its own *Zpívá* is *She is singing*, but the same form is needed in *Matka zpívá. Mother is singing*.

**personal pronouns** While the name of this class of pronouns (see **pronouns**) suggests an association with one or other person or persons – *I já, she ona, we my* etc., it also embraces expressions such as *it ono, to* and *they* as referring, for example, to some previously mentioned books. You should appreciate that in Czech, a language with grammatical gender (see **gender**), forms of *on* or *ona*, apparently 'he' or 'she', may refer to any masculine (that is, not merely male) or feminine (not just female) noun, hence *To je můj nový slovník. Koupil jsem si ho včera This is my new dictionary. I bought 'him' yesterday*. (See also **subject**.)

**plural** See **number**.

**possessives or possessive pronouns** These are the words that express possession, after the manner of 'my book' *moje kniha*, 'the book is mine' *knihy je moje*. Also forms of *tvůj your, jeho his, její her(s), náš our(s), váš your(s), jejich their(s)*, and *čí?*



*Whose?* In some works (for some languages) this class of pronoun is referred to as possessive adjectives, a term better reserved in Czech for words like *Petrův Peter's*, *matčin mother's*.

**prepositions** Words like *in*, *for*, *pro*, *without* *bez* are called prepositions; they establish all manner of spatial and other relations between different things mentioned in a sentence, whether as nouns or pronouns: *The milk's in the fridge*. *Mléko je v ledničce*. *I'll do it for you*. *Udělám pro tebe*. She came *without* her husband. *Přišla bez manžela*. Some expressions in both Czech and English count as prepositions even if consisting of more than one word: He took the money *out of* his pocket. *Vzal peníze z kapsy*. *Irrespective of the weather... Bez ohledu na počasí ...* Each Czech preposition is associated with (must be followed by a noun or pronoun in) one or other of the **cases**. In the above examples *v* is followed by the locative, *pro* and *bez* *ohledu na* by the accusative, *bez* and *z* by the genitive. This means that you must learn the case(s) that each preposition governs.

**pronouns** There are several categories of these items, which fulfil functions similar to nouns. They often stand in the place of nouns which have already been mentioned, e.g. *My girlfriend (noun) is Czech* *Moje přítelkyně je Češka*. *Mám ji velmi rád*. *I love her* (personal pronoun) *very much*. *I'll show you her* (possessive pronoun) *photo*. *Ukážu ti její fotku*. In the same example, *moje* and *ti* are also pronouns, referring to the speaker and addressee in their own right rather than replacing their names as 'previously mentioned' nouns. Among the most widely used Czech pronouns is *se*, called the 'reflexive pronoun', because it refers back to, 'reflects', the **subject** of the sentence: *Kočka se líže* *The cat is licking itself*. *Petr se myje* *Peter is getting washed (washing himself)*. With a plural subject *se* may express reciprocity: *Petr a Marie se mají rádi* *Peter and Mary love each other*; *Petr a Marie se myjí* is theoretically ambiguous between *Peter and Mary are getting washed (washing themselves)* and *Peter and Mary are washing each other*, but the context will usually suggest which interpretation is appropriate. *se* has many other, largely grammatical, functions, but it is nonetheless always referred to as a pronoun.

**reflexive pronouns** See **pronouns**.

**reflexive verbs** Primarily, this term applies to verbs of which the subject and object are one and the same: Czech *mýt se to get washed* is structurally equivalent to *to wash oneself*. A secondary type is *zabít se to perish, get killed*, *nudit se to be*

*bored*; though structurally like *to kill oneself* or *to bore oneself*, they do not actually mean 'take one's life ...' or 'bore oneself deliberately ...'. The term also applies to the numerous Czech verbs of which *se* is a necessary part although it cannot be interpreted as a reflexive pronoun-object. These include *dívat se to look*, *bát se to be afraid*, *smát se to laugh* (there is no free-standing *dívat*, *bát* or *smát*; English has very few verbs like this, but think of *overreach* or *perjure*).

**singular** See **number**.

**subject** This term expresses the **noun** or **pronoun** denoting the person or thing that performs the verbal action or is described as being in such and such a state. So in *My mother gave the driver some money* or *They are asleep* the subjects are *my mother* and *they* respectively. Unlike English, in Czech a **pronoun subject** is often not a separate word, being expressed by the ending of the verb: *Zpívá* *She is singing*; whether the person who is singing is a he or a her follows from the context.

**superlative** The superlative is used for the most extreme degree of a quality expressed as an adjective or adverb. In English it is expressed by *-est* or *most*. Examples: *This shirt is the cheapest/most expensive of all*. *Tato košile je nejlevnější/nejdražší ze všech*. *Peter runs fastest*. *Petr běhá nejrychleji*. (See also **comparative**.)

**tense** This term applies to sets of verb forms that apply to a particular time – in Czech **present**, **past** and **future**. *He is working/was working/will be working*. *Pracuje/pracoval/bude pracovat*. Importantly, Czech does not have the English patterns known as 'sequence of tenses', as in *He said he was just leaving*. (two past tense forms since the whole event happened in the past). Instead it uses patterns like *Řekl* [past], *že právě odchází* [present], i.e. *He said that he is just leaving*, reflecting the tense that applied at the moment of speaking – he had said 'I am leaving'. This explains in part the need for a term – **tense** – that makes a distinction between the verb **forms** and any actual present, past or future **times**.

**verb** The verb is the linchpin of the sentence, expressing the action, state or sensation that is performed or experienced by the **subject**. *The children were playing outside*. *Děti si hrály venku*. *The dog is sleeping in his kennel*. *Pes spí v boudě*. *I smell gas*. *Cítím plyn*. Czech has many kinds of subjectless sentences: *Prší* *It is raining*. *Tady se pracuje* *People are working here* [literally: *Here is worked*].

## Appendix 1 – Reference tables

This section systematizes the declensional types which you necessarily had to meet piecemeal. For verbs, refer back to the table in Unit 2.

### Nouns

As you progressed through the book, you met the cases more or less in line with the frequency with which you would need them. In these reference tables, the order is that which is conventionally used in Czech reference works, which you should now be able to use.

#### Masculine

Inanimate	Hard		Soft	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	hrad	hrady	klíč	klíče
Genitive	hradu <sup>1</sup>	hradů	klíče	klíčů
Dative	hradu	hradům	klíči	klíčům
Accusative	hrad	hrady	klíč	klíče
Vocative	hrade	hrady	klíči	klíče
Locative	(o) hradě/ů <sup>2</sup>	hradech	klíči	klíčích
Instrumental	hradem	hrady	klíčem	klíči

- 1 Many common nouns, or groups of nouns (some names of months), have -a in the genitive singular. See Unit 11, Note 4 and 7 and Glossary.
- 2 For variation in the locative singular see Unit 3, Note 11.

Animate	Hard		Soft	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	pán	pánové/páni <sup>1</sup>	muž	muži
Genitive	pána	pánů	muže	mužů
Dative	pánovi <sup>2</sup>	pánům	muži	mužům
Accusative	pána	pány	muže	muže
Vocative	pane	pánové/páni	muži <sup>4</sup>	muži
Locative	(o) pánovi <sup>2</sup>	pánech <sup>3</sup>	muži	mužích
Instrumental	pánem	pány	mužem	muži

- 1 For variation in the nominative/vocative plural see Unit 6, Note 3.
- 2 For variation in dative/locative singular see Unit 7, Note 2 and Unit 10, Note 2.
- 3 For variation in locative plural see Unit 10, Note 11.
- 4 Nouns ending in -ec have the vocative ending -če.

#### Feminine

	Hard		Soft	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	žena	ženy	růže <sup>1</sup>	růže
Genitive	ženy	žen	růže	růží <sup>3</sup>
Dative	ženě	ženám	růži	růžím
Accusative	ženu	ženy	růži	růže
Vocative	ženo	ženy	růže <sup>2</sup>	růže
Locative	(o) ženě	ženách	růži	růžích
Instrumental	ženou	ženami	růží	růžemi

- 1 Words with stems ending in b, p, v or m, ř, ť, ď or ň have -ě for -e. Some have no final vowel; *dlaň*, pl. *dlaně* *palm* shows both points.
- 2 Member of this class that have a zero ending in the nominative have the vocative ending -i, e.g. *ujani*.
- 3 Some groups of words have a zero ending; see Unit 7, Note 4.

## Masculine a-declension

	Hard		Soft	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	hrdina	hrdinové	průvodce	průvodcové <sup>1</sup>
Genitive	hrdiny	hrdinů	průvodce	průvodců
Dative	hrdinovi	hrdinům	průvodci	průvodcům
Accusative	hrdinu	hrdiny	průvodce	průvodce
Vocative	hrdino	hrdinové	průvodce	průvodcové <sup>1</sup>
Locative	(o) hrdinovi	hrdinech	průvodci	průvodcích
Instrumental	hrdinou	hrdiny	průvodcem	průvodci

<sup>1</sup> Also průvodci, i.e. like muži above.

## Neuter

	Hard		Soft	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	okno	okna	moře	moře
Genitive	okna	oken	moře	moří <sup>1</sup>
Dative	oknu	oknům	moři	mořím
Accusative	okno	okna	moře	moře
Vocative	okno	okna	moře	moře
Locative	(o) okně	oknech	moři	mořích
Instrumental	oknem	okny	mořem	moři

<sup>1</sup> Some groups have a zero ending in the genitive plural; see Unit 7, Note 4.

Neuter *i-* and *í-* declensions

	Singular		Plural	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nádraží	nádraží	koťe	kořata
Genitive	nádraží	nádraží	koťete	kořat
Dative	nádraží	nádražím	koťeti	kořatům
Accusative	nádraží	nádraží	koťe	kořata
Vocative	nádraží	nádraží	koťe	kořata
Locative	(o) nádraží	neadražích	koťeti	kořatech
Instrumental	nádražím	nádražími	koťetem	kořaty

Feminine *i-* and *í-* declensions

	Singular		Plural	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	věc	věci	paní	paní
Genitive	věci	věcí	paní	paní
Dative	věci	věcem	paní	paním
Accusative	věc	věci	paní	paní
Vocative	věci	věci	paní	paní
Locative	(o) věci	věcech	paní	paních
Instrumental	věci	věcmi	paní	paními

## Hard adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	dobrý	dobrá	dobré	dobří*/dobré	dobré	dobrá
Genitive	dobrého	dobré	dobrého		dobrých	
Dative	dobrému	dobré	dobrému		dobrým	
Accusative	dobrý/	dobrou	dobré		dobré	dobrá
	dobrého*					
Locative	(o) dobrém	dobré	dobrém		dobrých	
Instrumental	dobrým	dobrou	dobrým		dobrými	

\*animate forms

## Soft adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	cizí	cizí	cizí	cizí	cizí	cizí
Genitive	cizího	cizí	cizího		cizích	
Dative	cizímu	cizí	cizímu		cizím	
Accusative	cizí/	cizí	cizí		cizí	
	cizího*					
Locative	(o) cizím	cizí	cizím		cizích	
Instrumental	cizím	cizí	cizím		cizími	

\*animate form



**Můj, tvůj, svůj**

Like the hard adjectives (e.g. gen. mého, mé, mých) except for:

	Singular			Plural		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
<b>Nominative</b>	můj	má/moje	mé/moje	mi*/moji*	mé/moje	má/moje
<b>Accusative</b>	můj/mého*	mou/moju	mé/moje	mé/moje	mé/moje	má/moje

\*animate forms

The two-syllable forms are more informal. Other (colloquial) forms based on *moj-*, *tvoj-*, *svoj-* followed by the same endings as in *náš*, *váš* below may be heard, but you should avoid them.

**Náš, váš**

	Singular			Plural		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
<b>Nominative</b>	náš	naše	naše	naši*/naše	naše	naše
<b>Genitive</b>	našeho	naší	našeho		našich	
<b>Dative</b>	našemu	naší	našemu		naším	
<b>Accusative</b>	náš/ našeho*	naší	naše		naše	
<b>Locative</b>	(o) našem	naší	našem		našich	
<b>Instrumental</b>	naším	naší	naším		našimi	

\*animate forms

For the partially similar declension of *všechen* see Unit 10, Note 13.

**Ten, ta, to**

	Singular			Plural		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
<b>Nominative</b>	ten	ta	to	ti*/ty	ty	ta
<b>Genitive</b>	toho	té	toho		těch	
<b>Dative</b>	tomu	té	tomu		těm	
<b>Accusative</b>	ten/toho*	tu	to	ty	ty	ta
<b>Locative</b>	(o) tom	té	tom		těch	
<b>Instrumental</b>	tím	tou	tím		těmi	

\*animate forms

Note that all pronouns and adjectives have vocative the same as the nominative.

For the declension of possessive adjectives, see Unit 18, Note 5.

For *oči*, *uší*, *ruce*, *nohy* see Unit 13, Note 15.

For *dva*, *oba*, *tři*, *čtyři* see Unit 13, Note 14.

For *tentýž* see Supplement, Note 3.

For personal pronouns see Unit 13, Note 5.

For *jenž* see Supplement, Note 2.

For *dvoje*, *čtvery* see Unit 19, Note 14.

For *všechen* see Unit 10, Note 13.

**Appendix 2 – Voicing and devoicing**

You met the main facts about spelling and pronunciation in the Introduction. There are some other systematic details which you ought to master in addition. Turn to this Appendix from time to time to remind yourself of the key factors.

While the value of the Czech letters is more or less consistent, there are two sets of circumstances where you will hear sounds other than what you might expect from the spelling. These apply to consonants.

The simpler pattern with which you must come to terms is what happens at the end of a word, before a pause. Any word ending in: *b*, *d*, *đ*, *g*, *h*, *v*, *z* or *ž* will be pronounced as if it ended in *p*, *t*, *k*, *ch*, *f*, *s* or *š*.

The former set are called *voiced* (the vocal chords vibrate during their pronunciation); the latter are their *voiceless* equivalents (the vocal chords are at rest). To test the relationship between the two sets, except *h* and *ch*, try whispering any of the first set: you should produce the equivalent member of the second set.

Try pronouncing the following isolated words:

zub (pron. zup)	<i>tooth</i>	oděv (pron. od'ef)	<i>clothing</i>
oběd (pron. objet)	<i>lunch</i>	mráz (pron. mrás)	<i>frost</i>
nechoď (pron. nechoť)	<i>don't go</i>	muž (pron. muš)	<i>man</i>
dialog (pron. dialok)	<i>dialogue</i>		

The pair *h* and *ch* are not strictly the same sound with and without 'voice', but they nevertheless function as a pair: *vrah* (pron. vrach) *murderer*.

These *devoicing* patterns were said above to apply before a pause. This means both a literal break in speaking or a momentary, detectable pause, and the special circumstances

where the next word begins with a vowel. For although it is not shown in writing, every word beginning with a vowel is actually preceded by a glottal stop, the tiny sound break in English that replaces the *-tt-* in some dialect pronunciations of, say, *butter* or *little*. This glottal stop, which is marked below as ' , amounts to a minimal pause, and so devoicing will occur before it. Try:

oběd a večeře (pron. objet 'a večeře)	<i>lunch and dinner</i>
bez Anny (pron. bes 'anny)	<i>without Anna</i>
v okně (pron. f 'okně)	<i>in the window</i>
z Edinburghu (pron. s 'edinburgu)	<i>from Edinburgh</i>
dialog o Praze (pron. dialok 'o praze)	<i>a dialogue about Prague</i>

The second set of circumstances in which letters acquire their 'opposite' value is when a mixture of two or more consonants from both the lists above meet within a word or at word boundaries. This time the change works both ways – a voiced sound may become voiceless and a voiceless voiced, depending, with a few exceptions, on the type of the last consonant in the cluster. Thus in the expression *v Praze*, *p* is voiceless and causes the preceding *v* to devoice to *f*, hence *f praze*. Similarly:

z Prahy (pron. s prahy)	<i>from Prague</i>
bez kterého (pron. bes kterého)	<i>without which</i>
budka (pron. butka) (telephone)	<i>booth</i>
nůžky (pron. nůžky)	<i>scissors</i>

In the following examples the reverse applies, voiceless sounds becoming voiced:

kdo (pron. gdo)	<i>who</i>
sbírat (pron. zbírat)	<i>to collect</i>
s Davidem (pron. z davidem)	<i>with David</i>
náš dům (pron. náš dům)	<i>our house</i>
svatba (pron. svadba)	<i>wedding</i>

The 'exceptions': refinements to the rule about voice assimilation apply to the behaviour of *v/f* and *h/ch*, and to *c* and *č*, which were not in the original list of paired consonants.

#### v and f

*a* before a voiceless consonant *v* does become pronounced as *f*, as you saw in *v Praze*, also *vstup* (pron. fstup) *entrance* (seen on the relevant doors of buses and trams); *Kavka* (pron. kafka), a common surname (it also means *jackdaw*). Because of the famous Prague-German writer, Franz Kafka, you will already be aware that the name has an alternative spelling reflecting the pronunciation.

*b v* following a voiceless consonant has no effect on it, hence *tvář* (*shape*) is pronounced as spelled; similarly *svět* (pron. svjet) (*world*).

*c* as noted above, final *v* before a pause devoices to *f*, e.g. *ostrov* (pron. ostrof) *island*, *dav* (pron. daf) *crowd*, and the case of *v okně* (pron. f 'okně) in the *window*.

*d f* itself occurs mostly in foreign borrowings, e.g. *forma form*, *shape*, *mould*, *fifty-fifty* (more widely used in Czech than you might suppose!), *golf*, *konference* (*conference*), and there is little scope for the voicing processes to work.

#### h and ch

*a h* devoices to *ch* at the end of a word before a pause: *vrah* (pron. vrach) *murderer*, *Bůh* (pron. bůch) *God*.

*b* However, following a voiceless consonant two patterns occur: the word *shoda* (*agreement*) may be pronounced *zhoda* (obeying the rules, as it were), or *schoda*. The latter type is preferred in Bohemia, the former in Moravia. The pronunciation of the expression *good-bye*, *na shledanou* (with *schl-*), which you met in Unit 1, is explained by this rule.

*c* If *ch* is followed by a voiced consonant it becomes voiced, but as a true voiced *ch*, not *h* – to get an idea of what this alien sound is like try making an *er* sound as you pronounce *ch*; this should force you to produce the right 'growl'! This assimilation occurs in

*kdybych byl. If I were.*

#### c and č

*c* and *č* are fairly common voiceless consonants, without true voiced counterparts *dz* and *dž*. However, where *c* and *č* occur before a voiced consonant, they do change to *dz* and *dž* in pronunciation, as in *moc dobře* (pron. modz dobře) *very well*, *léčba* (pron. lédzba) *treatment, cure*.

No other consonants than those mentioned here are involved in voice assimilation.

## Abbreviations used:

acc. *accusative*; adj. *adjective*; adv. *adverb*; coll. *colloquial(ly)*; comp. *comparative*; conj. *conjunction*; dat. *dative*; f. *feminine*; gen. *genitive*; impfv. *imperfective*; inf. *infinitive*; inst. *instrumental*; loc. *locative*; m. *masculine*; n. *noun*; nt. *neuter*; pl. *plural*; pfv. *perfective*; prep. *preposition*; sg. *singular*; vb. *verb(s)*.

l is used to separate pairs of verbs of motion (see Unit 9) and to mark off the common section of entry-words and their subentries.

~ indicates repetition of the headword or its common section (to the left of l).

/ separates aspectual verb-pairs; it also separates alternatives, such as *How much/many*.

a *and*  
 ahoj *hello, cheerio*  
 aktovka *briefcase*  
 ale *but*  
 alespoň *at least*  
 adresa *address*  
 americký *American*  
 Američan/-ka *American*  
 Amerika *America*  
 Angličan/-ka *Englishman/-woman*  
 anglický (in) *English*  
 anglický *English*  
 Anglie (f) *England*  
 ani ... ani *neither ... nor*

ano *yes*  
 apod. *etc.*  
 aranžování květin *flower-arranging*  
 asi *about, perhaps, possibly, probably, I expect*  
 aspoň *at least*  
 atd. = a tak dále *etc.*  
 auto *car*  
 autobus *bus*  
 autorita *authority*  
 autostop *hitchhiking*  
 azalka *azalea*  
 až *when; not until; as many as*

babička *grandmother*  
 bačkora *slipper*  
 banka (adj. bankovní) *bank*  
 bankéř *banker*  
 bankovníctví *banking*  
 barva *colour; paint, dye*  
 básník *poet*  
 batole (-ete, nt.) *toddler*  
 bát se (bojí se) *to be afraid/scared*  
 bavit *to amuse, give pleasure*  
 bavit se/za- + inst. *to amuse oneself*  
 bavit se s někým *to chat to somebody*  
 bedna (large) *box, crate*  
 běh *run(ning)*  
 běhat (see Unit 12)  
 během + gen. *during*  
 benzín *petrol*  
 benzinová pumpa *petrol pump, filling station*  
 bez + gen. *without*  
 běžet (běží) *to run; to be on (of a film)*  
 běžný *common, ordinary*  
 bílý *white*  
 biolog/bioložka *biologist*  
 bít (bije) *to hit, strike*  
 bitva *battle*  
 blatník *mudguard, wing from*  
 bláto *mud*  
 blbý *stupid*  
 blesek *flash*  
 blízko (adv.) *nearby; (prep. + gen.) near*  
 blízký (comp. bližší) *near, close*  
 blížící se *imminent*  
 blížít se/při- *to approach*  
 blok *block (esp. of flats)*  
 blud *heresy*  
 blyskat se/zablesknout se *to flash (of lightning)*  
 bohatý (comp. bohatší) *rich*  
 bohudík *thank goodness, fortunately*  
 bohužel *unfortunately*  
 boj (m.) *battle*  
 bolet *to hurt, ache*

bonboniéra *box of chocolates*  
 borůvka *bilberry*  
 bos/ý *barefoot*  
 bota *shoe*  
 botník *shoe cupboard*  
 brambor *potato*  
 brána *gate(way)*  
 brát (si) (bere)/vzít (si) (vezme, vzal) *to take; marry*  
 brát se/vzít se *to get married (of two people)*  
 bratr *brother*  
 brýle (f. pl.) *glasses*  
 brzo or brzy (adv.) *early*  
 břecha *slush*  
 břeh (river) *bank; shore*  
 březen (-na) *March*  
 břicho *belly*  
 břiza *birch*  
 buď ... nebo *either ... or*  
 budít/vz- *to wake (someone)*  
 budit se/pro- se *to wake up*  
 budova *building*  
 Bůh (Boha) *God*  
 bydlet *to live = dwell*  
 bydliště (nt.) *dwelling, place of residence*  
 byt *flat, apartment*  
 být *to be*  
 být k + verbal noun (see Unit 19)  
 bytí *being*  
 byznysmen *businessman*  
 celkový *overall*  
 celník *customs officer*  
 celý *all, whole*  
 centimetr *centimetre*  
 cesta *trip, journey, way, path, track*  
 cestou *on the way*  
 cestovat *to travel*  
 cestující *passenger*  
 cigareta *cigarette*  
 cíp *tip, corner (of garment, etc.)*  
 cítit (se) *to feel*  
 cizí *strange, foreign*  
 cizí státní příslušník *alien, foreign citizen*  
 cizina *foreign country (-ies)*



cizinec (-ce) *foreigner*  
 co *what*  
 cokoli *anything, whatever*  
 cukr *sugar*  
 cukrárna *confectioner's, cake shop*  
 cvičení *exercise*  
 čaj (m.) *tea*  
 čas *time*  
 část (-i, f.) *part*  
 Čech/Česka *Czech*  
 Čechy (f. pl.) *Bohemia*  
 čekat/počkat *to wait, expect*  
 čern (f.) *black; tiskařská čern*  
*printer's ink*  
 černý *black*  
 čerstvý *fresh*  
 čert *devil*  
 červen (-na) *June*  
 červenec (-ce) *July*  
 červený *red*  
 čeřit/roz- *to ruffle, to cause to ripple*  
 český (in) *Czech*  
 český *Czech*  
 čeština *Czech (language)*  
 četba *reading (matter)*  
 četný *numerous*  
 či *whose*  
 čili *or, that is*  
 činitel *official*  
 činnost (-i, f.) *activity*  
 čínština *Chinese*  
 činžák *block of flats*  
 číslo *number*  
 číslovka *numeral*  
 číst/pře- (čte, čtel) *to read*  
 čistit/vy- *to clean*  
 čistý (comp. čistší) *clean*  
 čitelný *legible*  
 člověk (pl. lidé) *man, person, one*  
 čokoláda *chocolate*  
 čtení *reading*  
 čtvrt *quarter*  
 čtvrtek (-tka) *Thursday*  
 čtvrtina *quarter*  
 čtyři *four*  
 ďábel (-bla) *devil*  
 dál(e) *further; come in*

daleko *far (adv.)*  
 daleký *far, remote*  
 další (an) *other, more, further (ones); next*  
 Dán/-ka *Dane*  
 daný *given*  
 dárek (-rku) *present*  
 datum (data, nt.) *date*  
 dav *crowd*  
 dávat/dát *to give; dát se + inf. can be -ed*  
 dávat/dát někomu vědět *to let someone know*  
 dávno *long ago*  
 dcera (dat./loc. dceří) *daughter*  
 debatovat o něčem *to discuss, debate something*  
 dědeček (-čka) *grandfather*  
 dějiny (f. pl.) *history*  
 děkovat/po- (někomu) + za + acc. *to thank*  
 dělat/u- *to do, make; to work*  
 dělat si něco z + gen. *to make an issue of*  
 dělník *worker*  
 delší *longer; longish*  
 demokrat (pl. -tě) *democrat*  
 den (dne) *day*  
 denně *daily*  
 deset *ten*  
 desetník *ten-heller coin*  
 desítka *a tensome, (loosely) dozen*  
 déšť (deště, m.) *rain*  
 děti (f. pl.) *children*  
 dětský *child's*  
 děvče (-čete, nt.) *girl, lass*  
 devět *nine*  
 dialog *dialogue*  
 díky *thanks; + dat. thanks to*  
 dílna *workshop*  
 dílo (gen. pl. děl) *work*  
 dílovedoucí *foreman*  
 dirigent *conductor*  
 disponovat + inst. *to have available*  
 dispozice *disposal; mít k dispozici to have at one's disposal*

dítě (-čte, n.; pl. děti, f.) *child*  
 divadlo *theatre*  
 dívat se/po- + na + acc. *to look (at)*  
 divit se + dat. *to be surprised (at)*  
 dívka *girl*  
 divný *strange, odd*  
 dlouho (for) *a long time*  
 dlouhohrající *long-playing*  
 dlouhý (comp. delší) *long*  
 dluh *debt*  
 dnes *today*  
 dnešek (-ška) *today (as a noun)*  
 dnešní *today's*  
 do + gen. *to, into, until, by*  
 doba *time, period, do té doby by/until then*  
 dobrý *good*  
 dobře *well; OK*  
 dodávka *van; delivery, shipment*  
 dodělat/dodělat *finish doing/ making*  
 dohoda *agreement*  
 dohodnout se *to agree, come to agreement (pfv.)*  
 dohromady *together, all told*  
 dokdy *until/by when*  
 dokonce *even*  
 doktor *doctor*  
 dokud *while; dokud ne- until*  
 dole *down, downstairs (place)*  
 doleva *to the left*  
 dolů *down, downstairs (motion)*  
 doma *at home*  
 domácí kutění *DIY*  
 domácnost (-i, f.) *household*  
 domluvit se *to reach agreement, to make oneself understood*  
 domov (-a) *home*  
 domů *home(wards)*  
 dopis *letter*  
 doporučit/doporučit *to recommend*  
 doprava (adv.) *to the right*  
 doprava *traffic*  
 dort *cake (strictly gâteau, torte)*  
 doručení *delivery*  
 dosahovat/dosáhnout *to achieve*

dosažený *achieved*  
 dospělý *adult*  
 dost (+ gen.) *enough, plenty of*  
 dostatek (-tku) *sufficiency*  
 dostávat se/dostat se (dostane) *get = reach (somewhere)*  
 dostávat/dostat *to get (something)*  
 doufat *to hope*  
 dovážet (3rd pl. -ejí)/dovézt *to import*  
 dovést *be able, capable*  
 dovnitř *inside*  
 dovolená *holiday*  
 dráha *course, track, railway*  
 drahý (comp. dražší) *dear; costly*  
 drobnost (-i, f.) *something small, trifle*  
 dobrý *good*  
 drobný *small, tiny*  
 droga *drug*  
 druh *type, sort, type, kind, species*  
 druhý *second, the other*  
 držet *to hold*  
 dřevo *wood*  
 dřív(e) *sooner, earlier, before*  
 dřív(e) než *before (conjunction)*  
 dřívější *previous, former*  
 dub *oak*  
 duben (-bna) *April*  
 důchod *pension*  
 důkladný *thorough*  
 důležitý *important*  
 dům (domu) *house*  
 důvěřovat + dat. *to trust*  
 důvod *reason*  
 dva/dvě *two*  
 dvacetník *twenty-heller coin*  
 dvakrát *twice*  
 dveře (f. pl.) *door*  
 dvojče (-čete, n.) *twin*  
 džem *jam*  
 džínsy (f. pl.) *jeans*  
 ekonom *economist*  
 emigrant/-ka *émigré(-e)*  
 energický *energetic*  
 Evropa *Europe*  
 Evropan/-ka *European*

farmacie *pharmacy*  
fax *fax*  
fér (coll.) *fair*  
fialový *purple; violet*  
film *film*  
flek *spot; stain*  
formulář (m.) *form*  
formulovat *to formulate*  
fotbal *football*  
fotbalista *footballer*  
fotograf *photographer*  
fotoaparát *camera*  
foukat/za- *to blow*  
Francie *France*  
Francouz/-ka *Frenchman/-woman*  
fronta *queue*  
fungovat *to work, function*

galerie (f.) *gallery*  
garáž (f.) *garage*  
gauč (m.) *couch, settee, sofa*  
geolog *geologist*  
geologický *geological*  
geoložka *geologist (f.)*  
gól *goal*

háček (-čku) *hook, snag*  
had *snake*  
hádat se/po- *to argue, quarrel,*  
*have a row*  
hadr *cloth, rag*  
halář (m.) *bellier*  
házet (3rd pl. -ejí)/hodit *to throw;*  
*drop (someone) off (somewhere)*  
herec (herce) *actor*  
herečka *actress*  
hezký (comp. hezcí) *nice, pretty*  
historika *story; tale*  
hlad *hunger*  
hladina *surface*  
hladký (comp. hladší) *smooth*  
hlasatel *announcer*  
hlásit/na- *report*  
hlasovat *to vote*  
hlava *head*  
hlavně *mainly, above all*  
hlavně aby ... *the main thing is*  
*that ...*  
hlavní *main, principal*

hlavní město *capital*  
hledat *to look for*  
hlemýžď (m.) *snail*  
hlídat *to guard, to watch over*  
hluboko (comp. hlouběji) *deep*  
hluboký (comp. hlubší) *deep,*  
*profound*  
hlučet *to be noisy*  
hluchý (comp. hlušší) *deaf*  
hluk *noise*  
hnát (žene) *to chase*  
hned *immediately; at once*  
hnědý *brown*  
hnuti *movement*  
hoden + gen. *worthy of*  
hodina *hour*  
hodinky (f. pl.) *watch*  
hodiny (f. pl.) *clock*  
hodit se + dat. *to suit*  
hodně *much; a lot of; plenty of*  
hodnotit/o- *to assess, evaluate*  
hodný *good, kind, nice*  
holící strojek (-jku) *shaver*  
holit se/o- *to shave*  
holka (informal) *girl*  
hon *hunt(ing), chase*  
honem *in a hurry, at once*  
honit *to chase (see Unit 12)*  
hora *mountain*  
horko (adv.) *hot*  
horký *hot*  
horlivý *eager, keen, diligent,*  
*urgent*  
horník *miner*  
horolezec (-lezce) *climber*  
horší *worse*  
hořet *to burn*  
hospoda *pub*  
hospodářský *economic*  
host *guest*  
hostinec (-nce, m.) *inn*  
hostit/po- *to host, treat*  
hotov/-ý *ready, finished*  
houba *mushroom, fungus,*  
*sponge*  
houpat se /roz- (houpe) *to swing,*  
*bob*  
housle (f. pl.) *violin*  
hovězí (nt.) *beef*

hra *game; play*  
hra na housle *violin-playing*  
hrabě (-ěte, m.) *count*  
hraběnka *countess*  
hrad *castle*  
hraní *playing*  
hranice (f.) *border, frontier*  
hrát (si) *to play*  
hrát na + acc. *to play (an*  
*instrument)*  
hrom *thunder*  
hrozný *terrible, awful, dreadful*  
hrubý (comp. hrubší) *rough,*  
*coarse*  
hříbě (-bête, nt.) *foal*  
hřiště (nt.) *playground*  
hřmit/za- (hřmělo) *to thunder*  
hůl (holi, f.) *stick*  
husa *goose*  
hustý (comp. hustší) *thick, dense*  
hýbat (hýbe)/hnout (hnul) *to*  
*move*  
chalupa *cottage*  
chápat (chápe)/pochopit *to*  
*understand, appreciate*  
chápat se/uchopit se + gen. *to*  
*seize hold of*  
charakter *character*  
charakterizovat *to describe*  
chlapec (-pce) *boy*  
chléb (coll. chleba) *bread*  
chlubit se *to boast*  
chodit *go, walk*  
chodit or jít na houby *to go*  
*mushrooming*  
chodník *pavement*  
chování *behaviour*  
chovat se *to act, behave*  
chrám *cathedral*  
chróm *chromium*  
chtít *to want (see Unit 4)*  
chudý *poor*  
chutnat *to taste (good)*  
chuť (f.) *appetite; (sense of) taste*  
chválit/po- *to praise*  
chvilě (f.) *while, moment*  
chyba *mistake*  
chytat se/chytit se + gen. *to catch at*

i *and, also, even*  
informace (f.) *(piece of)*  
*information*  
informovat *to inform*  
instalatér *plumber*  
inženýr *engineer*  
Ir/-ka *Irishman/-woman*  
Irsko *Ireland*

já *I*  
jablko *apple*  
jabloň (f.) *apple tree*  
Jadran *Adriatic*  
jak *how*  
jakkoli *anyhow, however*  
jako *as, like*  
jaký *what, what kind of*  
jakýkoli *any, whatever (kind of)*  
jakžtakž (coll.) *more or less,*  
*also so-so*  
jarní *spring (adj.)*  
jaro *spring*  
jasný *bright, plain, obvious*  
jazyk (-a) *tongue, language*  
je *is; them (acc.)*  
jeden, jedna, jedno *one*  
jednak ... jednak *for one thing ...*  
*for another*  
jednička *one*  
jednoduchý (comp. jednodušší)  
*simple*  
jednoduchba *canapé*  
jehně (-ěte, nt.) *lamb*  
jelen *stag*  
jen, jenom *only, just*  
jenže *except that*  
jestli(že) *if, whether*  
ještě *else, still, after a negative*  
verb (not) *yet*  
ještěže *it's a good thing that*  
jet (jede) *to go (involving a*  
*means of transport)*  
jezdit (see Unit 12)  
jídlo *food, dish, meal*  
jih *south*  
jinak *otherwise*  
jinam *to another place*  
jinde *elsewhere*  
jindy *at another time*



jiný *other; else*  
 jíst (ji, jedi)/najíst se *to eat, to have a meal*  
 jíst/sníst *to eat (something)*  
 jist (být si j.) *(be) sure*  
 jistě *surely, certainly, I expect*  
 jistý *certain*  
 jít (jde, šel, šla) *to go (on foot)*  
 jít o + acc. *to be a matter/question of*  
 jítro *morning*  
 jižní *southern*  
 jméno *name*  
 jmenovat se *to be called*  
 jogurt *yoghurt*  
 k + dat. *to, towards, up to; for (the purpose of)*  
 kabát *coat*  
 kabelka *handbag*  
 kadéřník (ladies') *hairdresser*  
 kafe (nt.) (coll.) *coffee*  
 kakao *cocoa*  
 kalhoty (f. pl.) *trousers*  
 kalný *murky*  
 kam *where (to)*  
 kamkoli (to) *wherever, anywhere*  
 kamarád/-ka *friend*  
 kámen (kamene) *stone*  
 Kanad'an/-ka *Canadian*  
 kanál *canal*  
 kancelář (f.) *office*  
 kandidovat *to stand for election*  
 kapesník *handkerchief*  
 kapka *drop; drip*  
 kartáček (-čku) *brush*  
 kastrol (sauce-)pan  
 kašel (-še, m.) *cough*  
 kašlat (kašle) *to cough*  
 káva *coffee*  
 každý *everyone; everybody; each, every*  
 kde *where*  
 kdekoli *wherever, anywhere*  
 kdepak *not at all; of course not*  
 kdo *who*  
 kdokoli *whoever, anyone*  
 kdy *when*  
 kdykoli *whenever*

když *when, as; since; + future if*  
 kilometr *kilometre*  
 kino *cinema*  
 klást (klade, kladl)/položit *to lay, place, put; klást překážky to hinder*  
 klávesnice *keyboard*  
 klečet *to kneel*  
 klekat si/kleknout si *to kneel (down)*  
 klesat/klesnout *to fall, drop*  
 klíč (m.) *key*  
 klid *peace*  
 klidný *calm*  
 kluk *boy*  
 kluzák *glider*  
 knedlík *dumpling*  
 kniha *book*  
 knihkupectví *bookshop*  
 knihovna *library*  
 knihovnik *librarian*  
 kníže (-ete, m.) *prince*  
 koberec (-rce) *carpet*  
 kocour *tomcat*  
 kocovina *hangover*  
 kočárek (-rku) *pram*  
 kočka *cat*  
 kód *code*  
 kohoutek (-tku) *tap*  
 kolega (m.), kolegyně (f.) *colleague*  
 kolem + gen. *round, past; (adv.) by, past*  
 kolemjdoucí *passer-by*  
 koleno *knee (see Unit 13)*  
 kolik + gen. *how much; how many*  
 kolikrát *the how many-eth*  
 kolikrát *how many times*  
 kolo *wheel; bicycle*  
 komik *comedian*  
 komunál *council services department*  
 koňak *brandy, cognac*  
 konat se *to be held, to be going on, to take place*  
 koncert *at the end*  
 koncert *concert*  
 končit/s- *to finish, end*

kondolenční dopis *letter of condolence*  
 konec (-nce) *end*  
 konečně *at last*  
 konev (-nve, f.) *watering can*  
 konference (f.) *conference*  
 koníček (-čku) *hobby*  
 kontrola *control, check*  
 konvice (f.) *kettle, teapot, jug*  
 konzerva *tin, jar (of food)*  
 koule (f.) *ball, sphere*  
 kopat (kope)/kopnout *to kick; dig*  
 koruna *crown*  
 kosit/po- *to scythe*  
 kostel (-a) *church*  
 kostkovaný *chequered, check(ed)*  
 košile (gen. pl. košil, f.) *shirt*  
 koště (-ěte, nt.) *broom*  
 kotě (-ěte, nt.) *kitten*  
 koule (f.) *sphere, globe*  
 koupě (f.) *purchase*  
 koupelna *bathroom*  
 kouřit *to smoke*  
 kousat (kouše)/po- or kousnout *to bite*  
 kousek (-sku) *a bit*  
 kovat/u- *to forge*  
 krabice (f.) *box*  
 kradený *stolen (impfv.)*  
 král (-e) *king*  
 krásný *beautiful, handsome*  
 krást (krade, kradl)/u- (ukradne) *to steal*  
 krátký (comp. kratší) *short*  
 kráva (gen. pl. krav) *cow*  
 kravata *tie*  
 krčit/po- (rameny) *to shrug*  
 kreslený *drawn*  
 kreslit/na- *to draw*  
 kritika *criticism*  
 krk *throat; neck*  
 krok (foot/step, pace, stride)  
 kromě + gen. *besides, except*  
 kropit/po- *to sprinkle, to water*  
 krotký (comp. krotší) *tame, meek*  
 kroupy (f. pl.) *hail*  
 křehký (comp. křehčí) *frail, fragile*

křeslo *armchair*  
 kříž (m.) *cross; small of the back*  
 křižovátka *crossroads*  
 křížovka *crossword puzzle*  
 který *which*  
 kterýkoli *any, whichever*  
 kudy *which way*  
 kufr *suitcase, boot (of car)*  
 kuchyň or kuchyně (f.) *kitchen*  
 kulma *curling tongs*  
 kůlna *shed*  
 kůň (koně) *horse*  
 kupovat/koupit *buy*  
 kuriozita *curio, (item of) curiosity*  
 kurs *course*  
 kuře (-ete, nt.) *chick*  
 kutit (si) *to tinker about*  
 kvalita *quality*  
 kvěst/vykvěst (kvetete, kvete) *to bloom*  
 květen (-tna) *May*  
 kvůli + dat. *for the sake of, because of*  
 Kypr *Cyprus*  
 kytice (f.) *bunch of flowers*  
 kytko colloquial for květina  
 kytko and for kytice *bouquet*  
 kývat/kývnout *to nod; to swing from side to side*  
 laboratoř (f.) *laboratory*  
 lampa *lamp*  
 laskav/-ý *kind*  
 laskavost (-i, f.) *kindness*  
 lavice (dim. lavička) *bench*  
 leccos *all manner of things*  
 led *ice*  
 ledaž (conj.) *unless*  
 leden (-dna) *January*  
 lednička *fridge*  
 lehat si/lehnout si *to lie (down)*  
 lehký (comp. lehčí) *light, easy*  
 lekce (f.) *lesson*  
 lépe/líp (adv.) *better*  
 lepší *better*  
 les (-a) *wood, forest*  
 letadlo *aeroplane*  
 létat (see Unit 12)

letec (-tce) *airman*  
letět *to fly*  
letišťe (gen. pl. letišť, n) *airport*  
léto (adj. letní) *summer*  
letos *this year*  
letošní *this year's*  
lev (lva) *lion*  
levný *cheap*  
levý *left*  
ležák *lager*  
ležet *to lie*  
-li *if*  
líbit se + dat. *to please, to appeal to*  
libovat si v + loc. *to take satisfaction in, enjoy*  
libra *pound (£ or lb.)*  
lidé *people*  
lidský *human*  
líný *lazy*  
list *leaf, page*  
lístek (-tku) *ticket*  
listí *leaves, foliage*  
listopad *November*  
litovat + gen. *to regret*  
loď (lodi or lodě, f.) *ship, boat*  
loďka *rowing boat*  
logický *logical*  
loket (-kte, m.) *elbow*  
Londýn (-a) *London*  
loni *last year*  
loňský *last year's*  
ložnice (f.) *bedroom*  
luštit/vy- or roz- *to solve*  
luxovat/vy- *to Hoover*  
luxus (adj. luxusní) *luxury*  
lyže (f.) *ski*  
lze + infin. *one can, it is possible*  
majitel *owner*  
malina *raspberry*  
malíř (m.) *painter*  
málo + gen. *few, little*  
malovat *to paint*  
malý (comp. menší) *small, little*  
manažer *manager*  
manžel *husband*  
manželé *husband and wife, Mr & Mrs*

manželka *wife*  
mapa *map*  
marně *in vain*  
marný *vain, pointless*  
maso *meat*  
matematika *mathematics*  
matka *mother*  
mávat/za- or mávnout *to wave, wag*  
medvěd *bear*  
medvídek (-dka) *teddy bear*  
mechanik *mechanic*  
měkký (comp. měkčí) *soft*  
mělký (comp. mělčí) *shallow*  
méně/míň *less*  
měnit/z- *to change*  
měsíc (m.) *month; moon*  
město *town*  
metro *underground railway*  
mezi + inst. or acc. *between, among*  
mezitím *meanwhile, while I wait (etc.)*  
meziválečný *inter-war*  
míle (gen. pl. mil, f.) *mile*  
milost (-i, f.) *mercy*  
milovat *to love*  
milý *kind, charming*  
mimino *baby*  
mimořádně *by the way*  
mimořádný *exceptional, extraordinary; -á odměna bonus*  
ministerstvo *ministry*  
ministr *minister*  
minule (for the) *last (time)*  
minulost (-i, f.) *the past*  
minulý *past, last*  
minuta *minute*  
místnost (-i, f.) *room*  
místo *place; space; job; + gen. instead of*  
mít *to have; to be (supposed, due, expected) to*  
mládež (f. sg.) *young people*  
mladý (comp. mladší) *young*  
mlčet *to be silent*  
mléko *milk*  
mlha *mist, fog*

mlhavý *misty, foggy*  
mluvit/pro- *to speak; talk*  
mnich *monk*  
mnohem + comp. *much*  
mnoho + gen. *much, many*  
moc (-i, f.) *power; + gen. a lot, much, many*  
mocht or moci (může, mohl) *can, be able*  
modelka *model*  
moderní *modern*  
modrý *blue*  
modř (f.) *blue (as noun)*  
mop *mop*  
Morava *Moravia*  
Moravan/-ka *Moravian*  
moře (nt.) *sea*  
most *bridge*  
moucha (gen. pl. much) *fly*  
mouka *flour*  
možná *perhaps*  
možnost (-i, f.) *possibility*  
možný *possible*  
mrak (dark) *cloud*  
mrholit *to drizzle*  
mrtev/mrtvý *dead*  
můj, má (moje), mé (moje), etc. *my*  
muset *must; to have to*  
muž *man; husband*  
my *we*  
myčka *dishwasher*  
mýlit se/z- *to be mistaken*  
mysl (-i, f.) *mind*  
myslet/po- (si) *to think*  
myslet/po- na + acc. *to think of/about*  
myš (-i, f.) *mouse*  
myšlenka *thought, idea*  
mýt/u- (se) (myje) *to wash*  
mzda (gen. pl. mezd) *wage*  
na + loc. *on, at; + acc. (on)to; for*  
nabízet (3rd pl. -ejí)/nabídnout *to offer*  
nábřeží *embankment*  
nábytek (-tku) *furniture*  
nač *for what purpose, why*  
nad + inst. or acc. *over, above*

nadání *talent*  
nadaný *talented*  
nadělat + gen. *to make a lot of something*  
nadchnout se *to enthuse*  
nadšený *enthusiastic*  
nádoby *the dishes, the washing up*  
nádraží *station*  
nahlas *aloud*  
náhoda *chance, coincidence; náhodou by chance*  
nahrazovat/nahradit *to replace, compensate*  
nacházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/najít *to find*  
najímat/najmout (najme, najal) *to hire*  
najít *see nacházet*  
nakládat/naložit *to load*  
nakonec *in the end*  
nákup *shopping*  
nakupovat/nakoupit *to shop*  
nalevo *on the left*  
nalézat/nalézt (nalezne, našel) *to find*  
náměstí *square*  
nápad *idea*  
napadat/napadnout *to occur/come to, dawn on*  
napichovat/napíchnout *to spike, put on cocktail sticks*  
nápomocen/-cný *helpful*  
naposled (for the) *last (time)*  
napravo *on the right*  
naproti *opposite*  
napřesrok *next year*  
například (abbreviated např.) *for example*  
národ (-a) *nation*  
narodit se *to be born (přv.)*  
narození *birth*  
narozeniny (f. pl.) *birthday*  
následek (-dku) *consequence*  
naspěch: mít naspěch *be in a hurry*  
nástroj (m.) *tool, instrument*  
náš, naše, naše etc. *our*  
natáčet (3rd pl. -ejí)/natočit *to make (a film)*

natěrač (house) painter  
natírat/natřít (natře, natřel) to paint  
natož let alone  
navíc moreover, on top of that; extra  
návod instructions  
návrat return  
návrh suggestion, proposal, motion; design  
návrhář/-ka designer  
návrhářství design  
návštěva visit(or)  
název (-zvu) name  
ne no  
nebe (nt.) sky, heaven  
nebo or  
něco something  
nečekaný unexpected  
neděle (f.) Sunday; week  
nehet (nehtu) (finger) nail  
nehoda accident  
nechávat/nechat (imperative nech etc.) to leave; to let  
nechávat si/nechat si to keep  
nějak somehow  
nějaký some, a  
nejdříve first  
nejhorší worst  
nejlepší best  
nejprv(e) first of all  
někam somewhere (motion)  
někde somewhere (place)  
někdo someone  
někdy sometime(s)  
několik + gen. several  
několikrát several times  
někteří a certain  
někudy some way  
Němec/Němka German (m./f.)  
Německo Germany  
nemluvně (-ěte, nt.) baby  
nemnoho + gen. not many  
nemocen/-cný ill, sick  
nemocnice (f.) hospital  
neprávem wrongly  
nepřítel (pl. nepřítelé) enemy  
nepřítomnost (-i, f.) absence  
nervózní nervous

nést (nese, nesl) to carry  
nezaměstnanost (-i, f.) unemployment  
nezastavitelný unstoppable  
než than; before (conj.)  
nic nothing  
nikde nowhere  
nikdo nobody  
nikdy never  
nízký (comp. nižší) low, base  
no hmm, well  
no a so what  
noc (-i, f.) night  
noha leg, foot (see Unit 13)  
nos nose  
nosit to carry, wear  
novinář/-ka journalist, reporter  
novinářství journalism  
noviny (f. pl.) newspaper  
nový new  
nudný boring  
nulovat/vy- to return to zero, reset  
nůžky (f. pl.) scissors  
oba (f. obě) both  
občan (pl. -é) citizen  
občas sometimes, from time to time  
občerstvení refreshment(s), a snack  
obdržet (přv. only) to obtain  
oběd (-a) lunch  
obědvat/naobědvat se to have lunch  
obejít se + bez + gen. to do without  
oběsit se to hang oneself  
obět (f.) victim; sacrifice  
obchod trade, business; shop  
obchodní commercial, business-  
obchodní dům department store  
obilí corn  
objednávat/objednat to order  
objevovat/objevit to discover  
oblak (m. pl. oblaka n) cloud  
oblečení clothing  
oblekat se/obléknout se to get dressed

obloha sky; garnish, side vegetables  
obnažovat/obnažit to reveal, lay bare  
obracet se/obrátit se to turn, apply to  
obraz (obrázek) picture  
obsah content(s)  
obtěžovat to pester, annoy, intrude  
obtěžovat se to take the trouble, to bother oneself  
obvyklý usual, customary  
obývací pokoj living room  
obžalovaný accused  
oceňovat/ocenit to appreciate; to price  
ocet (octa) vinegar  
očekat expect  
od + gen. (away) from  
odbočovat/odbočit to turn off; to digress  
odcizovat/odcizit to remove  
oddělení section, department, compartment  
oděv clothing  
odevšad from all sides  
odevzdávat/odevzdat submit, hand in  
odhánět (3rd pl. -ějí)/odehnat (odžene) drive/chase away  
odcházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/odejít to leave, depart, go away  
odchod departure, leaving  
odjezd departure (by transport)  
odjíždět (3rd pl. -ějí)/odjet to leave (by vehicle)  
odkládat/odložit to put down, set aside  
odkud from where  
odlet departure (by air)  
odměna reward, remuneration  
odmítat/odmítnout to refuse  
odpočívát/odpočinout si to (have a) rest  
odpoledne (nt.) afternoon  
odpověď (-di, f.) answer, response; reply  
odpovídající equivalent,

corresponding  
odpovídat/odpovědět to reply, (cor)respond, match  
odstraňovat/odstranit to remove  
odsud from here  
odsuzovat/odsoudit k + dat. to condemn  
odtahovat/odtáhnout to pull away  
odvázat (3rd pl. -ejí)/odvézt to drive/take away  
odvolávat/odvolat to withdraw, repeal, cancel  
ohlášení (nt.) announcement  
ohlašovat/ohlásit to announce, report  
ohnutý bent  
ohýbat/ohnout to bend  
ochrana protection  
ochranný protective  
ochutnávat/ochutnat to try, taste (food, drink)  
okno window  
oko (pl. oči) eye (see Unit 13)  
okrádat/okrást (okrade) to rob  
okurek (-rku) cucumber; gherkin  
oltář (m.) altar  
omezený limited  
omezovat/omezit (se) to limit, restrict, confine (oneself)  
omítka stucco, plaster  
omlouvat se/omluvit se to apologize  
omyl error  
on/ona/ono he/she/it  
opakovat to revise; repeat  
opatrný careful, cautious  
opékat/opéct (opeče, opekl) to roast  
operace (f.) operation  
opouštět (3rd pl. -ějí)/opustit to leave, abandon, desert  
opovrhovat + inst. to despise  
oprava repair  
opravdu really  
opravná repair shop  
oprávnění (nt.) authorization;  
mít oprávnění k + dat. be authorized to

oranžový *orange*  
 orloj (m.) *astronomical clock*  
 ořech *nut*  
 osm *eight*  
 osoba *person*  
 osobní *personal*  
 ostatní *the rest of, the other(s), remainder*  
 ostružina *blackberry*  
 ošklivý *ugly, awful*  
 otec (otce) *father*  
 otvírák *opener*  
 otvírat/otevřít (otevře, otevřel) *to open*  
 ovoce (nt.) *fruit*  
 ovšem/že *of course*  
 pacient *patient*  
 pád *fall; (grammatical) case*  
 padat/spadnout *to fall*  
 palačinka *pancake*  
 palec (-lce, m.) *thumb, big toe*  
 páliť/- *to burn (something)*  
 pamatovat si/za- *to remember, memorize*  
 pan *Mr*  
 pán (*gentle*)man  
 paní *Mrs; lady*  
 panovat *to reign*  
 papír *paper*  
 paprika *paprika, green/red pepper*  
 pár *pair, couple, a few*  
 párat/roz- *to rip open, unpick*  
 parcela *plot (of land)*  
 párek (-rku) (*pair of*)  
*frankfurter(s)*  
 parkoviště (nt.) *car park*  
 Paříž (f.) *Paris*  
 pas (adj. pasový) *passport*  
 pasáž (f.) *passage*  
 pašerák *smuggler*  
 pátek (-tku) *Friday*  
 patrně *perhaps, probably*  
 péct or péci (pečce, pekl) *to roast, bake*  
 péče (f.) *care*  
 pečení *baking; roasting*  
 pěkný *lovely, nice*

peníz *coin*  
 peníze (gen. peněz, m. pl.) *money*  
 pero *pen, feather*  
 pes (psa) *dog*  
 pěstovat/vy- *to cultivate, grow*  
 pestrý *colourful*  
 pěší turistika *hiking*  
 pěšky *on foot*  
 pět *five*  
 pětina *one fifth*  
 pila *saw*  
 pípat/za- *to tweet*  
 pisařka *typist*  
 písmeno *letter*  
 pistole (f.) *pistol*  
 pít (pije)/napít se *to have a drink*  
 pít/vy- *to drink*  
 pivnice (f.) *pub*  
 pivo *beer*  
 pivovar *brewery*  
 plachý *timid*  
 plakát *poster*  
 plánovat *to plan*  
 platit/za- + za + acc. *to pay (for)*  
 platný *valid, in force*  
 plavat (plave) *to swim*  
 pláž (f.) *beach*  
 plést se/pří- (plete, pletl) *to get in the way*  
 plést se (plete)/s- *to make a mistake*  
 plést si/s- *to confuse, get wrong*  
 plnicí pero *fountain pen*  
 plnit/na- *to fill*  
 pneumatika *tyre*  
 po + loc. *up, down, along, all over; after*  
 pobyt *stay*  
 pocit *feeling*  
 počasí *weather*  
 počáteční *initial*  
 počátkem *at the beginning*  
 počítač (m.) (adj. počítačový) *computer*  
 počítat/s- or za- *to count (up, in)*  
 počítat s + inst. *to reckon with, allow for*  
 pod + inst. or acc. *under, beneath, below*

podávat/podat *to serve; offer, pass*  
 podezřívát *to suspect*  
 podlaha *floor*  
 podle + gen. *according to*  
 podnik (adj. podnikový) *enterprise, business; company, firm*  
 podruhé *for the second time*  
 podstata *essence; v podstatě basically*  
 podzim (adj. podzimní) *autumn*  
 pohlaví *sex*  
 pohled *view; look*  
 pohlednice (f.) *postcard*  
 pohodlný *comfortable*  
 pohostění *entertainment, treat; refreshments, party; dělat pohostění to give/have a (small formal) party*  
 pohrdat/pohrdnout + inst. *to scorn, disdain*  
 pohřeb (-řbu) *funeral*  
 pocházet (3rd pl. -ejí) *to come from*  
 pochovávat/pochovat *to bury*  
 pojišťovat/pojistit *to insure*  
 pojišťovna *insurance company*  
 pojišťovnictví *insurance (profession)*  
 pokaždé *every time*  
 pokoj (m.) *room; peace (and quiet)*  
 pokračovat *to continue*  
 pokud *insofar as, if*  
 pokus + o + acc. *attempt (at); experiment*  
 pokuta *fine*  
 pole (nt.) *field*  
 poledne (nt.) *midday*  
 police (f.) *shelf*  
 policista (m.) *policeman*  
 polička (diminutive of police) *shelf*  
 politik *politician*  
 politika *policy, politics*  
 polovina *half*  
 pomačkaný *bent, crumpled*  
 pomáhat/pomocť (pomůže, pomohl) *help*  
 pomalu *slowly*  
 pomalý *slow*  
 poměr *relationship; proportion, ratio; attitude; pl. condition(s); circumstances*  
 pomoc (-i, f.) *help*  
 pomocník/-nice *assistant*  
 pondělí, pondělek (-lka) *Monday*  
 popelnice (f.) *dustbin*  
 popírat/popřít (popře, popřel) *to deny*  
 popisovat/popsat *to describe*  
 poprvé *for the first time*  
 poradenství *consultancy, counselling*  
 porážka *defeat*  
 porucha *something wrong, breakdown*  
 pořad *all the time*  
 pořádek (-dku) (*good*) order, *orderliness, tidiness*  
 posazovat/posadit *to seat*  
 posílat/poslat (pošle) *to send*  
 poslouchat *to listen (to), obey*  
 poslyšte *listen, I say*  
 postel (f.) *bed*  
 postihovat/postihnout *to affect, afflict*  
 postup *progression, procedure*  
 posunovat/posunout *to shift, delay*  
 pošta (adj. poštovní) *post (office)*  
 pot *sweat*  
 potěšení *pleasure*  
 potit se *to sweat*  
 potíž (f.) *problem, difficulty*  
 potkávat/potkat *to meet*  
 potom *then, afterwards*  
 potomek (-mka) *descendant; offspring*  
 potřeba *need, (item of) necessity*  
 potřebovat *need, want, require*  
 potřetí *for the third time*  
 poupě (-ěte, n) (*flower*) bud *to set about*  
 použít se/pustit se + do + gen. *to set about*  
 použití *use*  
 používat/použít *to use*

povídat/povědět *to say, tell*  
povídat si s někým *to chat to someone*  
povolání *profession*  
pozdě *late* (adv.)  
pozdější *later, subsequent*  
pozítří *the day after tomorrow*  
poznámka *note; remark, comment*  
poznávat/poznat *to recognize, identify, get to know*  
pozornost (-i, f.) *small gift, token* (of gratitude etc.), *attention, attentiveness*  
pozorný *attentive*  
pozorovat/z- *to observe*  
pozvání *invitation*  
pozvat see *zvat*  
práce (f.) *work*  
pracovat *to work*  
pracoviště (nt.) *workplace*  
pracovna *study, private office*  
pračka *washing machine*  
prádlo *the washing, laundry; (under-, bed-) linen*  
Praha *Prague*  
prase (-ete, nt.) *pig*  
prášek (-šku) *powder; pill*  
praštit (přv.) *to thump, bash*  
prát/vyprat (pere) *to wash*  
právě *just, exactly, precisely*  
právem *rightly*  
právní *legal*  
právo *right, claim, entitlement; law*  
pravopis *spelling, orthography*  
prázdniny (f. pl.) *holidays*  
pražský adj. *from Praha*  
prkno (gen. pl. prken) *plank, board*  
prodávat/prodat *sell*  
prodej (m.) *sale*  
proč *why*  
programátor (computer) *programmer*  
prohlašovat/prohlásit *to pronounce, declare*  
promíjet (3rd pl. -ejí)/promínout + dat. *to forgive*

promýšlet (3rd pl. -ejí)/promyslet *to think through*  
pronajímat/pronajmout (-najme, -najal) *to let*  
prosinec (-nce, m.) *December*  
prosit/po- *to ask, to beg*  
prostřednictví *mediation*  
proti + dat. *against, opposite*  
protijedoucí *oncoming*  
protivný *obnoxious*  
proto *that's why, therefore*  
protože *because*  
provádět *to show round*  
provádět (3rd pl. -ějí)/provést *to execute, carry out, perform, do*  
provaz *string, rope*  
prst *finger, toe*  
pršet *to rain*  
prudký (comp. prudší) *abrupt, steep; quick-tempered*  
průměr *average*  
pruhovaný *striped*  
průvodce/-kyně *guide* (m./f.)  
prvek (-vku) *element*  
první *first*  
prý *he/she/someone says, allegedly, apparently*  
prýč *gone, past, away*  
přát (si) (přeje) *to wish*  
přebírat/přebírat *to have too much of something*  
přece *but, nevertheless, surely, still, after all*  
před + inst. or acc. *before, in front of, ago*  
předělavat/předělat *to redo*  
předem *in advance; by the front way*  
přednášet (3rd pl. -ejí) *to lecture*  
přednáška *lecture*  
předpis *regulation; prescription*  
předposlední *next to last, last but one*  
předpověď (-di, f.) *forecast*  
předstí (f.) *hallway*  
představovat/představit (se) *to introduce (oneself)*  
přehánět (3rd pl. -ějí)/přehnat (-žene) *to exaggerate, overdo*

přehánka *shower*  
přehazovat/přehodit *to throw (something over), to jumble, to cause disarray*  
přehrada *dam*  
přecházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/přejít *to cross (on foot); přecházet/přejít mlčením to pass over in silence*  
přechod *pedestrian crossing; transition*  
přejet see *přejíždět*  
přejezd *level crossing*  
přejímat/přejmout (přejme, přejal) or *převzít (-vezme, -vzal) to take over*  
přejít see *přecházet*  
přejíždět (3rd pl. -ějí)/přejet *to run over*  
překážka *obstacle*  
překlad *translation*  
překvapení *surprise*  
překvapovat/překvapit *to surprise*  
přemalovávat/přemalovat *to repaint, paint over*  
přemlouvat/přemluvit *to talk someone round, persuade*  
přepážka *window* (in e.g. post office)  
přepisovat/přepsat *to rewrite, overwrite*  
přes + acc. *over, across; despite*  
přesně *precisely, exactly*  
přesný *precise, accurate, precision*  
přesnídávka *'second breakfast'*  
přestávat/přestat (přestane) *to stop (doing something)*  
přesvědčovat/přesvědčit *to persuade, convince; - se to make sure (that)*  
přetírat/přetřít (-tře, -třel) *to repaint*  
převážně *predominantly*  
převládat *predominate*  
převoz *ferry*  
při + loc. *at, by, with, during*  
příběh *story*  
přibíjet (3rd pl. -ejí)/přibít (-bije) *to nail*

přičleňovat/přičlenit *to incorporate*  
přidělavat/přidělat *to make more*  
přidělovat/přidělit *to assign, apportion*  
přihlašovat/přihlásit *to register*  
přicházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/přijít *to come, arrive*  
příchod *arrival* (on foot)  
příjezd *arrival*  
přijímat/přijmout (prijme, přijal) *to accept; to receive*  
přijít see *přicházet*  
příjmení *surname*  
přilet *arrival* (by air)  
příležitost (-i, f.) *occasion; opportunity*  
přinášet (3rd pl. -ejí)/přinést *to bring*  
přínos *contribution*  
případ *case, event(uality)*  
připisovat/připsat *to add (writing)*  
přípoj (m.) *connection*  
příprava *preparation*  
připravovat/připravit (se) *prepare (oneself), get ready; train, study*  
přípravy (k + dat.) *preparations (for)*  
příroda *nature*  
přírodopis *natural history, biology*  
příslušenství *lavatory + bathroom*  
příslušný *the relevant*  
příst (předce) *to purr* (of a cat); *to spin*  
přistávat/přistát (-stane, -stál) *to land*  
příště *next time*  
přítí *next*  
přítel (pl. přátelé), přítelkyně *friend* (m./f.)  
přítomnost (-i, f.) *presence*  
přivádět (3rd pl. -ějí)/přivést (-vede) *to bring (in), lead (in)*  
přívoz *ferry*  
psací stroj (m.) *typewriter*  
psací stůl *desk*  
psát (píše)/napsat *to write*



pstruh *trout*  
 ptáče (-ete, nt.) *little bird*  
 pták *bird*  
 ptát se/zeptat se + gen. *to ask*  
 pučet *to burst, come into bud*  
 půjčovat/půjčit *lend; ~ si to borrow, hire*  
 pukat/puknout *to burst*  
 půl *half*  
 půlit/roz- *to halve*  
 pumpa *pump*  
 původ *origin*  
 původní *original*  
 rabín *rabbi*  
 rád *glad; mít rád to like, love*  
 rada (piece of) *advice, counsel*,  
 council; (m.) *councillor*,  
 counsellor  
 rádio *radio*  
 radit/poradit + dat. *to advise*  
 radnice (f.) *town hall*  
 radovat se/za- + z + gen. *to rejoice (at)*  
 radši or raději *preferably*  
 ráj (m.) *paradise*  
 rajče (-čete, nt.), rajské jablíčko  
*tomato*  
 rameno *shoulder* (see Unit 13)  
 ramínko *coat-hanger*  
 ranit/z- *to wound*  
 ráno *morning*  
 reagovat/za- *react*  
 recepční (adjectival noun, m. or  
 f.) *receptionist*  
 referát (conference, seminar, etc.)  
*paper, report*  
 republika *republic*  
 restrikce (f.) *cutback*  
 revidovat *revise*  
 rodiče *parents*  
 rodina *family*  
 roh *corner; horn*  
 rohlík *bread roll*  
 rok *year*  
 román *novel*  
 rostoucí *rising, growing*  
 rovně *straight on*  
 rozbít (3rd pl. -ejí)/rozbít (-bije)

*to break*  
 rozbitý *broken, damaged*  
 rozčilovat se/rozčítit se *to get excited*  
 rozhlas *radio*  
 rozhodně *definitely*  
 rozhodný *decisive, critical, crucial; definite*  
 rozhodovat se/rozhodnout se *to make up one's mind, decide*  
 rozhovor *talk, conversation, dialogue*  
 rozlévat/rozlít (rozlije or rozleje)  
*to spill*  
 rozpaky (m. pl.) *embarrassment, awkwardness, uncertainty*  
 rozsvěcet or rozsvěcovat/rozsvítit  
*to put the light on*  
 rozum *sense, intelligence*  
 rozumět (3rd pl. -ejí) *to understand*  
 rozumný *sensible*  
 rozvázat (3rd pl. -ejí)/rozvézt  
 (-veze) *to take/drop to various places*  
 ruka (pl. ruce) *arm, hand* (see  
 Unit 13)  
 rukojmí (declines as adj.)  
*hostage*  
 růst (roste, rostl) *to grow*  
 různý *various*  
 růže (f.) *rose*  
 růžový *pink*  
 ryba *fish; chodit/jít na ryby to go fishing*  
 rybář *fisherman*  
 rychlý *quick, fast*  
 rýma *a cold*  
 rýsovat *to draw* (technical  
 drawing)  
 řada *row, line, series; several, many*  
 ředitel *manager, director*  
 řeka *river*  
 řeznictví *butcher's shop*  
 řezník *butcher*  
 řidič (m.) *driver*  
 řídit *to drive* (car); *run, be in charge, manage, govern*

řidký (comp. řidší) *rare, sparse, thin* (of liquids)  
 říje (f.) *the rutting season*  
 říjen (-jna) *October*  
 říkat/řici (řekne, řekl) *to say, tell*  
 řízek (-zku) *schnitzel*  
 salám *salami*  
 salát *lettuce; salad*  
 sám, sama, samo, etc. *alone; by oneself*  
 samotný (him-, etc.) *-self*  
 samouk *self-taught person*  
 samozřejmě *of course, obviously; by all means*  
 samozřejmý *evident, obvious*  
 sanitka *ambulance*  
 sázet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vsadit *to bet (money)*  
 sedat si/sednout si *to sit down*  
 sedět *to sit*  
 sedm *seven*  
 sekretárka *secretary*  
 sem (to) *here*  
 semafor *traffic light(s)*  
 seriózní *serious, earnest*  
 sestavovat/sestavit *to construct, compile*  
 sestra *sister*  
 setina *hundredth*  
 sever (adj. severní) *north*  
 shánět (3rd pl. -ejí)/sehnat  
 (sežene) *to (try to) get, to chase up*  
 schopen + gen. *capable of*  
 schopný *able*  
 schůzka *appointment, date*  
 sice concessive conjunction *while, though*  
 sídliště (nt.) *housing estate*  
 silnice (f.) *(main) road*  
 sirka *match*  
 situace (f.) *situation, predicament*  
 skákat (skáče)/skočit *to jump*  
 sklenice (f.) *glass*  
 sklenička (diminutive of sklenice)  
*glass*  
 sklep (-a) *cellar*  
 sklo *glass*

skoro *almost*  
 Skot/-ka *Scot* (m./f.)  
 Skotsko *Scotland*  
 skříň (f.) *cupboard, wardrobe*  
 skutečně *really*  
 skutečnost (-i, f.) *reality, fact*  
 skutečný *real, genuine*  
 slabý (comp. slabší) *thin, weak*  
 sladkost (-i, f.) *sweetness; something sweet*  
 sladký (comp. sladší) *sweet*  
 slavít/o- *to celebrate*  
 slečna *Miss, young lady*  
 slepý *blind*  
 slibovat/slíbit *to promise*  
 slon *elephant*  
 Slovák *Slovak*  
 Slovenka *Slovak woman*  
 Slovensko *Slovakia*  
 slovenština *Slovak (language)*  
 slovník *dictionary*  
 slovo *word*  
 složitý *complicated*  
 sluha (m.) *servant; office messenger*  
 slunce (nt.) *sun*  
 slušný *decent, respectable*  
 slyšet/u- *to hear*  
 směřovat *to direct, aim*  
 smět (smí, smějí) *to be allowed*  
 smích *laughter*  
 smrt (-i, f.) *death*  
 smutný *sad*  
 smysl *meaning; sense*  
 snad *perhaps, possibly*  
 snadný (comp. snazší) *easy*  
 snažit se *to try*  
 snídaně (f.) *breakfast*  
 snídat/na- se *to have breakfast*  
 sníh (sněhu) *snow*  
 sobota *Saturday*  
 sotva *hardly*  
 soud *court; judgement*  
 souhlasit *to agree, concur*  
 soused/-ka (pl. sousedé)  
*neighbour*  
 spát (spí) *to sleep*  
 spěchat *to hurry, to rush*  
 spisovatel/-ka *writer*

spíš(e) *more (likely)*  
 spod + gen. *from under*  
 spojovat/spojit *to unite, join*  
 spokojen *satisfied; -ý contented*  
 spolu *together*  
 spolupracovat *co-operate, collaborate*  
 spotřebič (m.) *appliance*  
 správce (m.) *administrator; caretaker*  
 správný *correct, right*  
 spravovat/spravit *to repair*  
 sprcha *shower*  
 sprostý (comp. sprostší) *rude, vulgar*  
 srdce (nt.) *heart*  
 srovnávat/srovnat *to compare*  
 srpen (-pna) *August*  
 stačit *to suffice; to be enough*  
 stále *all the time, constantly*  
 stánek (-nku) *stall*  
 stanice (f.) *(bus or underground) stop*  
 starat se/po- se + o + acc. *to look after*  
 stárnout/ze- *to age*  
 starost (-i, f.) *care, worry; dělat si starosti to worry*  
 starosta *mayor*  
 starý (comp. starší) *old*  
 stařík *old man*  
 stát *state*  
 stát (stojí, stál) *to cost; to stand*  
 stávat se/stát se (stane se, stalo se) *to happen*  
 stávkovat *to strike*  
 stéblo *stalk, straw*  
 stejně *anyway; as it is/was*  
 stejný (the) *same*  
 stěžovat si *complain*  
 stíhat *to pursue, prosecute*  
 stíhat/stihnout *to have time for*  
 stisknout *to squeeze*  
 sto *hundred*  
 stolek (-lku) *small table*  
 století *century*  
 stolní lampa *table lamp*  
 stoupat *to rise, climb, go up*  
 stovka *a hundred crowns also a*

hundred-crown (or dollar or rouble etc.) note, also the number 100 expressed as a noun  
 strach *fear*  
 strana *page, side; party; stranou to one side*  
 strohý *strict, severe*  
 stroj (m.) *machine*  
 středa *Wednesday*  
 střecha *roof*  
 střevo *intestine*  
 stříbrný *silver*  
 stříška *awning, shelter*  
 střízlivý *sober*  
 student/-ka *student (m./f.)*  
 studený *cold*  
 studovat *to study*  
 stůl (stolu) *table, desk*  
 stupeň (-pně, m) *degree*  
 stydnout/vy- *to get cold*  
 styl *style*  
 sud *barrel*  
 sucho *dry(mess), drought; a dry place*  
 suchý (comp. sušší) *dry*  
 sůl (soli, f.) *salt*  
 svačina *snack, packed lunch*  
 svačit *to have a snack*  
 svědek (-dka) *witness*  
 světlo *light*  
 svěží *fresh*  
 svítit *to shine*  
 svobodný *single (unmarried); free*  
 svůj reflexive possessive pronoun  
 syn (pl. synové) *son*  
 šanon *box-file*  
 šaty (m. pl.) *a dress, clothes*  
 šedý, šedivý *grey*  
 šéf *head, boss*  
 šek *cheque*  
 šepat/za- *to whisper*  
 šeptem *in a whisper*  
 šest *six*  
 šetrný *sparing; considerate*  
 šetřit/u- *to save, spare*  
 šicí stroj *sewing machine*  
 šidit/o- *to cheat (someone)*  
 šikovný *clever, useful, handy*

široko (comp. šíře) (adv.) *wide*  
 široký (comp. širší) *wide, broad*  
 šít (šije) *to sew*  
 šití *sewing*  
 škaredý *ugly, awful, bad, gross*  
 škoda! *pity!*  
 škodovka *Škoda (car)*  
 škola *school*  
 školství *education*  
 škrtať/škrtnout *to strike (out)*  
 šňůra (washing) *line*  
 šofér *driver*  
 šok *shock*  
 šokovat *to shock*  
 Španěl/-ka (pl. Španělé) *Spaniard (m./f.)*  
 špatně (comp. hůř(e)) *badly*  
 špatný (comp. horší) *bad*  
 štamprle (-lete, n) *tot, dram*  
 šťasten/tný *happy*  
 šťáva *juice*  
 štěkat/za- *to bark*  
 štěně (-ěte, nt.) *puppy*  
 šťastí *happiness; luck*  
 Švéd/-ka *Swede (m./f.)*  
 ta *the; that (f.)*  
 tábor *camp*  
 tady *here*  
 tahat (see Unit 12)  
 táhnout *to pull, to draw; march*  
 tak *so; thus; like this/that*  
 také/taky *also, too, as well*  
 takhle *like this/that; in this way*  
 takový *such, like that, of that kind*  
 taky ne- *not either*  
 takže *so (that), therefore*  
 talentovaný *talented*  
 talíř (m.) *plate*  
 tam (to) *there*  
 tančit *to dance*  
 tapetovat/vy- *to paper*  
 tapety (f. pl.) *wallpaper*  
 taška *bag*  
 tát/roztát (taje) *to melt*  
 taxík *taxi*  
 taxikář *cab driver*  
 téct (teče, tekl) *to flow, run (of water)*

tedy *therefore; then*  
 tekoucí (voda) *running (water)*  
 tele (-ete, nt.) *calf*  
 telefon *telephone*  
 televize (f.) *TV*  
 televizor *television (the receiver)*  
 téměř *almost*  
 ten/ta/to etc. *the; that*  
 tenhle/tento *this, this one*  
 tenký (comp. tenčí) *thin (not of people)*  
 teplo *warm(th)*  
 teploměr *thermometer*  
 teplota *temperature*  
 teplý *warm*  
 teprve in time expressions *only*  
 termín *deadline, v termínu to/on schedule*  
 těšit/po- *to comfort, console*  
 těšit se + na + acc. *to look forward to*  
 teta *aunt*  
 těžký (comp. těžší) *heavy; difficult*  
 tchán *father-in-law*  
 tchyně *mother-in-law*  
 tichý (comp. tišší) *quiet*  
 tisíc (m.) *thousand*  
 tiskárna *printing works, printer*  
 tisknout/s- *to squeeze*  
 tisknout/vy- *to print*  
 tiše (comp. tišeji) *quietly*  
 tlačítko (push-) *button*  
 tlak *pressure*  
 tlumočník/-nice *interpreter (m./f.)*  
 tlustý (comp. tlustší) *fat*  
 tma *dark*  
 tmavý (comp. tmavší) *dark*  
 to it, this, that  
 tolik + gen. *so much/many*  
 tonout/u- *to drown*  
 topit (se)/u- (se) *to drown*  
 topit se/po- *to sink*  
 topit/za- *to flood*  
 totiž *you see, namely*  
 továrna *factory*  
 tradice (f.) *tradition*  
 tramvaj (f.) *tram, streetcar*  
 trávit/s- *to spend, pass; to digest*

trefit *to find the way, to hit (a target)*  
trochu *a bit*  
trojmo *in triplicate*  
trpělivost (-i, f.) *patience*  
trpělivý *patient*  
trpký (comp. trpčí) *tart, acid*  
trvalý *permanent*  
trvat/po- *to last, endure*  
trvat na + loc. *to insist on*  
třást/za- + inst. *to shake*  
třeba *say, for instance, perhaps; necessary*  
třetina *one third*  
tři *three*  
třikrát *three times*  
tu *here*  
tucet (-ctu) *dozen*  
tuhý (comp. tužší) *stiff, tough*  
turista (m.) *tourist*  
tušit *to guess, have a presentiment*  
tvrdý (comp. tvrdší) *hard*  
tvůj *yours*  
tvůrce (m.) *maker, creator*  
ty *you*  
týden (-dne) *week*  
typický *typical*  
u + gen. *at*  
učení *teaching; apprenticeship*  
účet (účtu) *account; bill*  
učit/ná- *to teach*  
učit se/ná- *to learn; study*  
učitel *teacher*  
údajný *alleged*  
údolí *valley*  
uhel (uhle or uhlu) (a) *coal*  
úhel (úhlu) *angle, corner*  
uhlí *coal*  
ucho (pl. uši) *ear (see Unit 13)*  
ukazovat/ukázat (ukáže) *to show*  
úklid *cleaning*  
uklidňovat/uklidnit *to (make) calm*  
uklidňovat se/uklidnit se *to calm down*  
uklízet (3rd pl. -ejí)/uklidit *to tidy (up)*

ukradený *stolen*  
ulice (gen. pl. ulic, f.) *street*  
umělý *artificial*  
umění *art*  
umět (3rd pl. umějí) *to know; to be good at*  
umožňovat/umožnit *to make possible, facilitate; (with dat.) to enable*  
úmysl *intention; mít v úmyslu to intend*  
unášet (3rd pl. -ejí)/unést (-nese) *to hijack, kidnap*  
unavovat/unavit *to tire*  
unifforma *uniform*  
unikátní *unique*  
univerzita *university*  
únor (-a) *February*  
únos *kidnapping, hijack*  
únosce (m.) *kidnapper, hijacker*  
upozorňovat/upozornit *to advise, draw someone's attention*  
upravit/upravit *to adjust, amend, regulate*  
určitě *certainly, definitely*  
určitý *a certain*  
úřednictvo *office staff*  
úředník/-nice *clerical worker, civil servant (m./f.)*  
uschovávat/uschovat *to keep, store*  
usnášet se/usněst se + na + loc. *to resolve*  
úspěch *success*  
ústa (nt. pl.) *mouth*  
ústav *institute, institution*  
útěcha *consolation*  
úterý, úterek (-rka) *Tuesday*  
utírat/utřít (utře, utřel) *to wipe*  
uvažovat *to think, consider, use one's head*  
úvod *introduction (to a book)*  
úzký (comp. užší) *narrow, tight*  
uznávaný *recognized*  
uznávat/uznat *to recognize, acknowledge*  
už *already, now*  
užitečný *useful*

v(e) + loc. *in; at*  
vadit + dat. *to matter; to be a nuisance to*  
vahnout/u- *to wilt*  
váhat/za- *to hesitate*  
válka *war*  
vana *bath*  
vánice (f.) *gale, blizzard*  
Vánoce (pl.) *Christmas*  
varovat *to warn*  
vaření *cooking*  
vařící *boiling*  
vařit/u- *to cook, boil*  
váš, vaše, vaše *your(s)*  
vata *cotton wool*  
váza *vase*  
vážný *serious, grave*  
včas *in/on time*  
včasný *timely, punctual*  
včera *yesterday*  
včerejšek (-ška) *yesterday (as noun)*  
včerejší *yesterday's*  
věc (-i, f.) *thing, object*  
večer (-a) *evening*  
večeře (f.) *dinner; supper; tea*  
večeřet *to dine, have dinner/supper/tea*  
vědec (-dce, m.) *scientist*  
vědět (ví, 3rd pl. vědí) *to know*  
vedle + gen. *beside*  
vědoml-ý *aware, conscious*  
vedoucí *manager/ess*  
vedoucí *leading*  
vegetarián *vegetarian*  
vejce (nt.) *egg*  
vejít se (vejde se, vešel se) *to fit*  
Velikonoce (pl.) *Easter*  
vel(i)ký *big, large; great*  
velmi *very, (very) much*  
Velšán/-ka *Welshman/-woman*  
velvyslanectví *embassy*  
ven *out*  
venkov (-a) *country (opp. of town)*  
venku *outside*  
věnovat (se) + dat. *to devote (oneself) to*  
věpově *porc*

věřit + dat. *to believe, trust*  
veselý *merry, lively*  
vesnice (f.) *village*  
vést (vede, vedl) *to lead*  
věšet/pověsit *to hang (something)*  
věta *sentence*  
větší *bigger*  
většina *the majority*  
většinou *mostly, usually*  
vězt (veze, vezl) *to carry, convey*  
věž (f.) *tower, spire*  
věžák *tower block*  
víc(e) *more*  
vidět *to see*  
víkend *weekend*  
vína *guilt, blame*  
víno *wine; grapes*  
viset *to hang*  
vítat/u- or při- *to welcome, greet*  
vítr (větru) *wind*  
vláda *government*  
vlas(y) *hair*  
vlastně *actually*  
vlastní (one's) *own*  
vlevo *on the left*  
vliv *influence, effect; vlivem + gen. due to*  
vlhký (comp. vlhčí) *damp, moist*  
vlk *wolf*  
vlna *wave; wool*  
voda *water*  
vodit (see Unit 12)  
volat/zavolat *to call, phone*  
volno *time off*  
vozit (see Unit 12)  
vpravo *on the right*  
vpředu *in front*  
vracet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vrátit *to return, take/send back*  
vracet se/vrátit se *to return, come back*  
vrah *murderer*  
vrata (n pl) *gate*  
vrtulník *helicopter*  
vsadit se *to bet*  
vstávat/vstát (vstane) *to get up, rise*  
však *but, though, however*  
všechn/všechna/všechno *all*



všechno *everything*  
 všichni *all, everybody*  
 všude *everywhere; all over the place*  
 vtipný *witty*  
 vůbec *at all*  
 vůl (vola) *ox; (coll.) idiot*  
 vy *you*  
 vybírat/vybrat (-bere) *to choose, select*  
 výbor *committee*  
 vybraný *chosen, select(ed)*  
 vydání *edition*  
 vydávat/vydat *to issue, publish; to hand over; surrender*  
 vydělávat/vydělávat *to earn*  
 vydržet *to with(stand), bear (přv. only)*  
 vyházovat/vyhodit *to throw away/out*  
 výhonek (-nku) *shoot (on a plant)*  
 vyhrávat/vyhrát (-hraje) *to win*  
 vyhybat se/vyhnout se + dat. *avoid*  
 vycházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vyjít *come/go out; work out; rise (of sun)*  
 východ (adj. východní) *east; exit*  
 vyjadřovat (se)/vyjádřit (se) *to express (oneself)*  
 výjezd *vehicular exit*  
 výkon *performance*  
 výlet *trip, day out*  
 vyměňovat/vyměnit *to replace*  
 vyměňovat (si)/vyměnit (si) *to exchange (money); to swap (with one another)*  
 vymýšlet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vymyslet *to think up*  
 vynášet (3rd pl. -ejí)/vynést *to bring/take/carry out*  
 vynikající *excellent, outstanding*  
 vynikat *to stand out, excel*  
 vynořovat se/vynořit se *to emerge*  
 výnos *decree*  
 vypadat + adv. *to look, appear, be like*  
 vypínač (m.) *switch*

vypisovat/vypsát *to write out*  
 vyplácet se/vyplatit se (někomu) *to be worth it (to someone)*  
 vyplňovat/vyplnit *to fill in (form)*  
 vypořebovat *to use up*  
 vprovázet (3rd pl. -ejí) *to see off/out*  
 vypůjčovat si/vypůjčit si *to borrow*  
 vyrábět (3rd pl. -ějí)/vyrobit *to produce, manufacture, make*  
 vyřazený *discarded, scrapped, thrown out (from vyřadit)*  
 vyřizování *things to sort out*  
 vyřizovat/vyřídít *to attend to, settle*  
 výsledek (-dku) *result, outcome*  
 vysoko (comp. výš(e)) (adv.) *high*  
 vysoký (comp. vyšší) *high, tall*  
 vyspat se *to have had a decent sleep*  
 výstava *exhibition*  
 vysvětlovat/vysvětlit *to explain*  
 vytýkat/vytknout (někomu něco) *to reproach*  
 vzadu *at the back*  
 vzbuzovat/vzbudit *to arouse*  
 vzdálenost (-i, f.) *distance*  
 vzít (si) *see brát (si)*  
 vzkaz *message*  
 vzkazovat/vzkázat (vzkáze) *to send a message*  
 vzorek (-rku) *sample*  
 vzorkovna *showroom*  
 vždy(cky) *always*  
 vzdýt (protesting) *but, after all*  
 z(e) + gen. *from*  
 za + acc. *for, in exchange for; + inst. or acc. beyond, behind*  
 zabít (3rd pl. -ejí)/zabít (-bije) *to kill*  
 zabývat se + inst. *to deal with*  
 zač *what for, how much for*  
 začátek (-tku) *beginning*  
 začínat/začít (začne, začal) *to begin*  
 záda (nt. pl.) *back*  
 zadávat/zadat *to reserve*

zadem *by the back way*  
 zadní *rear, back (adj.)*  
 zahnutý *crooked*  
 zahrada *garden*  
 zahraniční *foreign*  
 zahrnovat/zahrnout *to include*  
 zahrnutý *included*  
 zahýbat/zahnout *to bend*  
 zacházet (3rd pl. -ejí)/zajít *to pop (on foot)*  
 záchod *toilet*  
 zájem (-jmu) *interest*  
 zájezd *excursion, tour*  
 zajímat *to interest; ~ se + o + acc. to be interested in*  
 zajímavý *interesting*  
 zakazovat/zakázat (-káže) *to ban, forbid, prohibit*  
 základ *basis, foundation*  
 zakládat/založit *to found, set up*  
 zalévat/zalít (-líje or -leje) *to water (flowers)*  
 zámek (-mku) *lock; château*  
 záměr *intention*  
 zaměstnání *employment, occupation; job, post*  
 zaměstnaný *employed*  
 zaměstnavatel *employer*  
 zamilovaný *in love*  
 zamykat/zamknout *to lock*  
 zanechávat/zanechat *to give up, leave behind*  
 západ (adj. západní) *west*  
 zapadat/zapadnout *to set (of sun); fall behind, disappear from sight*  
 zaplatpánbůh *thank God!*  
 zapomenutý *forgotten*  
 zapomínat/zapomenout (zapomněl) *to forget*  
 zapomnětlivý *forgetful*  
 září *September*  
 zásada *principle*  
 zásadní *fundamental, basic;*  
 zásadně *in principle;*  
 fundamentally  
 zase *again*  
 zasílat/zaslat (-šle) *to send*  
 zastavovat/zastavit *to stop*

(someone or something); ~ se *to stop; to call in*  
 zastihnout (usually used in přv. only) *to catch, find*  
 zastupovat *replace, represent, stand in for*  
 zásuvka *socket, drawer*  
 zato *but, on the other hand*  
 zavazadlo *piece of luggage*  
 zavést *to take (someone somewhere)*  
 zavírat/zavřít (-vře, -vřel) *to close*  
 zboží *goods*  
 zbytečný *useless, superfluous*  
 zbytek (-tku) *remnant, rest*  
 zde *here*  
 zdejší *local*  
 zdrav/zdravý *well, healthy*  
 zdraví *health*  
 zdroj (m.) *source*  
 zdržovat/zdržet *to delay, hold up*  
 zeď (zdi, f.) *wall*  
 zelený *green*  
 zelí *cabbage*  
 zem (in spadnout etc.) *na zem (to fall etc.) to the ground*  
 země (f.) *ground, earth, soil; country*  
 zemřít (zemře, zemřel) *to die (přv.)*  
 zhoršovat/zhoršit *to make worse; ~ se to get worse*  
 zima (adj. zimní) *winter; cold*  
 zítra *tomorrow*  
 zítřek (-řka) *tomorrow (as noun)*  
 zítřejší *tomorrow's*  
 zklamáný *disappointed*  
 zkoušet (3rd pl. -ejí)/zkusit *to try, test*  
 zkratka *abbreviation*  
 zkušenost (-i, f.) *experience*  
 zlatý *gold(en)*  
 zlepšovat/zlepšit *to improve*  
 zlobit *annoy, be naughty, cause trouble*  
 zlobit se/roz- *to be/get angry*  
 zločinec (-nce, m.) *criminal*  
 zločinost (-i, f.) *crime (rate)*  
 zloděj (m.) *thief*

zlý *wicked, evil, bad*  
 změnína *change*  
 zmeškat *to be late for*  
 zmiňovat se/zmínit se + o + loc.  
*to mention*  
 zmrzlina *ice cream*  
 značka *sign, brand, mark, marquee*  
 znamenat *to mean*  
 znamenitý *magnificent*  
 známka *stamp*  
 známý *well known, familiar; friend*  
 znát *to know*  
 znění *wording, text*  
 znova/znovu *again*  
 zouvat/zout (zúje, zul) *to take off (footwear); ~ se to take one's shoes off*  
 zpátky *back*  
 zpívat *to sing*  
 zpráva *report, (item of) news (pl. zprávy the news)*  
 zrovna *just, exactly, precisely*  
 zřejmě *apparently, evidently, I believe*  
 zřejmý *evident, apparent, obvious*  
 ztráčet (3rd pl. -ejí)/ztratit *to lose*  
 zub *tooth*  
 zůstat/zůstat (zůstane) *to stay*  
 zvát (zve)/pozvat *to invite*  
 zvedat/zvednout *to lift*  
 zvědav-ý *curious, inquisitive*  
 zvlášť *especially; separately*  
 zvláštní *special; separate; odd*  
 zvonek (-nku) *bell*  
 zvonit/za- *to ring*  
 zvyk *custom, habit*  
 zvyšovat/zvýšit *to increase, raise*  
 žadatel/-ka *applicant*  
 žádost (-i, f.) *application*  
 žádoucí *desirable*  
 žalovat/za- *to sue*  
 žaludek (-dku) *stomach*  
 že *that*  
 žehlit/vy- *to iron*

železnice (f.) *railway*  
 železo *iron*  
 žena *woman; wife*  
 Žid (pl. Židé), Židovka *Jew (m./f.)*  
 židle (f.) *chair*  
 židovský *Jewish*  
 žít (žije) *to live*  
 živl-ý *alive, living; lively; vivid*  
 život (-a) *life*  
 žízeň (-ně, f.) *thirst*  
 žlutý *yellow*  
 žrát (žere)/sežrat *to eat (only of animals)*  
 žurnalista *journalist*

about (roughly) *asi; (concerning) o + loc.*  
 above *nad (Unit 12)*  
 abroad *v cizině, v zahraničí*  
 accident *nehoda, úraz; road, traffic ~ automobile, havárie*  
 actual *skutečný, vlastní; -ly vlastně*  
 adapter *adaptér*  
 address *adresa*  
 administration *správa*  
 adult (n., adj.) *dospělý*  
 advance: in ~ *předem*  
 advantage *výhoda*  
 advert *reklama; (small ad) inzerát*  
 advice *rada*  
 advise *radit/po-*  
 afford *dovolit si (ptv.)*  
 afraid: be ~ (concern) *obávat se, (fear) bát se*  
 after *po + loc.*  
 afternoon *odpoledne (nt.)*  
 afterwards *potom, později*  
 again *opět, znova, zase*  
 against *proti + dat.*  
 age *věk*  
 agency *agentura*  
 ago *před + inst.*  
 agree (be in ~ment) *souhlasit; (come to an ~ment) dohodnout se*  
 ahead (adv.) *napřed, předem; ~ of před + inst.*

aid *pomoc (-i) (f.); first ~ první pomoc*  
 aim *cíl, záměr; (vb.) mířit*  
 air *vzduch; (vb.) větrathy-; by ~ (mail) letecky, letadlem; ~ conditioning aklimatizace; ~mail letecká pošta; ~port letiště (nt.)*  
 alcohol *alkohol; -ic beverages alkoholické nápoje*  
 alive *živý, naživu*  
 all *celý, všechen, všichni, všechno; ~ right dobře, správně, v pořádku; that's ~ to je všechno*  
 allergic *alergický; ~y alergie*  
 allow *dovolovat/dovolit, povolovat/povolit, umožňovat/umožnit*  
 almost *skoro, téměř*  
 alone *sám*  
 along *podél + gen., po + loc.*  
 aloud *nahlas*  
 already *už*  
 also *také, taky, rot už*  
 although *i když, ačkoli*  
 altogether *celkem*  
 always *vždy(cky), stále*  
 a.m. *dopoledne*  
 ambassador *velvyslanec*  
 America *Amerika; ~n americký, (person m./f.) Američan/ka*  
 among *mezi (Unit 12)*  
 amount (sum) *částka, obnos;*



(quantity) množství, kvantita  
 amusement zábava  
 and a, (emphatic) i  
 angry rozzlobený, be ~ zlobit se  
 animal zvíře (-te) (nt.), živočich  
 ankle kotník  
 anniversary výročí  
 announce oznamovat/oznámít  
 annoy obtěžovat, zlobit,  
 otravovat; -ing nepřijemný  
 annual každoroční  
 another (one more) ještě jeden,  
 další, (different) jiný  
 answer odpověď, (vb.)  
 odpovídat/odpovědět  
 any jakýkoli, (in a question)  
 nějaký, (after negative) žádný;  
 -body kdokoli, někdo, nikdo;  
 -thing cokoli, něco, nic; -where  
 kdekoli, někde, nikde; -way  
 stejně; -way (you like) jakkoli  
 (chcete)  
 apart stranou, zvlášť, ~ from  
 kromě + gen., mimo + acc.  
 apartment byt  
 apparatus zařízení, přístroj,  
 aparát  
 appear (turn up) objevit se, (seem)  
 vypadat  
 apple jablko  
 apply (for) podávat/podat žádost,  
 žádat (o + acc.)  
 area plocha, areál  
 argue hádat se, dohadovat se  
 arm ruka, paže  
 arrangement (disposition)  
 uspořádání; (agreement)  
 ujednání  
 arrival (on foot) příchod, (by or  
 of vehicles) příjezd, (by air)  
 přilet  
 arrive přicházet/přijít,  
 přijíždět/přijet, přilétat/přiletět,  
 dorazit  
 arrow šíp, šipka  
 art umění; ~ gallery galerie  
 article (written, in a law, contract  
 etc.) článek, (item) předmět  
 artist umělec

as jako, (conj. = since) když  
 ashtay popelník  
 ask (question) ptát se/ze-,  
 (request) prosit/po-, žádat/po-  
 asleep, be ~ spát (spí)  
 aspirin aspirin  
 at: ~ the hotel v hotelu; ~ the  
 station na nádraží; ~ home  
 doma; ~ five o'clock v pět hodin  
 (see Units 9 and 13)  
 ATM bankomat  
 attack (by assailant) útok, (fit)  
 záchvat  
 attempt pokus, (vb.) pokusit se  
 (přv.)  
 attraction atrakce  
 audience obecenstvo, diváci  
 August srpen (-pna)  
 Australia Austrálie; ~n australský,  
 (person m./f.) Australan/ka  
 Austria Rakousko; ~n rakouský,  
 (person m./f.) Rakušan/ka  
 autumn podzim, in the ~ na  
 podzim  
 available k dostání, k dispozici  
 average průměr, (adj.) průměrný  
 awake vzbúru  
 away pryč  
 awful hrozný  
 baby (malé) dítě (nt.)  
 back (of body) záda (n.pl.); (rear  
 part) zadní část (f.); (adv.)  
 zpátky; at the ~ vzadu; ~ pack  
 batoh  
 bad špatný  
 bag taška; paper-- sáček; hand-  
 kabečka  
 baggage zavazadla (n.pl.)  
 bakery pekárna; (shop) pekařství  
 balcony balkón  
 banana banán  
 bandage obvaz, fáč  
 bank banka; ~ holiday den  
 pracovního klidu  
 bar bar  
 barber's holičství  
 basket koš; (in shop) košík  
 bath vana; ~room koupelna

battery baterie  
 be být (see Unit 2)  
 beautiful krásný  
 because protože; ~ of kvůli + dat.  
 bed postel; ~room ložnice; ~ and  
 breakfast nocleh se snídaní  
 beef hovězí (n., as nt. adj.)  
 beer pivo; bottled ~ láhvové p.;  
 draught - točené p.  
 before před (Unit 12)  
 begin začínat/začít (začne, začal)  
 behind za (Unit 12)  
 below pod (Unit 12)  
 belt pásek  
 beside vedle + gen.; ~s kromě +  
 gen.  
 best nejlepší  
 better lepší  
 between mezi (Unit 12)  
 beyond za (Unit 12)  
 bicycle kolo  
 big velký  
 bill (account) účet; The bill,  
 please Platit, prosím; (US  
 [banknote]) bankovka  
 bin popelnice  
 bird pták  
 birthday narozeniny (f.pl.)  
 biscuit sušenka  
 bit: a little ~ trochu, trošku; a ~  
 far trochu daleko  
 bite (by insect) štipnutí, (by  
 animal) kousnutí  
 black černý  
 blame: Who's to blame? Čí je to  
 vina?  
 blanket deka  
 blind (adj.) slepý  
 blind (across window) roleta  
 blood krev (gen. krve) (f.)  
 blouse blůza, halenka  
 blue modrý  
 boat lod', (small, rowing ~) člun  
 body tělo  
 boiler bojler  
 bone kost (-i) (f.)  
 book kniha; ~shop knihkupectví;  
 to ~ rezervovat  
 boot (of car) kufr

boots (těžké) boty (sg. bota)  
 border (frontier) hranice  
 borrow půjčovat si/půjčit si  
 both oba (m.), obě (f. and n.); ~  
 ... and ... jak ... tak ...  
 bottle láhev (láhve) (f.); --opener  
 otvírák  
 bottom: at the ~ na dně; ~ of the  
 street na konci ulice; ~ of the  
 stairs, hill pod schody, kopcem  
 box krabice; ~ of chocolates  
 bonboniéra  
 boy chlapec, kluk  
 bra podprsenka  
 brake (n.) brzda, (vb.) brzdít/za-  
 brandy koňak  
 bread chléb, chleba  
 break (a thing) rozbít; (a limb)  
 zlomit  
 breakdown (on road) havárie; I've  
 broken down Mám poruchu,  
 Havaroval jsem  
 breakfast snídaně (f.)  
 bridge most  
 bring (on foot) přinášet/přinést,  
 (by car etc.) přivážet/přivést  
 Britain Velká Británie; ~ish  
 britský  
 brochure brožur(k)a, letá(če)k  
 broken (of thing) rozbítý; (of  
 limb) zlomený  
 brother bratr  
 brown hnědý  
 bruise modřina  
 brush kartáč; tooth- kartáček (na  
 zuby)  
 building budova  
 bulb: (light ~) žárovka  
 bunch of flowers kytice  
 burn (n.) spálenina; sun~ opálení  
 bus autobus; by ~ autobusem; ~  
 station autobusové nádraží; ~  
 stop (autobusová) zastávka  
 busy (public space) rušný,  
 (person) zaneprázdněný, (phone,  
 toilet = engaged) obsazeno  
 but ale  
 butcher's řeznictví  
 butter máslo

button *knoflík*  
 buy *kupovat/koupit*  
 by (near) *u* + gen.; ~ (e.g.) car *autem* (i.e. inst.); ~ (a certain time) *do* + gen.; ~ the way *mimochodem*  
 cabbage (white, red) *zelí* (nt.); (Savoy, spring) *kapusta* (NB an important distinction to the Czechs)  
 cable railway *lanovka*; cable car *kabina* (visuté lanovky)  
 café *kavárna*; internet ~ *internetová k.*  
 cake (sponge type) *bábovka*, (gâteau type) *dort*  
 call (vbs) *volat/za-*, *telefonovat/za-*; What's this ~ed *Jak se tomu říká*; (n.) *hovor*;  
 collect ~ *hovor na účet volaného*  
 camera *fotoaparát*, (coll.) *foťák*  
 camp *tábor*; ~ site (auto) *kempink*; (vb.) *stanovat, kempovat*  
 can (tin, of food) *konzerva*; ~ opener *otvírák konzerv*  
 can (= be able) *moc* (může) + inf.  
 Canada *Kanada*; Canadian *kanadský*, (person m./f.) *Kanaďan/ka*  
 cancel *rušit/z-*  
 candle *svíčka*  
 car *auto*; ~ accident *autonehoda*; ~ hire *pronájem automobilů*; ~ park *parkoviště*  
 card *kart(ičk)a*; greetings ~ *blahopřání, gratulace*; business ~ *navštívenka*; phone ~ *telefonní karta*; credit ~ *kreditní karta*  
 carpet *koberec*  
 carrot(s) *mrkev (mrkve, f.)*  
 carry *nést*  
 cash *hotovost*; ~ point, dispenser *bankomat*  
 castle (fortified) *hrad*; (château) *zámek*  
 cat *kočka*  
 cathedral *katedrála*; St Vitus' C- (in Prague) *Chrám svatého Víta*

cave *jeskyně*  
 ceiling *strop*  
 centimetre *centimetr*  
 centre *střed*: (of town) *centrum*; (cultural, health, shopping ~ etc.) *středisko*  
 certain *jistý, určitý*; ~ly *jistě, určitě*  
 chair *židle*; arm- *křeslo*  
 chambermaid *pokojská*  
 champagne *šampaňské*  
 change (vbs) *měnit/z (se)*; (money) *proměňovat/proměnit*; (trains, buses) *přesedávat/přesedat, přestupovat/přestoupit*; (get changed) *převlékat se/převléknout se*; (n.) *změna*, for a ~ *pro změnu*; small, loose ~ *drobné*  
 cheap *levný, laciný*  
 check (vb.) *kontrolovat*; ~ in *registrovat*; ~ out *odblášovat se/odhlásit se*; (n. US = UK cheque) *šek*; (US = UK bill) *účet*  
 Cheers! *Na zdraví!*  
 cheese *sýr*  
 chemist's *lékárna*  
 cheque *šek*; ~ book *šeková knížka*; ~ card *průkaz majitele konta*  
 chest *hrud'* (f.)  
 chicken (meat) *kuře(cí maso)*  
 child *dítě* (nt.) (pl. *děti, f.*)  
 chips *hranolky* (sg. *-ek*), (US = UK crisps) *bramborové lupínky* (sg. *b-á lupínka*)  
 chocolate *čokoláda*  
 Christmas *Vánoce*; ~ Eve *Štědrý večer*; ~ present *vánoční dárek*; for ~ *k Vánocům*; at ~ *o Vánocích*  
 church (institution) *církev (církev, f.)*, (building) *kostel (-a)*  
 cigar *doutník*; ~ette *cigareta*  
 cinema *kino*  
 city *město*  
 clean (adj.) *čistý*; (vb.) *čistit/vy-*  
 clock *hodiny* (f.pl.)  
 close (vb.) *zavírat/zavřít*

clothes *šaty, oblečení*  
 coach (long-distance bus) *(meziměstský) autobus*; (hire~) *autokar*; (of train) *vagón*; ~ station, see bus-station; ~ trip *zájezd*  
 coat *kabát*; ~ hanger *ramínko*  
 code *kód*; dialling ~ *předčísli*; ~ post ~ *poštovní směrovací číslo (PSC)*  
 coffee *káva*; decaffeinated *k. bez kofeinu*  
 coin *mince* (f.)  
 cold (low temperature) *zima*, (indisposition) *rýma*; It's ~ *Je zima*; I'm ~ *Je mi zima*; I have a ~ *Mám rýmu*  
 colour *barva*  
 comb *hřeben*  
 come *přicházet/přijít*; ~ here! *Pojďte sem!*; ~ tomorrow *Přijďte zítra*; ~ back *vracet se/vrátit se*; ~ in *vstupovat/vstoupit*; 'C- in!' *Dál!*  
 comfortable *pohodlný*  
 compartment (in train) *kupé*  
 complain *stěžovat si*  
 complaint *stížnost*  
 computer *počítač*  
 concert *koncert*  
 concourse *hala, dvorana*  
 condom *prezervativ, kondom*  
 Congratulations! *Blahopřeji!*  
 connection (transport) *spoj (m.)*  
 constipation *zácpa*  
 consulate *konzulát*  
 contact *kontakt*; (vb.) *kontaktovat/s-*; ~ lenses *kontaktní čočky*  
 cookie *sušenka*  
 corkscrew *vývrtka*  
 correct (right) *správný*  
 cost (n.) *cena*; (vb.) *stát (stojí)*  
 cotton *bavlna*; ~ wool *vata*  
 couchette *lehátko*; ~ car *lehátkový vůz*  
 cough (n.) *kašel*; (vb.) *kašlat (kašle)*  
 country *země*; ~side *venkov (-a)*

couple *pár, dvojice*; married *manželská d.*  
 courier *kurýr*  
 course (of meal) *chod*; race~ *dostihová dráha*; of ~ *samozejmé*  
 cream *smetana*; whipped ~ *šlehačka*; ~ cake *šlehačkový dort*  
 crisps *lupínky, brambůrky*  
 crossroads *křižovatka*  
 crowd *dav*; ~ed *plný lidí*  
 cup *šálek*  
 cupboard *skříň (f.)*  
 curtains *záclony* (f.pl.)  
 cushion *polštář (m.)*  
 custom *obvyčej, zvyk*  
 customs *celnice*; ~ duty *clo*  
 cyclist (m./f.) *cyklista/cyklistka*  
 Czech (language) *čeština*, to speak ~ *mluvit česky*; (person m./f.) *Čech/Česka*; (adj.) *český*; ~ Republic *Česká republika*  
 damage (nt.) *škody, poškození*; (vb.) *poškozovat/poškodit*  
 damp *vlhký*  
 dance (n.) *tanec*; (vb.) *tancovat*  
 danger *nebezpečí*; ~ous *nebezpečný*  
 dark: it's ~ *je tma*  
 date *datum*; What's the date? *Kolikátého je?*  
 daughter *dcera* (dat./loc. *dceři*)  
 day *den*; days of the week *see Unit 11*  
 dead *mrtvý*  
 deaf *hluchý*  
 decide *rozhodnout se*  
 deep *hluboký*  
 delay *zpoždění*  
 delicatessen *lahůdkářství*  
 dentist (m./f.) *zubní lékař(ka)*  
 department *oddělení*; ~ store *obchodní dům*  
 departure (train, bus) *odjezd*; (plane) *odlet*  
 dessert *dezert, moučník*  
 destination *cíl(ová stanice)*  
 diarrhoea *průjem*

diesel (fuel) (motorová) nafta; ~ engine naftový motor  
 difference rozdíl; ~t jiný, rozdílný  
 difficult těžký, obtížný  
 dining room jídelna  
 dinner večeře  
 direct (adj.) přímý  
 direction směr; ask for directions zeptat se na směr někam  
 dirt špína; ~y špinavý  
 disco diskotéka  
 divorced rozvedený  
 do dělatu-  
 doctor (m./f.) doktor(ka)  
 dog pes (psa)  
 door dveře (f. pl.)  
 double dvojitý; ~ bed manželská postel; ~ room pokoj pro dva  
 down(wards) dolů; ~stairs dole  
 drink nápoj; soft ~ nealkoholický nápoj; (vbs) pít/vy-, pít/napít se; something to ~ něco k pití;  
 What will you have to drink?  
 Co si dáte?  
 drive řídit; driving/driver's licence řidičský průkaz  
 driver řidič; (professional) šofér  
 drug (therapeutic) lék; ~s (narcotics) drogy  
 drunk opilý  
 dry suchý; ~ cleaner's chemická čistírna  
 during během + gen.  
 duvet peřina  
 each každý; ~ other jeden druhého  
 ear ucho (pl. uši f.) (see Unit 13)  
 early brzy  
 east východ  
 Easter Velikonoce; ~ egg velikonoční vajíčko, (painted) kraslice  
 easy snadný, jednoduchý  
 eat jíst/sníst, jíst/najíst se;  
 something to ~ něco k jídlu  
 egg vejce, vajíčko; scrambled ~s míchaná vejce  
 either ... or ... buď ... nebo ...

elbow loket (-kte)  
 electric elektrický; ~ity elektřina  
 elevator výtah  
 else: someone ~ někdo jiný;  
 someone ~'s cizí; something ~ něco jiného; somewhere ~ někde jinde  
 embassy ambasáda, velvyslanectví  
 emergency naléhavý případ;  
 accident and ~ (A & E), (US) ~ room pohotovost  
 empty prázdňný  
 end (n.) konec; (vb.) končit/s-engaged (toilet, telephone) obsazeno  
 engine motor  
 England Anglie; ~lish anglický; ~lishman/-woman Angličan/ka  
 enjoy: We ~ed the play Hra se nám líbila; We ~ed ourselves Bavili jsme se dobře; ~ your meal! Dobrou chuť!  
 enough dost; That's! ~ To stačí!  
 entrance vchod  
 envelope obálka  
 especially zejména  
 Europe Evropa; ~an evropský  
 evening večer; this evening dnes večer  
 every každý; ~body každý, všichni; ~thing všechno; ~where všude  
 excellent skvělý, výborný  
 except kromě + gen.  
 exchange rate devizový kurz  
 exciting vzrušující  
 excursion zájezd  
 excuse me (to be let past) s dovolením, pardon; (seeking attention or apologizing) promiňte  
 exhibition výstava  
 exit východ  
 expensive drahý  
 expired: my passport (visa) has expired vypršel(o) mi pas (vízum)  
 eye oko (pl. oči f.) (see Unit 13)

face tvář (f.)  
 fairly poměrně  
 fall upadnout, spadnout; (n. US = UK autumn) podzim  
 family rodina  
 far daleko  
 fare jízdné; What's the fare? Kolik to stojí?  
 fast rychlý  
 fat (n.) tuk; (adj. of person) tlustý  
 father otec  
 faucet (US = UK tap) kohoutek  
 fault vada, porucha, (blame) vina; ~y vadný  
 favourite oblíbený  
 fax fax  
 feel cítit (se); I'm not feeling well Necítím se dobře  
 ferry (sea) trajekt; (river) převoz  
 fetch jít pro + acc.  
 fever horečka; hay- senná rýma  
 few (hardly any) málo + gen.; a ~ (at least some) několik + gen.  
 field pole  
 filling (in food, pen) náplň, (in tooth) plomba  
 film film; develop a ~ vyvolávat/vyvolat film  
 find najít (najde, našel); ~ out zjišťovat/zjistit  
 fine (adj., weather) pěkný; (n.) pokuta  
 finger prst  
 fire oheň (ohně, m.); (conflagration) požár, Fire! Hořít!  
 first první; at ~ napřed, zpočátku, nejdřív; ~ aid první pomoc; ~ class první třída; ~ name jméno  
 fish ryba  
 fix (mend) spravovat/spravit; (see to) zařízovat/zařídit  
 flat (n.) byt; (adj. = level) rovný; ~ tyre prázdňná pneumatika  
 flight let  
 floor podlaha, (storey) poschodí  
 florist's květinářství  
 flower květina; bunch of ~s kytice

'flu chřipka  
 fly (n.) moucha; (vb.) létat/letět  
 food jídlo, potraviny  
 foot noha, chodidlo; on ~ pěšky  
 for: (benefit: he did it ~ me) pro + acc.; (to treat: something ~ toothache) na + acc.; (exchange: pay ~ something) za + acc.; (intended duration: come for three weeks) na + acc.  
 foreign cizí, zahraniční; ~er (m./f.) cizinec/cizinka  
 forest les  
 forget zapomínat/zapomenout  
 fork vidlička; knife and ~ příbor  
 form formulář; fill in a ~ vyplňovat/vyplnit formulář  
 fortnight čtrnáct dní  
 four-wheel drive pohon na čtyři kola; 4 x 4 (vehicle) terenní auto  
 France Francie  
 free (at liberty) svobodný; ~ of charge bezplatný; za darmo  
 freeway (US) dálnice  
 freezer mraznička  
 French francouzský; (language) francouzština; ~man/woman Francouz/ka; ~ fries hranolky  
 frequent častý  
 fresh čerstvý  
 fridge lednička  
 fried smažený  
 friend (m./f.) přítel/přítelkyně, známý/známa  
 from (a place) z + gen., (a person) od + gen.  
 front přední část; in ~, at the ~ vpředu; in ~ of před (Unit 12)  
 fruit ovoce; ~ juice džús, ovocná šťáva  
 full plný; ~ board plná penze  
 fun zábava, legrace  
 funny (peculiar) divný; (ha-ha) legrační  
 further dál(e)  
 future budoucnost (-i, f.); in ~ v budoucnosti, příště

garage (petrol station) *čerpací stanice*, (coll.) *pumpa*; (for repairs) *opravna aut*; (shelter) *garáž*  
garden *zahrada*  
garlic *česnek*  
gas *plyn*; (US fuel) *benzín*; ~ station (US) *čerpací stanice*  
gate *vrata* (nt.pl.); (at airport etc.) *východ*  
gents (toilet) *páni, muži*  
German *Němec*; (adj.) *německý*; Germany *Německo*  
get (obtain) *dostávat/dostat*; (fetch) *přimáset/přinést*; ~ to *dostat se do* + gen.; ~ back *vrátit se*; ~ off (bus etc.) *vystupovat/vystoupit*; ~ on *nastupovat/nastoupit*; ~ up *vsát/vstát*  
gift *dárek*; ~ shop *dárkový obchod*  
girl *dívka*  
give *dávat/dát*  
glad (m./f./pl.) *rád/ráda/rádi*  
glass (material) *sklo*; (vessel) *sklenice*; ~es (spectacles) *brýle* (f. pl.)  
go (on foot) *chodit/jít*; (on wheels, horseback) *jezdít/jet* (for more see Units 9 and 12)  
gold *zlato*  
good *dobrý*; Good! *Dobře*; ~ bye *na shledanou*  
got: I've ~ to go *musím jít*; have you ~ ...? *Máte...?*  
grateful *vděčný*  
green *zelený*  
greengrocer's *zelinářství*  
grey *šedý, šedivý*  
grilled *grilovaný*  
grocer's *potravinářství*  
ground *země*; ~ floor *přízemí*  
group *skupina*  
guest *host*; ~house *penzión*  
guide (person and book) *průvodce*, (f.) *průvodkyně*; ~ed tour *turistický zájezd* (s *průvodcem*)

hair *vlasy* (pl.); have one's ~ cut *dát se ostříhat*  
hairdresser's (men's) *holičství*, (ladies') *kadeřnictví*  
hairdryer *fén*  
half *půl* + gen.; ~ board *polopenze*; ~ = child's (ticket etc.) *dětský*  
ham *šunka*  
hamburger *hamburger*  
hand *ruka*; ~bag *kabelka*; ~ luggage *příruční zavazadla*  
hangover *kocovina*  
happen *stávat se/stát se* (*stane se*)  
happy *šťastný*  
hard (not soft) *tvrdý*, (not easy) *těžký*  
hardware shop *železářství*  
hat *klobouk*  
have *mít*; ~ to (must) *muset*  
hayfever *semná rýma*  
head *hlava*; (of a workplace) *vedoucí*  
headache *bolest hlavy*; I've got a ~ *Bolí mě hlava*  
headlight *přední světlo*  
hear *slyšet/u*  
heat *horko*; ~ing *topení*  
heavy *těžký*  
heel (of foot) *pata*, (of shoe) *podpatek*  
hello *dobrý den*, (to a familiar) *ahoj*, (on phone) *haló*  
help (n.) *pomoc*, (vb.) *pomáhat/pomocit*; Help! *Pomoc!*  
herbs *byliny*  
her (not him) *ji*, (not his) *její*  
here *zde, tady*  
hi! *ahoj!*  
high *vyšoký*  
hill *kopec*  
him (not her) *ho, jeho*  
hire *pronajímat/pronajmout*  
his *jeho*  
hitchhike *stopovat, jezdit/jet stopem*  
hole *díra*, (small) *dírka*  
holiday *dovolená*, on ~ *na dovolené*; ([school] ~s)

prázdniny  
home: at ~ *doma*; go ~ *jít or jet domů*  
horse *kůň* (pl. *koně*)  
hospital *nemocnice*; maternity ~ *porodnice*  
host *hostitel, ~ess hostitelka*, (in bar) *hosteska*  
hostel *nolehárna, ubytovna*; youth hostel (*turistická*) *ubytovna (pro mládež)*  
hot *teplý, horký*; ~ dog *párek v rohlíku*; it's ~ (of e.g. food) *je to moc teplé*, (of weather) *je horko*; I'm ~ *je mi horko*  
hotel *hotel*; 4-star ~ *čtyřhvězdičkový h.*  
hour *hodina*  
house *dům (domu)*  
how *jak*; how much/many? *kolik?*  
hungry: be ~ *mít hlad*  
hurry: be in a ~ *spěchat, mít naspěch*  
hurt *bolet*  
husband *manžel*; ~ and wife *manželé*  
I *já*  
ice *led*; ~ cream *zmrzlina*  
if *jestli, kdyby* (see Unit 15)  
ill *nemocný*  
immediately *hned*  
important *důležitý*  
impossible *nemožný*  
in *v* + loc.; Is he ~? *Je tady?* or *Je doma?*; ~ ten minutes *za deset minut*  
including *včetně* + gen.  
indigestion *trávicí potíže*  
information *informace*  
injured *zraněný*; ~y *úraz*, (minor) *rána*  
insect *hmyz*  
instead of *místo* + gen.  
interesting *zajímavý*  
international *mezinárodní*  
interpret *tlumočit*; ~er *tlumočník*  
intersection *křižovatka*  
into *do* + gen.

introduce (oneself) *představit (se)*  
invitation *pozdání*; ~e *zvat/pozvat*  
Ireland *Irsko*; Irish *irský*; ~man/ ~woman *Ir/ka*  
iron (n.) *žehlička*, (vb.) *žehlit*  
jacket *sako*  
jeans *džínasy* (m.pl.)  
jewel *klenot*; ~lery *šperky*; ~ler's *klenotnictví*  
job *zaměstnání, práce*  
jog: go ~ging *chodit/jít běhat*  
joke *žert*, (narrated) *vtip*  
journey *cesta*; Have a good ~! *šťastnou cestu!*  
juice *šťáva*, (as beverage) *džús*  
jumper *svetr*  
just (= only) *jen(om)*; (adv.) *právě*  
keep *nechat si*  
key *klíč* (m.)  
kilogram *kilo*  
kilometre *kilometr*  
kind *laskavý, hodný*  
kitchen *kuchyně* (f.)  
knee *koleno* (see Unit 13)  
knife *nůž*; ~ and fork *příbor*  
knock down/over *srážet/srazit*  
know (a thing, person etc.) *znát*; (a fact) *vědět*  
ladly *dáma, paní*; ~ies' (room) *dámské záchody* (*Dámy* or *Ženy* on the door)  
lager *ležák*  
lake *jezero*  
lamp *lampa*  
language *jazyk*  
large *velký*  
last *poslední*; (with week etc.) *minulý*; ~ night *včera večer*  
late *pozdě*; ~r *později*  
laugh *smát se* (*směje se*)/za-laundrette, laundromat *veřejná prádelna*  
lawyer (m./f.) *právník, právnička*  
leaflet *leták, brožura*  
leak (nt.) *únik*; (vb.) (gas) *unikat*, (water) *téct (teče), kapat* (*kape*)

learn *učit se/na-*  
 least: at ~ *alespoň, přinejmenším*  
 leather *kůže*  
 leave (= depart) *odjíždět/odjet, odcházet/odejít*; (deposit) *nechávat/nechat*; (forget) *zapomínat/zapomenout*  
 left *levý*; ~ luggage (office) *uschovna zavazadel*  
 leg *noha* (see Unit 13)  
 lemon *citrón*; ~ade *limonáda*  
 lend *půjčovat/půjčit*  
 less *méně*  
 letter *dopis*; ~box *poštovní schránka*  
 lettuce (*hlávkový*) *salát*  
 licence *povolení, licence*  
 lift (elevator) *výtah*; Can you give me a ~? *Můžete mě svést?*  
 light *světlo*; (not dark) *světlý*, (not heavy) *lehký*; Do you have a ~? *Máte oheň?*; ~er *zapalovač*  
 like: I (don't) ~ it (*ne*) *líbí se mi to*; Would you ~ a drink/something to eat? *Dáte si něco k pití/k jídlu?*; (adj.) *podobný*, What's he/it ~ *Jaký/jaké je?*; something ~ this *něco takového*  
 line *linka*  
 lips *rty* (sg. *ret*)  
 listen *poslouchat*  
 litre *litr*  
 little *malý*; a ~ *trochu* (+ gen.)  
 live *žít*, (dwell) *bydlet*  
 local *místní*  
 lock (n.) *zámek*, (vb.) *zamykat/zamknout*  
 locker: left-luggage ~ *skříňka na zavazadla*  
 London *Londýn*  
 long (adj.) *dlouhý*, (adv., = a long time) *dlouho*; ~er *déle*  
 look (at) *dívat se/po- na + acc.*; ~ after *starat se/po + o + acc.*; ~ for *hledat*  
 lorry *nakladač*  
 lose *ztrácet/ztratit*; ~ one's way *zabloudit*

lost property (office) *ztráty a nálezy*  
 lot: a ~, ~s *spousta* + gen.  
 loud *hlasitý, hluchý*  
 lounge *salón*  
 love *milovat*  
 low *nízký*  
 luck *štěstí*  
 luggage *zavazadla* (nt.pl.); ~ label *visačka*  
 lunch *oběd*; (vb.) *obědvat*  
 magazine *časopis*  
 mail *pošta, dopisy*; (vb.) *posílat/poslat poštou*; ~ box *poštovní schránka*  
 main *hlavní*; ~ course *hlavní chod*  
 make *dělat/u-*  
 man *muž, člověk*  
 manager *vedoucí, manažer*  
 many *mnoho* + gen.  
 map *mapa*; street-~ (of a town) *orientační plán (města)*  
 market *trh*  
 married (of man) *ženatý*, (of woman) *vdaná*; a ~ couple *manželé*  
 match *zápas, utkání*  
 matches *zápalky, sirky*  
 matter: it doesn't ~ *Nevadí, Na tom nezáleží*; What's the matter? *Co je?*  
 maybe *možná, snad*  
 meal *jídl*  
 mean: What do you mean? *Co tím myslíte*; What does it mean? *Co to znamená?*  
 meat *maso*  
 medicine *lék(y)*  
 medium *střední*  
 mend *opravovat/opravit*  
 men's room *pánské záchody (Páni or Muži on the door)*  
 mention: Don't mention it! *Není za.* *Za málo!*  
 menu *jídelní lístek*  
 message *vzkaz*  
 metre *metr*

midday *poledne*; at ~ *v poledne*  
 middle: in the ~ (of) *uprostřed* (+ gen.)  
 midnight *půlnoc*; at ~ *o půlnoci*  
 milk *mléko*  
 mind: never ~ *to nevádí*; Do you mind (noun)? *Vadí vám ..?*; Would you mind -ing? *Vadilo by vám + inf.*; Would you mind if I ...? *Vadilo by vám, kdybych ..?*  
 mineral water *minerálka*  
 minute *minuta*; Just a ~ !  
 Moment!  
 mirror *zrcadlo*  
 Miss *slěčna*  
 missing: be ~ *chybět*  
 mistake *chyba*  
 mobile (telephone) *mobil(ní telefon)*  
 money *peníze* (m. pl.)  
 month *měsíc* (for names of the months see Unit 11)  
 more *více* (+ gen.)  
 morning (early) *ráno*, (up to lunchtime) *dopoledne*; this ~ *dněs ráno*  
 most *nejvíce* (+ gen.)  
 mother *matka*  
 motorbike *motorka, motocykl*  
 motorway *dálnice*  
 mountain *hora*  
 mouth *ústa* (nt. pl.)  
 movie *film*  
 Mr *pan*; ~ and Mrs X *manželé X-ovi*  
 Mrs *paní*  
 Ms ~ no equivalent, use *slěčna*  
 much *mnoho* + gen.; ~ + comp. *mnohem* + comp.; not ~ *moc ne*  
 museum *muzeum*  
 mushrooms *žampiony*, (wild) ~ *houby*  
 music *hudba*  
 must *muset*  
 mustard *hořčice* (f.)  
 my *můj, moje, moje*  
 name *jméno*; My name is ... *Jmenuju se ...*; What's your

name? *Jak se jmenujete?*  
 napkin *ubrousek*  
 narrow *úzký*  
 natural (behaviour etc.) *přirozený*, (to do with nature) *přírodní*  
 near *blízko, nedaleko*; ~est *nejbližší*  
 nearly *téměř*  
 necessary *nutný, nezbytný*; that's not ~ *to není třeba*.  
 neck *krk*  
 need *potřebovat*; you needn't ... *nemusíte + inf.*  
 neither ... nor ... *ani ... ani ...*  
 never *nikdy*  
 new *nový*; the ~s *zprávy*; ~spaper *noviny*; ~sagent's *prodejna tisku, trafika*  
 next (in sequence, time) *přítí*; ('N-!', e.g. patient) *další*; ~ to *vedle* + gen.  
 nice *pěkný*, (of a person) *milý*  
 night *noc*; last ~ *včera večer*; during the ~ *v noci*; 'Good ~!' *Dobrou noc!*  
 no *ne*; (not any) *žádný*  
 nobody *nikdo*  
 noisy *blučný*  
 non-alcoholic *nealkoholický*  
 none *žádný*  
 non-smoking *nekuřácký*  
 nor *ani*  
 normal *normální, běžný*  
 north *sever*; ~ east *severovýchod*; ~ west *severozápad*  
 note (bank-) *bankovka*  
 nothing *nic*  
 now *ted, nyní*  
 number *číslo*  
 nuts *orechy*  
 o'clock: five ~ *pět hodin*; see Units 9, 13  
 often *často*  
 oil *olej* (m.)  
 OK *dobře*  
 old *starý*  
 olive *oliva*  
 omelette *omeleta*



on *na* + loc.; on TV *v televizi*;  
What's on? *Co dávají?*  
once *jednou*; at once *hned*  
one *jeden, jedna, jedno*  
one-way (street) *jednosměrná*  
(*ulice*); ~ (ticket) *jednoduchá*  
(*jízdenka*)  
onion *cibule* (f.)  
only *jen(om)*  
open (vb.) *otvírat/otevřít*, (adj.)  
*otevřený*  
opposite (prep.) *proti* + dat.;  
(adv.) *naproti*  
or *nebo*  
orange *pomeranč*; ~ juice  
*pomerančová šťáva*  
order *objednávat/objednat*  
ordinary *obyčejný*  
other (different) *jiný*; the ~ *ten*  
*druhý*; and ~s *a další*  
our(s) *náš, naše, naše*  
out: be ~ *nebýt doma, být venku*;  
go ~ *jít ven*; ~doors *venku*  
over (position) *nad* + inst. or acc.;  
(quantification) *nad, přes* + acc.;  
~ there *tamhle*  
overnight *přes noc*; ~ stay *nocleh*  
own (vb.) *vlastnit*, (adj.) *vlastní*  
pack(et) *krabice, krabička*; (vb.)  
*balit/za-*  
package *balík*, small ~ *balíček*  
pain *bolest* (-i); I have a ~ here  
*bolí mě tady*; it's painful *bolí*;  
~killers *lék proti bolesti*  
pair *pár* + gen.  
panties *kalhotky*  
pants (under-) *spodky*; (US  
trousers) *kalhoty*  
panty hose *punčocháče*  
paper *papír*; (= news-) *noviny*  
parcel *balík*  
Pardon (me)? *Prosim?*  
parents *rodiče* (m. pl.)  
park *park*; (vb.) *parkovat/za-*;  
car ~, ~ing lot *parkoviště*  
part *část* (-i)  
partner (m.f.) *partner(ka)*  
party (group) *skupina*;

(celebration) *oslava, večírek*,  
*party* (f.)  
passport (cestovní) *pas*  
pavement *chodník*  
pay *platit/za-*; ~ phone *telefon na*  
*mince*  
pen *pero*; (ballpoint)  
*propisovačka*  
pencil *tužka*  
people *lidé*  
pepper *pepř*; (green/red as veg.)  
*paprika*  
percentage *procento*; five per cent  
*five procent*  
perfume *parfém*  
perhaps *možná, snad*  
person *osoba*  
petrol *benzín*; ~ station *čerpací*  
*stanice*, (coll.) *pumpa*  
pharmacy *lékárna*  
phone (n.) *telefon*, (vb.)  
*telefonovat*; ~ book *telefonní*  
*seznam*; ~box (telefonní) *budka*;  
~card *telefonní karta*; ~ number  
*telefonní číslo*  
photo(graph) *fotografie*, (coll.)  
*foto*  
picture *obraz*  
piece *kus*  
pillow *polštář* (m.)  
pink *ružový*  
place *místo*  
plane *letadlo*  
plaster(s) *náplast(i)*  
plate *talíř* (m.)  
platform (at station) *nástupiště*;  
Which platform for Brno?  
*Z kterého nástupiště jede vlak*  
*na Brno?*  
play *hra*, (vb.) *hrát*  
pleasant *příjemný*  
please *prosim*  
plug (elec.) *zásuvka*, (in basin)  
*zátka*  
poison(ous) *jed(ovatý)*  
police *policie*; ~man *policista*; ~  
station *policijní stanice*  
polluted *znečištěný*  
pool: swimming ~ *bazén*

pork *vepřové*  
port *přístav*  
possible *možný*; Is it possible  
to ..? *Je možné + inf.*; as ... as  
possible *co nej-*  
post *pošta*, (vb.) *posílat/poslat*  
*poštou*; ~box *poštovní schránka*;  
~card *pohlednice*; ~ office *pošta*;  
~e *restante poste restante*  
potato *brambora*; ~ chips (US)  
*lupínky, brambůrky*  
pound *libra*  
prefer: I'd prefer ... *Chtěl bych*  
*radši ...*  
pregnant *těhotná*  
prescription *předpis*  
present (gift) *dárek*  
pretty *hezký, pěkný*  
price *cena*  
private *soukromý*  
probably *asi, patrně, nejspíš*  
problem *problém*  
program(me) *program*  
pronounce *vyslovovat/vyslovit*  
public *veřejný*; ~ holiday *den*  
*pracovního klidu*; ~ lavatories  
*veřejné záchodky*  
puncture: I've had a ~ *píchl jsem*  
purse *peněženka*, (US = handbag)  
*kabelka*  
put *dávat/dát*  
pyjamas *pyžamo*  
quarter *čtvrť*  
queue *fronta*  
question *otázka*, (enquiry) *dotaz*  
quick *rychlý*  
quiet *tichý*; ~! *Ticho!*; peace and ~  
*klid*  
quite *docela*

radiator *radiátor*  
radio *rádio, rozhlas*  
rail: by ~ *vlakem*  
rain *děšť*, (vb.) *pršet*  
rape *znásilnění*, (vb.)  
*znásilňovat/znásilnit*  
rare *vzácný*, (of steak) *krvavý*  
rather *spíš*; I'd ~ *Radši bych ...*

razor *holící strojek*  
read *číst/pře-*  
ready *připravený, hotový*  
real *skutečný*; ~ly *opravdu*  
receipt *bloček, potvrzení*  
reception *recepce*; ~ist *recepční*  
recommend  
*doporučovat/doporučit*  
recommended  
*doporučené*  
recorded: by ~ delivery  
*zpomínat si*  
registered: by ~ mail *doporučené*  
remember *pamatovat si*,  
*vzpomínat si*  
rent *nájemné*; (vb.) *najímat si*/  
*najmout si*  
repair *oprava*; (vb.)  
*opravovat/opravit*; have/get  
one's watch ~ed *dát si opravit*  
*hodinky*  
repeat *opakovat*  
reservation *rezervace*, ~e  
*rezervovat*, ~ed *obsazeno*  
restaurant *restaurace*; ~ car *jídelní*  
*váz*  
rest room (US = lavatory) *záchod*  
return *návrat*; ~ ticket *zpáteční*  
*lísték*  
reverse charge (call) (*hovor*) *na*  
*účet volaného*  
rice *ryže*  
right *správný*; (not left, proper)  
*pravý*; That's right! *Správně!*;  
You're right! *Máte pravdu!*  
ring *prsten*; (vb.) *volat/za-*,  
*telefonovat/za-*; ~ back *zavolat*  
*zpátky*  
river *řeka*  
road *silnice*, (in town) *ulice*  
rob *okrádat/okrást*  
roll: bread ~ *rohlík*; round ~  
*houska*  
room *pokoj* (m.), single ~ *p. pro*  
*jednoho, jednolůžkový p.*;  
double/twin ~ *p. pro dva*,  
*dvoulůžkový p.*; ~ service  
(*hotelová*) *obsluha*  
rosé (wine) *ružové víno*  
round *kulatý*; ~ trip *cesta tam a*

zpátky; (US) ~ trip ticket  
 zpáteční jízdenka  
 route *cesta, trasa*; (bus-) *linka*  
 rubbish *odpadky* (m.pl.); ~  
 bin/basket *koš na o.*  
 rucksack *ruksak*  
 run (person) *běžet/běhat*, (bus etc.  
 service) *jezdit*; (manage) *vést*  
 safe (n.) *sejf*; (adj.) (not  
 dangerous) *bezpečný*, (in safety)  
*v bezpečí*  
 salad *salát*  
 salt *sůl* (soli)  
 same: the ~ *to samé*; it's all the ~  
 (to me) *je (mi) to jedno*  
 sandwich *sendvič*, open ~  
*obložený chlebiček*  
 sanitary towels (US napkins)  
*(dámské) vložky*  
 say *říkat/řici*; How do you ~ this  
 in Czech? *Jak se tohle řekne*  
*česky?*  
 schedule (US = timetable) *jízdní řád*  
 scissors *nůžky* (f.pl.)  
 Scot (m./f.) *Skot/ka*, ~tish *skotský*;  
 ~land *Skotsko*  
 seat *sedadlo, místo*; Is this ~  
 taken? *Je tady volno?*; Do take a  
 seat. *Posaďte se, prosím.*  
 second (n.) *sekunda*; (adj.) *druhý*;  
 travel ~ class *jezdět/jet druhou*  
*třídou*  
 see *vidět/u-*; May I ~ it? *Můžu se*  
*na to podívat?*; I ~ *rozumím*; See  
 you! *Nashle*  
 self-service *samoobsluha*  
 sell *prodávat/prodat*  
 send *posílat/poslat* (*pošle*)  
 separately (pay, send, travel, live)  
*zvlášť*  
 serious *vážný*  
 service *služba, obsluha*  
 serviette *ubrousek*  
 several *několik* + gen.  
 shade *stín*; ~s (sunglasses)  
*sluneční brýle*  
 shampoo *šampón*  
 share *dělit se/roz-* + o + acc.

shaver *holící strojek*  
 sheet *prostěradlo*  
 shirt *košile* (f.)  
 shoe *boty*; ~laces *tkaničky do bot*;  
 ~ polish *krém na boty*; ~ shop  
*prodejna obuvi*; shoe repairer's  
*opravná bot*  
 shop *obchod, prodejna*  
 short *krátký*; ~s *šortky* (f.pl.)  
 shoulder *rameno* (see Unit 13)  
 show (performance) *představení*;  
 (vb.) *ukazovat/ukázat*  
 shower *sprcha*; of rain *přebáňka*  
 shut *zavírat/zavřít*; They're/It's  
 shut. *Mají/Je zavřeno.*  
 sick *nemocný*; be ~ (vomit)  
*zvracet*; I feel ~. *Je mi na*  
*zvracení.*  
 side *strana*; ~walk *chodník*  
 sight (eye- ) *zrak*; (tourist  
 attraction) *pamětihodnost*; be/go  
 ~seeing *navštěvovat*  
 pamětihodnosti  
 silver *stříbro*  
 since (given that) *když*; (time  
 prep.) *od* + gen.  
 single: a ~ ticket *jednoduchá*  
*jízdenka*; I'm ~ (m./f.) *jsem*  
*svobodný/l-ná*; ~ room  
*jednolůžkový pokoj*  
 sister *sestra*  
 sit (be sitting) *sedět*; (sit down)  
*sednout si*; Do sit down.  
*Posaďte se, prosím.*  
 size *velikost* (-i)  
 ski *lyže* (f.); (vb.) *lyžovat*; ~er  
*lyžař*; ~ tow (*lyžařský*) *vlek*  
 skin *kůže* (f.)  
 skirt *sukně* (f.)  
 sky *obloha*  
 sleep *spát* (*spi*); ~ing bag *spací*  
*pytel*; ~ing car *lůžkový vůz*  
 slow *pomalý*; ~ly *pomalů*; ~ down  
*zpomalovat/zpomalit*  
 small *malý*  
 smell (pleasant) *vůně*, (neutral)  
*zápach*, (unpleasant) *smrad*;  
 There's a smell. *Smrdí.*  
 smoke *kouř*, (vb.) *kouřit*; Do you

mind ~? *Vadí vám kouřit?*; (non-  
 ~r (ne)kouřák  
 snow *sněh*; it's ~ing *sněží*  
 so (+ adj. or advb) *tak*; (therefore)  
*proto*; So do I *Já také*  
 soap *mýdlo*; ~ powder (washing  
 ~) *prací prostředek/prášek*  
 sober *střízlivý*  
 sock *ponožka*  
 soda water *sodovka*  
 soft *měkký*; ~ drink *nealkoholický*  
*nápoj*  
 sole *podrážka*  
 some (amount) *trochu* + gen.,  
 (number) *nějaké* (pl.)  
 somebody *někdo*; ~thing *něco*;  
 ~times *někdy*; ~where *někde*  
 son *syn*  
 soon *brzy*; as ~ as possible *co*  
*nejdříve*  
 sorry: I'm ~ *Promiňte!* ~?; (I  
 didn't hear/understand) *Prosím?*  
 sort *druh*; this ~ of *takový*; What  
 sort of ...? *Jaký ...?*  
 soup *polévka*  
 south *jih*; ~ east *jihovýchod*; ~  
 west *jihozápad*  
 souvenir *suvenýr*; ~ shop *prodejna*  
*suvenýrů*  
 speak *mluvit*  
 spectacles *brýle* (f.pl.)  
 spend (money) *utrácet/utratit*,  
 (time) *trávit/s-*  
 spirits *tvrdý alkohol*  
 spoon *lžice* (f.); tea~ *lžička*  
 spring *jaro*; in ~ *na jaře*  
 square *náměstí*  
 stair(s) *schod(y)*  
 stamp (postage) *známka*; (rubber-  
 ~) *razítko*  
 stand *stát* (*stojí*)  
 start *začátek*; (vb.) *začínat/začít*  
*(začne, začal)*; The car won't  
 start. *Auto nestartuje.*  
 starter (hors d'oeuvres) *předkrm*  
 stately home *zámek*  
 station *nádraží*; bus ~ *autobusové*  
 (nt.)  
 stay (remain) *zůstávat/zůstat*,  
 (dwell) *bydlet*; ~ overnight  
*přenocovat*  
 steak *biftek*  
 steal *krást/u-* (*krade, kradl*;  
*ukradne, ukradl*)  
 steep *prudký*  
 still *ještě*  
 stomach *žaludek*; I've got ~ ache  
*bolí mě ž.*  
 stone *kámen*  
 stop (bus, tram) *zástavka*; (vb.)  
*zastavovat/zastavit*  
 straight *rovný*; ~ ahead *rovně*  
 strange *divný*; ~r *cizinec*; I'm a  
 stranger here *jsem tu cizí*  
 street *ulice*  
 string *provázek*  
 strong *silný*  
 stuck (jammed) *zaseklý*; (glued)  
*přilepený*, (together) *slepený*  
 subway (pedestrian) *podchod*, (US  
 = metro) *metro*  
 suddenly *najednou*  
 sugar *cukr*  
 suit *oblek*; ~case *kufr*  
 summer *léto*, in ~ *v létě*  
 sun *slunce* (nt.); ~glasses *sluneční*  
*brýle*; ~burn *spálení* (*sluncem*);  
 ~stroke *úpal*; ~tan *opalení*, ~tan  
 oil *olej na opalování*  
 supermarket *supermarket, velká*  
*samoobsluha*  
 supper *večeře* (f.)  
 supplement *příplatek*  
 sure: Are you sure? (m./f.) *Jste si*  
*tím jist(a)*  
 surname *příjmení*  
 sweater *svetr*  
 sweet *sladký*; (dessert) *dezert*,  
*moučník*; ~s *bombóny*  
 swim *plavat*; have a ~ *zaplavat si*;  
 ~ming costume, trunks *plavky*;  
 ~ming pool *bazén*  
 switch *vypínač*; ~ off (lights)  
*zhasnout*, (engine, TV) *vypnout*;  
 ~ on (lights) *rozsvítit*, (engine,  
 TV) *zapnout*  
 table *stůl* (*stola*)

take *brát/vzít* (*bere, vezme, vzal*)  
 talk *mluvit*  
 tall *vysoký*  
 tampon *tampon*  
 tap *kohoutek*  
 tape: adhesive, sticky ~ *izolepa*  
 taste *chut*  
 taxi *taxi, taxík*; ~ driver *taxikář*;  
 ~ rank, stand *stanoviště taxíků*  
 tea *čaj*  
 telephone *telefon*; (vb)  
*telefonovat*; ~ directory *telefonní seznam*  
 television *televize*; on ~ *v televizi*  
 tell *řikat/říci* (*řekne, řekl*)  
 terrible *strašný*  
 than *než*  
 thank *děkovat/po-*; ~s *díky*; no ~s  
*děkuji, ne*; thank you (very  
 much) *děkuju* (*pěkně*)  
 that *ten, ta, to* (see Unit 5); (conj.)  
*že*  
 theatre *divadlo*  
 their(s) *jejich*  
 then *potom*  
 there *tam*  
 thick *silný*  
 thief *zloděj*  
 thin (of thing) *tenký*, (of person)  
*hubený*  
 thing *věc* (-i)  
 think (that ...) *myslet*, (*že ...*);  
 ~ about *přemýšlet* o + loc.  
 thirsty: be ~ *mít žízeň*  
 this *tenhle, table, tohle* (see Unit  
 5)  
 throat *hrdlo, krk*  
 ticket *lístek*; (for travel) *jízdenka*,  
 (for air travel) *letenka*; return  
 ~ *zpáteční jízdenka*  
 tights *punčocháče*  
 time *čas*; What's the ~? *Kolik je*  
*hodin?*; last ~ *minule*; for the  
 last ~ *naposled*; next ~ *příště*;  
 Have a nice ~! *Hezky se bavte!*;  
 ~table *jízdní řád*  
 tin (of food) *plechovka, konzerva*;  
 ~ opener *otvírák konzerv*  
 tip *spropitné*

tyre (US = UK tyre) *pneumatika*  
 tired (fatigued) *unavený*; (sleepy)  
*ospalý*  
 tissue *papírový kapesník*  
 toast *topinka*  
 tobacco *tabák*; ~nist's *trafika*  
 today *dnes*; ~s paper *dnešní noviny*  
 toe *prst* (*na noze*)  
 together *spolu, společně*  
 toilets *záchod*; ~ paper *toaletní papír*  
 tomorrow *zítra*; the day after ~  
*pozíří*  
 tonic *tonik*  
 tonight *dnes večer*  
 too *příliš*; (also) *také*  
 tooth *zub*; I've got ~ *ache bolí mě*  
*zub*; ~brush *kartáček na zuby*;  
 ~paste *zubní pasta*  
 torch *baterka*  
 tour (of a site) *prohlídka*, (by  
 coach) *zájezd*  
 tourist (m./f.) *turista/-ka*; ~  
 information office *turistická*  
*(informační) kancelář*  
 towards (směrem) *k* + dat.  
 towel *ručník*; bath ~ *osuška*  
 town *město*; ~ centre *centrum*  
 toy *hračka*; ~shop *hračkářství*  
 track (US = UK platform)  
*nástupiště* (nt.)  
 traffic lights *semafor*  
 train *vlak*; Is this ~ for ...? *Jede*  
*tento vlak do ...?*  
 tram *tramvaj* (f.)  
 translate *překládat/přeložit*  
 trashcan (US = UK dustbin)  
*popelnice, koš na odpady*  
 travel *cestovat*; ~ agency *cestovní kancelář*; ~lers' *cheque cestovní šek*  
 trip *výlet*; How was your trip?  
*Jaká byla cesta?*  
 trousers *kalhoty* (f.pl.)  
 true *skutečný, pravý*  
 try *snažit se* + inf., (~ on/out)  
*zkoušet/zkusit si* + acc.;  
 (attempt) *pokusit se* o + acc.

T-shirt *tričko*  
 turn (vb.) *otáčet/otočit*; ~ back  
*obracet se/obrátit se*; ~ right/left  
*zabočovat/zabočit doprava/*  
*doleva*  
 twice *dvakrát*  
 twin room *dvoulůžkový pokoj*  
 tyre *pneumatika*  
 umbrella *deštník*  
 under *pod* (Unit 12); ~ground  
 (railway) *metro*; ~pants *spodky*;  
 ~wear *spodní prádlo*  
 understand *rozumět*  
 unleaded *bezolovnatý benzín*,  
*natural*  
 until *do* + gen.  
 up (out of bed) *vzhůru*; ~wards  
*nahoru*; ~ there *tam nahoře*;  
 ~stairs *nahoře*  
 urgent *naléhavý*  
 USA *Spojené státy (americké)*  
 use *používat/použit*  
 useful *užitečný*  
 vacation *prázdniny*; on ~ *na*  
*dovolené*  
 valid *platný*  
 value *hodnota*  
 veal *telecí (maso)*  
 vegetables *zelenina*; ~rian (m./f.)  
*vegetarián/ka*  
 velcro *suchý zip*  
 very *velmi, moc*  
 vinegar *ocet* (*octa*)  
 visit *navštěvovat/navštívit*  
 voice *hlas*  
 wait *čekat/počkat*  
 waiter *číšník*; W-1 *Pane vrchní!*  
 wake-up call *buzení telefonem*  
 walk: go for a ~ *jít se projít*; Is it  
 far to ~? *Je to pěšky daleko?*  
 wallet *náprsní taška, peněženka*  
 want *chtít* (see Unit 4)  
 warm *teplý*  
 wash *mýtu*; ~ get ~ed *mýt se/u*;  
 ~basin *umyvadlo*; ~ing *prádlo*;  
 ~ing machine *pračka*; ~ing  
 powder *prášek na praní*

wasp *vosa*  
 watch *hodinky*; (vb.) *dívat se na* +  
 acc.  
 water *voda*  
 way: on the ~ *na cestě*; this ~  
*tudy*; that ~ *tamtudy*; which ~?  
*kudy?*  
 weather *počasí*  
 week *týden*; for a ~ *na týden*; in a  
 ~ ('s time) *za týden*; last ~  
*minulý týden*; next ~ *příští týden*  
 weight *váha, hmotnost*  
 welcome: You're welcome! *Rádo*  
*se stalo!*  
 well: I'm not ~. *Není mi dobře*; as  
 ~ (also) *také*; ~ done (steak)  
*dobře propečený*  
 west *západ*  
 wet *mokry*  
 what *co*  
 wheel *kolo*  
 when *kdy*  
 where *kde*; ~ to *kam*  
 which *který*  
 white *bílý*  
 who *kdo*  
 whole *celý*  
 whose *čí*  
 why *proč*  
 wide *široký*  
 wife *manželka*  
 wind *vít* (*větru*)  
 wine *víno*; ~ list *nápojový lístek*  
 winter *zima*; in the ~ *v zimě*  
 with *s* + inst. (Unit 12)  
 without *bez* + gen.  
 woman *žena*  
 wood *dřevo*; ~en *dřevěný*; (trees)  
*les(ík), háj*  
 wool *vlna*  
 word *slovo*  
 work (n.) *práce*, (vb.) *pracovat*; It  
 won't ~. *Nefunguje to.*  
 worry: I'm ~ied *mám starost*;  
 Don't ~! *Nedělejte si starosti!*  
 worse *horší*; ~t *nejhorší*  
 wrap *balit/za-*  
 write *psát/napsat*  
 wrong *špatný, chybný*;

something's ~ *Něco není v pořádku*; What's ~? *Co je?*,  
*Co se děje?*; What's ~ with it?  
*Co s tím je?*

x-ray *rentgen*, (vb.) *rentgenovat*

year *rok*

yellow *žlutý*

yes *ano*

yesterday *včera*; the day before ~

*předevčirem*

young *mladý*

zero *nula*

zip *zip*

zoo *zoo(logická zahrada)*

Numbers in **bold** refer to the units which include the material.

- aby** 15  
accusative case 4, 5  
adjectives 4, 5, 7, 8, 10  
- , short 8  
adverbs 13  
*all, whole* 10  
animals in similes 16  
animate nouns (masculine) 4, 6, 7  
aspect 11, 14, 18  
**ať** 14  
**až** 4, 11  
borrowings (loanwords) 1  
*be (být)* 2  
beer and pubs 7  
*before and after* 13  
*begin, end, start, stop* 14  
body parts (vocabulary) 8  
- declension 13  
**both (oba)** 13  
case (see also under the names of the cases) 1  
**chata and chalupa** 2  
colour terms 18  
comma 1  
comparative 16  
compass points (vocabulary) 13  
complaints 8  
conditional 15  
conjecture 18  
**čtyři** 4, 13  
Czech national anthem 17  
dates 11  
dative case 10, 13  
demonstrative pronouns 5  
directions, giving 8  
**dva/dvě** 4, 13  
eating and drinking (vocabulary) 11  
*either ... or* 13  
*else* 13  
*feel* 13, 14  
food (vocabulary) 5  
friends and acquaintances 10  
future tense 9, 11  
gender 1, 2, 3  
genitive case 7  
gerund (verbal adverb)  
**Supplement**  
high-style Czech **Supplement**  
house and flat (vocabulary) 4  
*if* 10, 15  
imperative 14  
instrumental case 12  
**jt o + accusative** 15  
jobs and professions 3

- kdyby** 15  
*know (vědět v. znát)* 5  
*last time* 18  
**lidé** 10  
*like (verb)* 5, 19  
*like (look like, same as)* 12, 16  
 locative (prepositional) case 3, 7, 10  
 low-style Czech **Supplement**  
 masculine nouns ending in -a 6  
*mean* 16  
 modal verbs 4  
 money (vocabulary) 8, 12  
 months 11  
*more, even more, much more* 16  
**nechávat/nechat** 16  
**na** 3, 6  
 names, surnames 2, 9, 19  
 negation 2, 3, 5, 7  
 neuter 'young animals'  
   declension 16  
 nominative plural 6  
 numerals 4, 7, 8, 9, 13, 19  
   ~, ordinal 9  
 object 4  
 orders, giving *see imperative*  
**-pak** 18  
 participles, active (-ing forms)  
   17  
   passive (-ed forms) 18, 19  
 passive voice 19  
 past tense 7, 8  
 personal pronouns 3, 10, 13  
   declension table 13  
 place, expression of *where* 3, 4  
   expression of *where to* 7  
*play* 5  
*please and thank you* 5  
 plural 6  
 'plural-only' nouns 5, 19  
 possession 3, 4, 18  
 possessive adjectives 18  
*prefer* 13  
 present tense 3  
 pronouns (for forms see under individual cases) 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 13, 17, 18, **Supplement**  
 proverbs 14, 15  
**prý** 8  
 purpose 15  
 question tags - *že* 3  
 question words 2, 4, 6, 17  
 questions as 'polite enquiries' 5  
**řád, raději** 5, 13  
 reflexive pronouns (*se, si, svůj*) 2, 4, 5, 18  
 relative possessive pronoun (*whose*) 17  
 relative pronouns 17, 20  
**sám** 9  
 seasons 11  
**sice - ale** 4  
 superlative 16  
 syllabic l and r 1  
 telling the time 9, 13  
 tense after verbs of speaking and perception 11  
*there is/are* 5  
 time constructions 8, 9, 11, 13  
 times (*three times, 2 x 4*) 10  
 titles 3, 16  
**tři** 4, 13  
 verbal adjectives 17  
 verbal adverbs *see gerund*  
 verbal nouns 19  
 verbs - conjugation 2  
 verbs denoting posture (e.g. *sit*) 16  
 verbs, frequentative 19  
 verbs of motion 9, 12  
 vocative 3, 14  
 weather (vocabulary) 12  
 word order 5, 7, 13  
 word stress and vowel length 1  
**za** to denote 'exchange' 8  
   in ordering events 18  
   in telling the time 13